THE ULTIMATE PHRASAL VERB BOOK

Contents ................................................. 4

TO THE TEACHER .................................... 6

TO THE STUDENT .................................. 7

1. FOCUS ON: separable and nonseparable phrasal verbs ................. 9
   come from ........................................ 9
   figure out ....................................... 10
   give back ....................................... 10
   look for ......................................... 10
   put on ........................................... 10
   run into ......................................... 11
   show up ......................................... 11
   take off ......................................... 12

2. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and do, does, and did... 16
   come off .......................................... 17
   done off ......................................... 18
   fall for .......................................... 18
   give in .......................................... 18
   hear about ...................................... 18
   pull through .................................... 18
   stay off ......................................... 19
   throw up ......................................... 19

3. FOCUS ON: three-word phrasal verbs ................. 22
   feel up to ........................................ 22
   get over with ................................... 22
   go along with ................................... 22
   go in for ......................................... 23
   look forward to ................................ 23
   put up with ...................................... 23
   screw out of .................................... 23
   talk down to .................................... 23

4. FOCUS ON: present and past continuous phrasal verbs ............ 26
   cheat on .......................................... 26
   go after .......................................... 26
   look up .......................................... 27
   pay for .......................................... 27
   plan for .......................................... 28
   point to .......................................... 28
   put to ........................................... 28
   wrap up .......................................... 29

5. FOCUS ON: pronunciation of two-word phrasal verbs .......... 32
   break down ...................................... 32
   burn down ....................................... 34
   call in ........................................... 34
   find out .......................................... 34
   hand back ........................................ 34
   look at .......................................... 35

6. FOCUS ON: pronunciation of three-word phrasal verbs .......... 40
   boil down to ...................................... 40
   come down with .................................. 40
   come up with ..................................... 41
   get around to .................................... 41
   get out of ........................................ 41
   go back on ....................................... 41
   go through with .................................. 42
   monkey around with ............................ 42

7. FOCUS ON: separable phrasal verbs with long objects .......... 45
   cut up ........................................... 45
   hold up .......................................... 46
   let out ........................................... 46
   point out ........................................ 47
   run over ......................................... 47
   see about ........................................ 48
   take in ........................................... 48

8. FOCUS ON: present perfect phrasal verbs ................. 54
   burn out .......................................... 54
   fall over ......................................... 55
   fight back ....................................... 55
   hear of ........................................... 56
   pick out ......................................... 56
   tear down ........................................ 56
   work in ........................................... 57

9. FOCUS ON: two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, 1...61
   break out ......................................... 62
   catch up .......................................... 62
   chicken out ...................................... 63
   get along ......................................... 63
   give up .......................................... 63
   hang up .......................................... 63
   hook up .......................................... 64
   work up .......................................... 64

10. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used as nouns, 1......69
    fall off .......................................... 69
     kick back ....................................... 70
     lay off .......................................... 70
     screw up ....................................... 71

11. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used in compound nouns ............. 76
    backup ........................................... 77
    cut off .......................................... 78
    drop off ......................................... 79
    follow up ....................................... 80
    take out ......................................... 80
    try out .......................................... 81
    wake up .......................................... 82
    work out ......................................... 82

12. FOCUS ON: past perfect phrasal verbs .......... 89
    back off ......................................... 89
    come across ..................................... 90
    come up .......................................... 90
    fall through .................................... 91
    put out .......................................... 91

13. FOCUS ON: passive phrasal verbs, 1 ............. 95
    call off .......................................... 95
    close off ......................................... 95
    hand in .......................................... 96
    let off ........................................... 97
    light up .......................................... 97
    track down ....................................... 98

14. FOCUS ON: participle adjectives formed from phrasal verbs, 1...102
    butt in .......................................... 103
    dress up ......................................... 103
    dry up ........................................... 103
    fall out .......................................... 104
    put away ......................................... 104
29. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and might, may, and can

ask for ................................................................. 222
come apart .............................................................. 223
drop in ................................................................. 223
flip out ................................................................. 223
look out ................................................................. 223
look out ................................................................. 223
make out ............................................................... 224
run across ............................................................. 224

30. FOCUS ON: participle adjectives formed from phrasal verbs, 2 .............................................. 228
lock in ................................................................. 229
Lock out ............................................................... 229
punch in ................................................................. 230
put out ................................................................. 230
sort out ................................................................. 231
space out ............................................................... 232
wash up ................................................................. 232

31. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and gerund subjects 238
care for ................................................................. 238
cut out ................................................................. 239
do away with ........................................................ 239
do without ............................................................. 240
look into ................................................................. 240
plan on ................................................................. 240
put off ................................................................. 240
rule out ................................................................. 241

32. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the particle out 244
clean out ............................................................... 245
clear out ............................................................... 246
come out ............................................................... 246
empty out ............................................................ 248
fall out ................................................................. 248
go out ................................................................. 248
leave out ............................................................... 249
stick out ............................................................... 249

33. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and mid-sentence adverbs .......................................................... 255
blow up ................................................................. 256
catch on ................................................................. 256
come about .......................................................... 257
fall behind ........................................................... 257
good around ........................................................ 257
help out ................................................................. 258
know about .......................................................... 258
pick up ................................................................. 258
pull off ................................................................. 258

34. FOCUS ON: pronunciation of two-and three-word phrasal verbs, 2 ........................................ 262
do over ................................................................. 262
do out ................................................................. 263
float around ........................................................ 263
head up to ............................................................ 263
put up to ............................................................... 263
stand for ............................................................... 263
stick around ........................................................ 264
stick to ................................................................. 264
take back ............................................................. 265

35. FOCUS ON: gerund phrasal verbs ............................................................... 269

36. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the particle down ................................................................. 276
back down ........................................................... 276
calm down ........................................................... 277
fall down .............................................................. 277
go down ............................................................... 277
lay down .............................................................. 278
put down ............................................................. 278
run down ............................................................. 279
sit down ............................................................... 280

37. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used as nouns, 3 ................................................................. 285
brush off ............................................................... 285
come on ............................................................... 286
cover up ............................................................... 287
hang out .............................................................. 287
leave over left over .................................................. 287
Let down ............................................................. 288
talk to .................................................................. 289

38. FOCUS ON: the verb keep and adverbs and adverbials showing degrees of variability .............. 294
keep at .................................................................. 295
keep away ............................................................. 295
keep down ............................................................ 295
keep from ............................................................. 296
keep off ............................................................... 296
keep on ................................................................. 296
keep to .................................................................. 297
keep up ................................................................. 297

39. FOCUS ON: passive phrasal verbs, 3 ................................................................. 301

40. FOCUS ON: gerund phrasal verbs vs. phrasal verbs followed by the -ing form ......................... 312

41. FOCUS ON: two-word phrasal verbs with the particle in that require into when used with an object ................................................................. 319
break in ................................................................. 320
Check out .............................................................. 321
42. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with get, 327
get back ........................................ 327
get behind ..................................... 328
get down ....................................... 329
get in ........................................... 329
get out ......................................... 330
get over ........................................ 331
get up ........................................... 332

43. FOCUS ON: modals and present perfect phrasal verbs ........................................ 336
blow out ........................................ 337
give out ........................................ 338
gross out ....................................... 338
run up ........................................... 338
shut up .......................................... 339
stop off ......................................... 339
try on ........................................... 339

44. FOCUS ON: participle adjectives and passive phrasal verbs with the verb get ......................... 345
beat up .......................................... 346
mix up ........................................... 347
rip off ........................................... 348

45. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the verb turn ...................................................... 353
turn down ...................................... 353
turn in ........................................... 353
turn into ........................................ 354
turn off .......................................... 354
turn on .......................................... 355
turn out ......................................... 356
turn over ....................................... 357
turn up .......................................... 358

46. FOCUS ON: pronunciation of phrasal verbs with the particle into ........................................ 363
build in ......................................... 363
bump into ....................................... 363
con in ........................................... 364
con out of ..................................... 364
freak out ........................................ 364
make for ........................................ 364
talk into ........................................ 364
talk out of ...................................... 365

47. FOCUS ON: particles used without verbs ................................................................. 369
brush up ......................................... 369
come in .......................................... 370
cut back ......................................... 370
move out ........................................ 371
pull out .......................................... 372
put in ............................................. 372
run out .......................................... 373

48. FOCUS ON: modals and present perfect passive phrasal verbs ...................................... 377
close down ..................................... 378
dead out ........................................ 378
look down on .................................. 379
look up to ........................................ 379
put back ......................................... 379
switch off ....................................... 380
throw out ........................................ 380

49. FOCUS ON: combinations of get, right, back, and to .................................................. 385
dog up ............................................ 388
get ahead ........................................ 388
get back to ...................................... 388
get on ............................................. 388
get to ............................................... 389
hang on ......................................... 390
start off ......................................... 390
throw away ..................................... 390

50. FOCUS ON: Keep at it! ............................................................... 395
ask out .......................................... 395
come down to .................................. 395
deal with ....................................... 395
hold on .......................................... 396
pay back ........................................ 396
take up on ...................................... 396
turn around .................................... 396
wear out ........................................ 397

Answers .................................................. 403

Index .................................................... 425
8. Present Perfect Phrasal Verbs / 46
9. Two-Word Phrasal Verbs That Require an Additional Particle When Used with an Object, 1 / 53
10. Phrasal Verbs Used as Nouns, 1 / 61
11. Phrasal Verbs Used in Compound Nouns / 70
12. Past Perfect Phrasal Verbs / 83
13. Passive Phrasal Verbs, 1 / 91
14. Participle Adjectives Formed from Phrasal Verbs, 1 / 98
15. Phrasal Verbs and will or be going to / 107
16. Phrasal Verbs with Gerund Objects, 1 / 116
17. Adverbs and Phrasal Verbs / 125
18. Phrasal Verbs and can, could, will, and would / 133
19. Phrasal Verbs and the Adverb right / 141
20. Phrasal Verbs Followed by the -ing Form / 149
21. Phrasal Verbs and should and ought to / 158
22. The Particle up and the Adverbs right and all / 165
23. Two-Word Phrasal Verbs That Require an AdditionalParticle When Used with an Object, 2 / 172
24. Phrasal Verbs Used as Nouns, 2 / 180
25. Phrasal Verbs and have to, have got to, and must / 188
26. Phrasal Verbs and the Adverb bade / 194
27. Phrasal Verbs with the Particle off and the Adverb right / 202
28. Passive Phrasal Verbs, 2 / 210
29. Phrasal Verbs and might, may, and can / 217
30. Participle Adjectives Formed from Phrasal Verbs, 2 / 223
31. Phrasal Verbs and Gerund Subjects / 233
32. Phrasal Verbs with the Particle our / 239
33. Phrasal Verbs and Midsentence Adverbs / 250
34. Pronunciation of Two- and Three-Word Phrasal Verbs, 2 / 257
35. Gerund Phrasal Verbs / 264
36. Phrasal Verbs with the Particle down / 271
37. Phrasal Verbs Used as Nouns, 3 / 280
38. The Verb keep and Adverbs and Adverbials Showing Degrees of Variability / 289
40. Gerund Phrasal Verbs vs. Phrasal Verbs Followed by the -ing Form / 307
41. Two-Word Phrasal Verbs with the Particle in That Require into When Used with an Object / 314
42. Phrasal Verbs with get, 1 / 322
43. Modals and Present Perfect Phrasal Verbs / 331
44. Participle Adjectives and Passive Phrasal Verbs with the Verb get / 340
45. Phrasal Verbs with the Verb run / 348
46. Pronunciation of Phrasal Verbs with the Particle into / 358
47. Particles Used Without Verbs / 364
49. Combinations of get, right, back, and to / 380
50. Keep at it! / 390
Answers to Exercises / 398
Index / 410
The inspiration for The Ultimate Phrasal Verb Book came about when a student asked me for a textbook to help her learn the meanings of common phrasal verbs. I had nothing to offer. The only textbook focusing on common verbs that I could give her contains not one phrasal verb — it teaches arise but not get up, awake but not wake up, seek but not look for.

Phrasal verbs are verbs, not idiomatic curiosities. There is no logic to classifying take over with take the bull by the horns. Phrasal verbs are an essential part of spoken and written English at all levels, and no student who hopes to master the language can afford to overlook them.

Although this textbook is intended primarily for high-intermediate to advanced students, ambitious students at lower levels will benefit from it as well. Only some FOCUS sections may prove to be a little beyond them; otherwise, there is nothing to prevent any student from studying the definitions and examples and attempting the exercises.

A vocabulary textbook should provide mechanics as well as meaning. Students want to know more than what a word means — they want to know how to use it correctly.

The importance of mechanics is the reason for the emphasis on the prepositions required when some phrasal verbs are used transitively and for the inclusion of reviews of points of grammar not specific to phrasal verbs. Prepositions are the glue that holds English together, but many students falter when using newly learned verbs because they do not know that a preposition is also required, or if they do, which one. This aspect of English is not given the attention it deserves because it is difficult to teach — there are no rules that govern when a preposition, or which preposition, is required, and no teacher likes to say “You just have to remember.”

The hope of the latter feature, the discussion of points of grammar not specific to phrasal verbs, is that combining practice with phrasal verbs and practice with a variety of grammatical structures will increase not only the student’s confidence in the knowledge of phrasal verbs but also his or her willingness and ability to use them in a wider range of situations.

There is inevitably a degree of oversimplification. That phrasal verb particles are sometimes prepositions and sometimes adverbs is mentioned only once. No purpose is served by differentiating between them, and the overlap between the two is confusing to the student. Phrasal verbs are not identified as transitive or intransitive because this is dictated by logic. Less common meanings of some phrasal verbs have not been included. Adverb placement is presented and illustrated in simplified form without discussion of the different types of adverbs — doing so would have gone beyond the scope of this textbook.
And no differentiation is made between recognized adjectives derived from past participles and past participles with adjectival meaning. The adjectival use of past participles (both phrasal and nonphrasal) is an extremely important aspect of spoken English — something every student of English should be familiar with — yet the dividing line between true adjectives derived from past participles and passive sentences employing past participles with adjectival meanings is ill-defined and problematic. Native speakers of English regularly use past participles in superficially passive sentences with purely adjectival meaning. Whether the past participles are verbs or actually adjectives is of no concern to the native speaker and is entirely irrelevant to the student of English. Rather than distract the student with an unnecessary element of confusion, both are referred to as participle adjectives throughout this textbook.

The exercises in this textbook are intended to reinforce meaning and mechanics. A cloze exercise always comes first, followed by exercises focusing on sentence structure and the discussion. Last are exercises that ask the student to answer questions or write original sentences.

There is a good deal of review built into this textbook. Every section contains two or more exercises requiring the student to refer back to a previous section in order to review a phrasal verb, participle adjective, or noun. When a phrasal verb has two or more meanings, it is intentional that no help is provided to the student in determining which meaning applies; students have to review them all and figure it out for themselves.

I have tried in this textbook to imitate the form and content of everyday English. If occasionally the register and subject matter of some examples and exercises seem not quite right for formal discourse, that is deliberate. Students need to learn formal English, of course, but since most people speak informally most of the time, students need to gain familiarity with the syntax, usage, and content of the informal English they read and hear every day at work, at school, at home, and on television.

TO THE STUDENT

Phrasal verbs are combinations of ordinary verbs like put, take, come, and go and particles like in, out, on, and off. They are a very important part of everyday English. Every student of English needs a basic understanding of the most common phrasal verbs and also of common nouns and adjectives made from phrasal verbs.

Most phrasal verbs are nor informal, slang, or improper for educated speech or formal writing. Exactly the opposite is true — most phrasal verbs are acceptable at all levels of spoken or written English. In fact, for many of the phrasal verbs in this textbook, there is no alternative to the phrasal verb — there is no other way to say it.
However, a few phrasal verbs in this textbook are identified as informal, and it is better not to use them in serious, formal speech or writing. But these informal phrasal verbs are important because they are very common in everyday informal speech and writing.

Some phrasal verbs are very easy to understand. For example, it is not difficult to understand *sit down* or *come in* because their meanings are obvious. But many phrasal verbs are very idiomatic. Idiomatic means that there is no way to know what the verb and particle mean together by knowing what the verb and particle mean separately. For example, every beginning-level student learns what the words *call*, *run*, *off*, and *out* mean, but that does not help the student to know that *call off* means *cancel* or that *run out* means *use all of something*.

Each section of this textbook starts with a FOCUS, an explanation of something important about phrasal verbs. Then eight phrasal verbs and an explanation of each important meaning of each one are presented along with one or more example sentences for each meaning. Following that are several exercises to help you understand and remember what the phrasal verbs mean and how to use them in a sentence. And like real conversation, questions asked with *I* or *we* are answered with *you*, and questions asked with *you* are answered with */ or *we*.

And because there is a lot to learn in this textbook, there is a lot of review to help you learn it. Every phrasal verb is reviewed at least twice later in the book. The more idiomatic phrasal verbs are reviewed more often, and the more important meanings of phrasal verbs with several meanings are reviewed more often.

**Terms, Abbreviations, and Symbols Used in this Textbook**

- **verb**: Verb refers to the verb part of a phrasal verb. In other words, the phrasal verb minus the particle. In the phrasal verb *pull over*, *pull* is the verb and *over* is the particle.

- **particle**: The adverbs and prepositions in phrasal verbs are both called *particles* in this book. Many particles are adverbs and prepositions, and it can be very difficult and confusing to figure out if a particle in a particular phrasal verb is one or the other. Fortunately, this is almost never important to the student, so it is a lot easier to simply call them both particles.

- **p.v.**: phrasal verb n. — a noun made from a phrasal verb

 mass

- **part.adj.**: participle adjective — a past participle of a phrasal verb used as an adjective *put on* it. When words or sentences have a line through them, it means that they are incorrect.

... Three dots between the verb and the particle mean that the object of the phrasal verb can be placed between the verb and the particle.

vi
1. **FOCUS ON:** separable and nonseparable phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs are either *separable* or *nonseparable*. Unfortunately, there is no rule that will help you to look at a phrasal verb and always know whether it is separable or nonseparable.

**Separable phrasal verbs**

Separable phrasal verbs can be separated by their object. When the object is a noun, it is usually entirely optional whether the object is placed between the verb and the particle or placed after the particle. Both sentences below are correct:

- I took my shoes off.
- I took off my shoes.

However, when a pronoun is used instead of a noun, the pronoun *must* be placed between the verb and the particle:

- I took them off.
- I took off them.

But in one type of sentence, separable phrasal verbs must be separated — when the phrasal verb has two objects:

- She put a blanket on.
- She put on a blanket.
- She put a blanket on the bed.
- She put on a blanket the bed.

**Nonseparable phrasal verbs**

Nonseparable phrasal verbs cannot be separated by their object:

- He ran into a tree.
- He ran a tree into.

Throughout this book, phrasal verbs that can be separated have three dots (...) between the verb and the particle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come from</td>
<td>comes from</td>
<td>coming from</td>
<td>came from</td>
<td>come from</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **come from** p.v. When you *come from* a place, you were born there or lived there previously. When you *come from* a family or a social situation, your past experience helps to explain your present attitudes and behavior.

- Mike *comes from* Alaska, so he’s used to cold weather.
- Jane had a difficult childhood. She *came from* a broken home.
2. come from p.v. When something comes from a source, that is where it originated.

The word "admiral" comes from an Arabic word.

The mechanic heard a strange sound coming from the engine.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>figure out</td>
<td>figure out &amp; figures out</td>
<td>figuring out</td>
<td>figured out</td>
<td>figured out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. figure ... out p.v. [the object can be a noun or a noun clause] When you figure out something, such as the answer to a question, the solution to a problem, or why a person is a certain way or acts a certain way, you think about and succeed in understanding it.

Joe's so hostile all the time. I can't figure him out.

I looked everywhere for my keys, but I couldn't figure out where I put them.

give back
give back & gives back | giving back | gave back | given back

1. give ... back (to) p.v. When you return something to someone, you give it back.

Can I use your pen? I'll give it back after the test.

Timmy, give that toy back to your sister right now!

look for
go look for & looks for | looking for | looked for | looked for

1. look for p.v. When you look for things or people, you try to find them.

I looked for you at the party, but I didn't see you.

Excuse me, can you help me? I'm looking for 303 Main St.

put on
go put on & puts on | putting on | put on | put on

1. put... on p.v. When you place something on or apply something to your body, you put it on.

I put on my new dress before going to the party.

Eric forgot to put suntan lotion on, and now he's as red as a lobster.

2. put... on p.v. When you place something on or apply something to another surface, you put it on.

I put the book on the table.

Jerry put too much fertilizer on his lawn, and now he has to cut it twice a week.

3. put... on p.v. When you attach or affix something to another thing, you put it on.

The Wilson's put a new roof on their house last year.

I told the tailor to put red buttons on the dress he's making for me.

4. put... on p.v. When you put on weight, you gain weight.

Comment [S1]: n. (area of grass) газон; lawn

Comment [S1]: tennis
Did you see Mike? He's put on so much weight that I didn't recognize him.
I need to go on a diet. I've been putting on a lot of weight lately.

5. put ... on p.v. When you organize or perform something for other people's entertainment, such as a play or a concert, you put it on.
The club put on a show to raise money for the party.
That opera hasn't been put on in more than 200 years.

6. put ... on p.v. [informal] When you put people on, you kid or tease them.
You won the lottery? You're putting me on!
Don't put me on — tell me the truth.

put-on n. Something done with the intention of fooling or deceiving people is a put-on.
He didn't really win the lottery. It was all a big put-on to impress his girlfriend.

run into p.v. When you are driving and hit another vehicle or something near the road, such as a tree or a telephone pole, you run into it.
Ali was driving too fast, and he ran into a telephone pole.
I was run into by a drunk driver.

2. run into p.v. When you meet people unexpectedly or unintentionally, you run into them.
Bump into is the same as run into.
We ran into Karen and her new boyfriend at the supermarket yesterday.
I owe Frank $300, so I hope I don't run into him.

3. run into p.v. When you unexpectedly encounter difficulties or problems, you run into them.
/ thought it would be easy to fix my car, but I've been running into problems.
Janice ran into one problem after another at work today.

4. run into p.v. When the total of something grows to a large amount or number, it runs into that amount or number.
If you fixed everything on that old car that needs fixing, it would run into thousands of dollars.
The number of starving people in the country ran into millions.

show up p.v. When you appear somewhere, you show up. Turn up is similar to show up.
/ was supposed to meet my sister for lunch, but she hasn't shown up yet.
Over a hundred people showed up for the news conference.

2. show up p.v. When something appears or becomes visible, it shows up.
It's hard to photograph polar bears because they don't show up well against the snow. The spots won't show up until the last stages of the disease.
1. take off p.v. When you remove something from your body, you take it off.
   I was so tired when I got home that I took my clothes off and went straight to bed. Take off your shoes. You're getting mud on the carpet.

2. take off p.v. When you remove something from a surface, you take it off.
   I took the book off the table. You need to take the old wax off the floor before you wax it again.

3. take off p.v. When you remove something from something it is attached or affixed to, you take it off.
   Alfonso always takes the skin off chicken before he cooks it. After Jane took the flat tire off her bicycle, she put on the new one.

4. take off p.v. When you take time off from work or study, you do something different, instead of working or studying.
   I can't work tomorrow. I have to take the day off for some tests at the hospital. Our company always lets us take the week between Christmas and New Year's Day off.

5. take off p.v. When an airplane leaves the ground and flies up into the air, it takes off.
   Our plane took off an hour late because of the snow. Put on your seat belt; we're taking off now.

   takeoff n. Takeoff is when an airplane leaves the ground and flies up into the air. The takeoff was delayed because of the snow.

6. take off p.v. When a business or other organized activity becomes very successful, it takes off.
   The new restaurant's business is taking off because it got a good review in the newspaper. If this business takes off, we could make a lot of money.

7. take off p.v. [informal] When you leave suddenly or quickly, you take off.

After he found out the FBI was looking for him, he took off in a hurry.
This party's boring — let's take off.

8. take ... off p.v. When you reduce the price of something that is for sale by a certain amount, you take that amount off the price.

The sign in the store window said, "Every Monday take 10 percent off all marked prices."
The car dealer took $2,000 off the list price.

EXERCISE 1 a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.
Example: Sergeant Jones is very strict with his children. He COMES FROM a military family.

1. After the police arrived, we ___________ quickly.
2. Sales of air conditioners really ___________ when the temperature got over 100 degrees last summer.
3. Megan ___________ a lot of weight ___________ when she was pregnant.
4. I'm going to install a new program tonight, and I hope I don't ___________ any problems.
5. The invisible ink ___________ only under ultraviolet light.
6. I was expecting 100 people at the party, but only around 50 ___________.
7. Jane was lucky; she ___________ a good family.
8. Be sure you ___________ a coat of primer ___________ before you paint the fender.
9. My cousin is so weird that even his mother can't ___________ him ___________.
10. I don't feel well; I think I'll ___________ tomorrow ___________ and stay home.
11. We were scared to death when we heard voices ___________ the attic.
12. My son always forgets to ___________ his coat before he goes outside.
13. I was surprised when our plane ___________ on time.
14. We ___________ our dog all night, but we couldn't find him.
15. Paul finally ___________ my CDs after I asked him for them about a million times.
16. I'm not going to the party because I don't want to ___________ Janice.

Comment [S7]: 3. (paint) грунтовка.
Comment [S8]: 3. (US, of car) крыло.
17. The real estate agent said that our asking price was too high and that we should ________ at least $10,000 ________ it if we want to sell our house.

18. ____________ those muddy shoes before you come inside.

19. Sending my son to Stanford and my daughter to Yale is going to ________ ________ some serious money.

20. ________ the ornaments ________ the Christmas tree isn't as much fun as putting them on.

21. You can't be serious — you're ________ me ____________!

22. Don't forget to ________ a stamp ________ that letter before you mail it.

23. A special performance of The Nutcracker was ________________ at the children's hospital.

24. The maid ________ the dirty sheets ________ the bed.

25. Be careful! You almost _____________ ________ that truck back there.

EXERCISE 1 b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

Example: I can't figure out. (the answer, it)
I can't figure out the answer. I can't figure the answer out. I can't figure it out.

1. I finally figured out. (the instructions, them)

2. Give back when you are finished. (my tools, them)
EXERCISE 1c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

Example: I can’t understand where my wallet is. What can’t I do? You can’t figure out where your wallet is.

1. A lot of guests didn’t come to the wedding. What didn’t a lot of guests do?
2. Raul thought about the math problem, and he knows the answer now. What did Raul do?
3. The jet is leaving the ground and flying into the air. What is the jet doing?
4. In Question 3, what would you call what the airplane did?
5. Omar speaks Arabic because he was born in Egypt. Why does Omar speak Arabic?
6. We left Bob’s house quickly. What did we do?
7. I met Uncle John at the baseball game today. What did I do today?
8. The source of the smoke was a window on the tenth floor. What did the smoke do?
9. You almost hit a tree while you were driving your car. What did you almost do?
10. Mr. Taylor attached his name to his mailbox. What did Mr. Taylor do?
11. I have to remove the flat tire from my car. What do I have to do?
12. We didn’t have any problems cooking the turkey. What did we do?
13. I’m removing the dirty dishes from the table. What am I doing?
14. Sales of the company’s new product were very successful. What did sales of the company’s new product do?
15. Linda is trying to find her golf ball. What is Linda doing?
16. Susie’s blue eyes aren’t visible in this photo. What don’t Susie’s eyes do in this photo?
17. Jim always forgets to place salt and pepper on the table. What does Jim always do?
18. Bill didn’t go to work last Friday. What didn’t Bill do?
19. Sally returned Frank’s camera. What did Sally do?

2. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and do, does, and did
Like ordinary verbs, phrasal verbs form negatives and questions with do, does, and did.

Present tense questions
In the present tense, questions are formed with do (except when the subject is he, she, it, or the name of one person or thing):

- Why do I always fall for losers?
- Do you sometimes doze off in class?
- Do we ever give in to pressure?
- How do these bottle tops come off?

When the subject is he, she, it, or the name of one person or thing, does is used. Remember that the -s form of the verb is not used in questions:

- Does this welding torch throw sparks up into the air?

Present tense negatives
In the present tense, negatives are formed with do not or don’t (except when the subject is he, she, it, or the name of one person or thing):
I used to doze off while driving, but I don't anymore.
I think he has the flu because you don't usually throw up when you have a cold.
We don't usually fall for crazy stories like that.
If his dogs do not stay off our lawn, I'm going to call the dogcatcher.

When the subject is he, she, it, or the name of one person or thing, does not or doesn't is used. Remember that the -s form of the verb is not used in negatives:

If Mark doesn't pull through, five children will be without a father.

Past tense questions
In the past tense, questions are formed with did. Remember to use the infinitive form of the verb:

I'm so embarrassed. Why did I fall for his lies?
Did the patient pull through?
How many times did he throw up?
Did we give in to their demands?
Did they hear about the explorer who was eaten by piranhas?

Past tense negatives
In the past tense, negatives are formed with did not or didn't. Remember to use the infinitive form of the verb:

I was really sick, but I didn't throw up.
You didn't fall for that nonsense, I hope.
He pulled and pulled, but the bowling ball didn't come off.
We didn't hear about the half-price sale until it was too late.
I'm sorry. We tried everything, but she didn't pull through.

---

Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come off</td>
<td>come off &amp; comes off</td>
<td>coming off</td>
<td>came off</td>
<td>come off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **come off** p.v. When something comes off, it becomes detached from what it was attached or fastened to.
   Be careful with this old book. The cover's coming off.
   That paint won't come off your hands unless you use turpentine.

2. **come off** p.v. When an event comes off, it is successful.
   The party came off well. Everyone had a lot of fun.
   The attack didn't come off the way the general planned it.

3. **come off** p.v. When you say "Come off it" to people, you are saying that you think something they have said is untrue or foolish.
   It's 2:00 a.m., you come home smelling like beer, and you say you were working late at the office?
   Oh, come off it!
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>doze off</td>
<td>doze off &amp; dozes off</td>
<td>dozing off</td>
<td>dozed off</td>
<td>dozed off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **doze off** p.v. When you fall into a light sleep, you doze off.

I went to a movie last night, but it was so boring I dozed off.

If I have a drink at lunch, I’m sure to doze off at my desk.

2. **fall for** p.v. When someone successfully tricks or deceives you, you fall for the trick or deception or you fall for it.

I feel like an idiot. The salesman promised me it was a real diamond, not glass, and I fell for it.

Your girlfriend told you that guy she was dancing with at the party was her brother? How could you fall for a story like that?

3. **give in** p.v. When someone pressures or forces you to do something or allow something even though you do not want to, you give in.

Jim met Sam’s sister last week, and now he calls her every day. I guess he really fell for her in a big way.

When I saw this house, I fell for it immediately, and I made an offer the same day.

4. **hear about** p.v. When you hear and learn information about someone or something, you hear about it.

My son drove me crazy asking me to buy him a new bicycle, and I finally gave in.

The strike lasted for eight months, but the company never gave in to the workers’ demand.

5. **pull through** p.v. When you recover from a serious illness or injury, you pull through.

The doctor didn’t think his chances were very good, but he pulled through.

Erik is very sick, but he’s young and strong, so I’m sure he’ll pull through.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stay off</td>
<td>stay off &amp; stays off</td>
<td>staying off</td>
<td>stayed off</td>
<td>stayed off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **stay off** p.v. When you **stay off** something, you don’t walk or sit on it.

You kids can play in the living room, but **stay off** the Persian rug.

What can I do to get my cat to **stay off** the kitchen counter?

2. **throw up** p.v. When people **throw up**, they **vomit**.

Alex was so sick that he **threw up** all over my shoes.

I feel like I’m going to **throw up**.

3. **throw... up** p.v. When something causes small particles of dirt, dust, or a liquid to rise into the air, it **throws them up**.

Be careful with that chain **saw** — it’ll **throw sawdust up** in your eyes.

Don’t stand too close to the fire; it’s **throwing up** sparks.

**EXERCISE 2a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Heather calls Tom every day. I have a feeling she’s _______ ________ him.

2. I went to the shoe repair guy because the heel _______ _______ my shoe.

3. I _______ _______ ten minutes after the movie started, and I missed the whole thing.

4. The bride drank too much champagne, and she _______ _______ all over the best man.

5. I needed a car to go to the party, so I told my father I needed his car to go to the library to study, and he _______ _______ it.

6. Uncle Fred’s really sick. If he _______ _______, it’ll be a miracle.

7. I just shampooed the carpet in the living room, so _______ _______ it.

8. The coup _______ _______ without any bloodshed.

9. I don’t care if you beg me all night — I’m not _______ _______ !

10. I ____________ your brother’s accident last night. Is he all right?

11
11. Don't get close to the fire. It's ________ ________ ashes and sparks.

12. Do you really expect me to believe a crazy story like that? ________ ________ it!

EXERCISE 2b — Change the sentences to questions using do, does, or did.

Example: Francisco usually dozes off after dinner.

Does Francisco usually doze off after dinner?
1. The sick boy threw up.
2. Rosa falls for every boy she meets.
3. The tops come off easily.
4. The dog stays off the bed.
5. Erik heard about the new job.

EXERCISE 2c — Change the sentences to negatives using do not or don't, does not or doesn't, or did not or didn't.

Example: Francisco dozes off after dinner.

Francisco doesn't doze off after dinner.
1. I always give in to her demands.
2. Mr. and Mrs. Taylor fell for the salesman's promises.
3. These machines throw up sparks.
4. The patient pulled through.
5. The plot come off as planned.

EXERCISE 2d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. My mother told me not to walk on the kitchen floor. What did my mother tell me?
2. When Dan saw that new motorcycle, he decided he had to buy it no matter how much it cost. How did Dan feel about the motorcycle?
3. The students are so tired that they are starting to sleep in class. What are the students doing?

4. Nicole learns about everything that happens in town. What does Nicole do?

5. The meeting didn't happen the way I planned it. What didn't the meeting do?

6. You had an accident after one of the wheels separated from your car. Why did you have an accident?

7. You can ask a thousand times if you want to, but I'm not agreeing to your demands. What am I not doing to your demands?

8. My cousin made a lot of promises to me, and I believed them. How did I react to her promises?

9. Dr. Wood said Ted's disease is very serious, and she doesn't think there's much hope that he'll recover. What doesn't Dr. Wood think?

10. Timmy is very sick, and he was vomiting all night. What was Timmy doing all night?

EXERCISE 2. Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from Section 1. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review Section 1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>come from</th>
<th>give back</th>
<th>put on</th>
<th>show up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>figure out</td>
<td>look for</td>
<td>run into</td>
<td>take off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Look what time it is! We have to be at work in fifteen minutes. We'd better ________ ________ right now.

2. I waited for Joe for three hours, but he never ________ ________.

3. The maid ________ ________ the dirty sheets and washed them.

4. I'm ________ ________ a job closer to home.

5. Potatoes originally ________ ________ South America.

6. That's mine! ________ it ________ right now or I'm telling Mom!

7. They were killed when they ________ ________ a truck.

8. The mechanic can't ________ ________ what the problem is with my car.
3. FOCUS ON: three-word phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs are not always composed of two words. Three-word phrasal verbs are composed of a verb and two particles: the first particle is normally an adverb, and the second a preposition. Like two-word phrasal verbs, three-word phrasal verbs are either separable or nonseparable:

I know it’s been a long day, but do you feel up to playing tennis after dinner?
Jake always went in for fishing when he was a kid. It was nice to meet you, and I look forward to seeing you again.
I'm sorry I can't say yes about the motorcycle, but I have to go along with your mother's decision.
Mr. Baker tried to screw his ex-wife out of her share of the lottery prize.
You talk down to me like I'm some kind of idiot. Karen's nervous about the job interview.
She just wants to get it over with so she can stop worrying about it.

Infinitive | present tense | -ing form | past tense | past participle
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
feel up to | feel up to & feels up to | feeling up to | felt up to | feel up to
get over with | get over with & gets over with | getting over with | got over with | gotten over with

1. feel up to p.v. When you feel up to doing something, you have the confidence or energy to do it.
   I'm sorry to cancel, but I just don't feel up to going dancing tonight.
   The top of the mountain is only 1,000 feet away — do you feel up to it?

2. get... over with p.v. [always separated] When you want to get something over with, it is because it is something unpleasant that you want to finish so that you can stop worrying about it or dreading it.
   Let's fix both cavities today, doctor; I just want to get it over with.
   I think it's better to get the exam over with first period than to be nervous about it all day long.

3. go along with p.v. When you agree with people or agree with what they are saying, you go along with them.
   I understand your concern, Linda, but I have to go along with Maria on this matter.
   What's my opinion? I go along with Omar.
2. *go along with* p.v. When you *obey* a rule or follow a decision, you *go along with* it.

Mrs. Taylor wasn't happy about the committee's decision, but she *went along with* it anyway.

I don't care what the boss says — I'm not *going along with* any changes that will mean longer hours for less money.

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>go in for</em></td>
<td><em>going in for</em></td>
<td><em>went in for</em></td>
<td><em>gone in for</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **go in for** p.v. When you *go in for* a certain activity, you like it and do it regularly.

Bryan really *goes in for* any kind of outdoor activity.

When I was a kid I *went in for* football, but I don't watch it much anymore.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>look forward to</th>
<th>looking forward to</th>
<th>looked forward to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>look forward to</em></td>
<td><em>looking forward to</em></td>
<td><em>looked forward to</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **look forward to** p.v. When you *look forward to* something or *look forward to* doing something, you are excited about something in the future because you enjoy it or because it will benefit you in some way.

It's been four years since my brother went overseas. I'm *looking forward to* seeing him again.

I *look forward to* an opportunity to meet with you in person.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>put up with</th>
<th>putting up with</th>
<th>put up with</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>put up with</em></td>
<td><em>putting up with</em></td>
<td><em>put up with</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **put up with** p.v. When you *put up with* something you do not like or are not happy about, you accept it and do not try to change it.

Her neighbors have loud parties every night, but she doesn't complain. She just *puts up with* it.

My husband said, "I've *put up with* your brother long enough!"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>screw out of</th>
<th>screwed out of</th>
<th>screwed out of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>screw out of</em></td>
<td><em>screwed out of</em></td>
<td><em>screwed out of</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **screw out of** p.v. [informal] When you get money or something valuable from people in a dishonest way, you *screw* them *out of* it.

That con man *screwed* me *out of* my life savings.

Their sleazy son-in-law *screwed* them *out of* thousands of dollars.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>talk down to</th>
<th>talking down to</th>
<th>talked down to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>talk down to</em></td>
<td><em>talking down to</em></td>
<td><em>talked down to</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **talk down to** p.v. When you *talk down to* people, you use a tone of voice or an attitude that shows you think they are less intelligent, less educated, or from a lower level of society than you.

*Comment [S24]: v.t. (comply with): obey the laws подчиняться, идти законам;*
EXERCISE 3a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Thanks for inviting me, but I don't _______ _______ _______ card games.
2. I couldn't _______ _______ _______ my husband's smoking any longer.
   I told him to choose between cigarettes and me.
3. I'm sorry, but I think your plan is a big mistake, and I can't _______ _______ _______ it.
4. Even though Mr. Watson is the richest man in town, he never _______ _______ _______ people.
5. It's been only two weeks since the tragedy. I'm sure they don't _______ _______ _______ going to the party.
6. If that crook thinks he's going to _______ me _______ _______ 500 bucks, he's crazy!
7. The whole family's going to be here for Thanksgiving, and Mom is really _______ _______ it.
8. I volunteered to give my speech first just so I could _______ it _______ _______.

EXERCISE 3b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Jerry's brother-in-law talks to him like he's an idiot. How does Jerry's brother-in-law talk to Jerry?
2. Nicole can't work tomorrow, and she's nervous about telling her boss. What should Nicole do?
3. They paid $5,000 too much for their house because the salesman lied to them. What did the salesman do to them?
4. Sally’s going to fly in an airplane for the first time, and she’s very excited about it. How does Sally feel about flying in an airplane?

5. The winters in Minneapolis are terrible, but you can’t move or change the weather. What do you have to do?

6. Erik just got out of the hospital, and he doesn’t feel strong enough to go back to work. Why can’t Erik go back to work?

7. I thought the new policy was an excellent idea, and I agreed with it 100 percent. How did I feel about the new policy?

EXERCISE 3c, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from Section 2. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review Section 2.

- come off
- fall for
- hear about
- stay off
- doze off
- give in
- pull through
- throw up

1. Miguel told me he didn’t steal my TV, but I didn’t________________ his lies.

2. Jim is really sick, and he stayed home from school today. He________ ________
   twice last night.

3. After a few weeks, the gold on this cheap jewelry starts to________ ________.

4. He kept nagging and nagging, and I finally________ ________.

5. If that cat doesn’t learn to________ ________ the table, it will have to go.

6. After Betty’s temperature got up to 105 degrees, we started to think she might not

7. The meeting was so boring that I________ ________.

8. I________ ________ a country where people use big stones for money.

17
4. FOCUS ON: present and past continuous phrasal verbs

Like one-word verbs, phrasal verbs can normally be used in the continuous tense (also called the progressive tense) using the -ing form of the verb (also called the present participle) and a form of be:

The principal told me you'd been cheating on the test.
I've been going after my master's for nearly five years.
Which dictionary is he looking up the words in?
How will she be paying for her tuition bill?
The compass needle couldn't be pointing to the south.
We would be planning for a bigger crowd if the weather weren't so bad.
They should be wrapping the meeting up in a few minutes.
Thanks for all your help. I'm sorry for putting you to so much trouble.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cheat on</td>
<td>cheat on</td>
<td>cheating</td>
<td>cheated on</td>
<td>cheated on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. cheat on p.v. When you cheat on your sexual partner, you have sex or a romantic relationship with another person.
   Sarah filed for divorce after she caught George cheating on her. Can you believe it?
   She was cheating on me with my best friend!

2. cheat on p.v. When you do something dishonest so that you can do better on a test, you cheat on the test.
   The teacher caught Ali cheating on the exam.
   If I didn't cheat on the tests, I'd never pass any of my classes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go after</th>
<th>go after &amp; goes after</th>
<th>going after</th>
<th>went after</th>
<th>gone after</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. go after p.v. When you chase and try to physically stop or to attack people, you go after them.
   A policeman saw him stealing the car and went after him.
   Captain Morgan was ordered to go after the enemy soldiers.

2. go after p.v. When law enforcement officials try to prosecute people through a legal procedure, they go after them.
   Federal prosecutors are now going after the top drug dealers.
   The senator introduced a bill designed to go after deadbeat dads.

3. go after p.v. When a business tries to increase its profits by trying to increase its market share or its number of customers, it goes after them.
The tobacco company denied going after the teenage market. The CEO said he wanted to go after new customers in China.

4. **go after** p.v. When you go after something, you try to obtain it even though it may be difficult to do.

Sofia went after a degree in accounting.

Todd trained for a year before going after the record in the 100-yard dash.

---

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>look up</strong></td>
<td>look up &amp; looks up</td>
<td>looking up</td>
<td>looked up</td>
<td>looked up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**look up** p.v. When you get information from a reference book, such as a word from a dictionary or a telephone number from a telephone book, you **look** the word or number **up**.

The teacher told the students to look the new words up in a dictionary.

I looked up his number, but it's not in the phone book.

**look up** p.v. When you locate and visit people you have not seen for a long time, you **look** them **up**.

I was in Dallas on business, and I looked up Dan Jones, my old college roommate.

If you're ever in Kempton, look me up.

**look up** p.v. When a situation is looking up or starting to look up, it is improving.

Business was pretty bad for a while, but things are starting to look up. I'm much happier than I was last year. Things are looking up.

**pay for** p.v. When you give someone money in exchange for something, you **pay for** it or **pay** someone **for** it.

Can I pay for this stuff with a credit card?

Alfonso paid the waiter for his dinner.

**pay for** part.adj. After you have paid for something, it is **paid for**. My car is old, but at least it's paid for.

2. **pay for** p.v. When you are punished for something, you pay for what you have done.

I caught the guy who's spreading these false rumors about me, and he paid for ruining my reputation.

Young people think that drugs are harmless, but they'll pay for their foolishness someday.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>plan for</td>
<td>plan for &amp; plans for</td>
<td>planning for</td>
<td>planned for</td>
<td>planned for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **plan for** p.v. When you make preparations for something in the future, you **plan** for it.

The festival was a disaster because they didn't **plan for** such a huge crowd.

It's never too early to start **planning for** retirement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>point to</th>
<th>point to &amp; points to</th>
<th>pointing to</th>
<th>pointed to</th>
<th>pointed to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **point to** p.v. When you indicate people or things with your hand or a finger, you **point** to them. When an arrow or a sign indicates something, it **points to** it.

The waitress couldn't hear me, so I **pointed to** my empty glass and she understood. The prosecutor asked, "Can you **point to** the man you saw carrying the gun?"

2. **point to** p.v. When a situation or occurrence causes you to consider something else, it **points to** that thing.

These terrible test scores **point to** a need for some major changes in our educational system.

The fact that all the people with food poisoning ate tuna salad sandwiches **pointed to** contaminated mayonnaise as the source of the illness.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>put to</th>
<th>put to &amp; puts to</th>
<th>putting to</th>
<th>put to</th>
<th>put to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **put... to** p.v. When you confront people with a difficult or thought-provoking question, accusation, or proposition, you **put it to** them.

He didn't want to tell me the truth, but I really put it to him, and he finally told me the whole story.

When Prof. Kline **put his theory to** me like that, I realized what he was talking about.

2. **put... to** p.v. When you put people to trouble or put them to an expense, you cause them to do extra work or to spend money.

Thanks for helping me with my flat tire. I'm sorry to **put you to** so much trouble.

I know my father would pay my dental bill if I asked him, but I hate to **put him to** such an expense.

3. **put... to** p.v. When you put part of your body or something in your hand **to** something, you touch or press it **to** something.

The neighbors were arguing again, so we **put our ears to** the wall to try to hear what they were saying.

When he **put a gun to** my head, I realized he wasn't joking.
**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wrap up</td>
<td>wrap up &amp; wraps up</td>
<td>wrapping up</td>
<td>wrapped up</td>
<td>wrapped up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **wrap... up** *p.v.* When you enclose an object in some kind of paper, usually gift wrapping paper or packaging paper, you **wrap it up**.

   / have to wrap this gift up before I go to the party.

   The movers **wrapped up** the china with newspapers.

   **wrapped up** *part.adj.* After you enclose an object in some kind of paper, usually gift wrapping paper or packaging paper, it is **wrapped up**.

2. **wrap... up** *p.v.* When you conclude an event that has been happening for some time, you **wrap it up**. **Wind up** is similar to **wrap up**.

   We **wrapped up** the meeting around 4:00 and went home.

   The salesman blabbered for two hours before I finally told him to **wrap it up**.

**EXERCISE 4a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. It's 12:30. Let's **________ this meeting ________** and go to lunch.
2. There was no way he could deny his guilt after the prosecutor **________ it ________** him.
3. The high crime rate **________ ________** a need for more police officers.
4. You'll **________ ________** what you did to me if it's the last thing I ever do!
5. The principal gave a zero to each of the students who **________ ________** the test.
6. I **________ my ear ________** the wall to try to hear what Sally was saying about me.
7. Mike is **________ the words ________** in the dictionary.
8. The police officers **________ ________** the robbers, but they didn't catch them.
9. Linda told Ned that she would divorce him if he ever **________ ________** her again.
10. Yes, it was quite a surprise — we didn't **________ ________** twins.
11. We saw an arrow **________ the door at the end of the hallway.**
12. After she won the silver medal, she **________ ________** the gold.
13. Most insurance companies won't **________ ________** plastic surgery.
14. I returned to my hometown for the first time in forty years and **________ ________** my first girlfriend.
15. The guy in the seafood store _______ the fish _______ in old newspapers.

16. The FBI is _______ _______ major drug smugglers.

17. These last six months have been difficult for Sally, but now things are starting to

18. The company started in California, but now it’s _______ _______ customers all over the country.

19. You _______ me _______ a lot of trouble to help you move your piano, and you didn’t even say thank you.

EXERCISE 4b — Write sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. I was looking up in the dictionary, (a word, it) _______ _______ _______ _______ _______ _______

2. I was in Boston looking up. (some old army buddies, them) _______ _______ _______ _______ _______ _______

3. Dad’s upstairs wrapping up. (Mom’s birthday present, it) _______ _______ _______ _______ _______ _______ _______

4. The committee is wrapping up. (their discussion, it) _______ _______ _______ _______ _______ _______ _______
EXERCISE 4c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. He showed me where the bathroom was with his finger. What did he do?
2. We're preparing for 300 wedding guests. What are we doing?
3. The situation is getting better. What is the situation doing?
4. The little boy ran away, and his father chased him and tried to catch him. What did the father do?
5. Sofia is going to try to break the record in the high jump. What is Sofia going to try to do?
6. Tom did a lot of work to get his guest bedroom ready for me when I visited him. What did I do to Tom?
7. I'm giving money to the cashier for the book I want to buy. What am I doing?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe the book after I give the money to the cashier?
9. The people in the meeting are concluding the meeting. What are they doing?
10. When Rosa was in New Orleans, she looked for and visited a childhood friend. What did Rosa do to her friend?
11. Jim asked you a really difficult question. What did Jim do to you?
12. Megan is trying to find Erik's telephone number in a telephone book. What is Megan doing?
13. Tom is married, but he slept with another woman. What did Tom do to his wife?

EXERCISE 4d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal Verb</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>came from</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>figure out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heard about</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull through</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall for</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look for</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I ________ your mother on our first date, and we got married three months later.
2. Carmen's family ________ Michoacan around twenty years ago.
3. Paul was supposed to meet us at 8:00, but he never ________ ________
4. These instructions don't make any sense at all. I can't ________ them ________
5. After Aunt Mary's stroke, her chances didn't look good, but she ________ ________
6. My daughter begged me to let her get her ears pierced, and I finally ________
7. My father was listening to the radio, and he said he ________ ________ a new car that runs on water.
2. I spent two hours _______ _________ the remote control before I found it.

5

5. FOCUS ON: pronunciation of two-word phrasal verbs

**Nonseparable phrasal verbs**

**Intransitive** nonseparable phrasal verbs (verbs that do not allow an object) are usually accented on the particle:

- The barn got hit by lightning, and it burned **DOWN**.
- Ned drank so much that he passed **OUT** on the bathroom floor.

**Transitive** nonseparable phrasal verbs (verbs that require an object) are usually accented on the verb:

- Hank’s been **CHEATING** on his wife for years.
- I told the teacher my dog ate my homework, but she didn’t **FALL** for it.

**Separable phrasal verbs**

Separable phrasal verbs (which are always transitive) are usually accented on the particle:

- The British soldiers tried to **burn DOWN** the White House.
- The teacher passed them **OUT**.

As the examples above show, a single phrasal verb can belong to more than one category depending on its meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break down</td>
<td>break down S breaks down</td>
<td>breaking down</td>
<td>broke down</td>
<td>broken down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **breakdown** **p.v.** When something mechanical **breaks down**, it **does** not function.
I was late for work because my car broke down.
This photocopier is a piece of junk — it breaks down every day.

broken-down part.adj. When something is old, in bad condition, or not functioning properly, it is broken-down.

My car is a broken-down piece of junk.

breakdown n. A breakdown is a situation in which something mechanical has broken down.

After that last breakdown, I decided it was time for a new car.

2. breakdown p.v. When an arrangement, agreement, negotiation, plan, or marriage breaks down, one or more persons involved is not cooperating or participating because of a disagreement or problem.

After he started drinking heavily, their marriage started to break down.
The peace negotiations broke down because neither side was willing to compromise.

breakdown n. A situation in which an arrangement, agreement, negotiation, plan, or marriage has broken down is a breakdown.

Neither side would give an inch, and there was a breakdown in the negotiations.

3. breakdown p.v. When you break down, you lose self-control and become emotionally or mentally confused.

When the judge sentenced Jones to life in prison, he broke down and begged for mercy.

Tom breaks down whenever he thinks of the tragedy.

breakdown n. A situation in which someone has broken down and is very upset or confused is a breakdown.

Marvin had a complete mental breakdown and started to see invisible people.

4. break down p.v. When something decomposes or reduces to its smallest parts or is reduced by someone to its smallest parts, it breaks down.

After the poison breaks down, it’s quite harmless.

Anticoagulant drugs are used to break down blood clots.

5. break... down p.v. When you reduce a process, situation, problem, plan, or idea to its basic parts to make it easier to understand, you break it down.

The professor’s plan seemed really complicated, but after he broke it down for us, we understood it a little better.
If you break the manufacturing process down into steps, it’s easier to train new workers.

6. break ... down p.v. When you use force to go through a door that is locked, you break it down.
The police broke the door down and arrested the bank robbers.

A door had to be broken down to rescue the people trapped by the fire.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn down</td>
<td>burn down &amp; burns down</td>
<td>burning down</td>
<td>burned down</td>
<td>burned down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **burn ... down** p.v. When a building or other structure burns down or someone burns it down, it is completely destroyed by fire.

   Though most of Chicago burned down in 1871, a few buildings survived.

   The owner was arrested for deliberately burning his factory down.

**call in**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>call in</th>
<th>call &amp; calls in</th>
<th>calling in</th>
<th>called in</th>
<th>called in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **call in** p.v. When you call your place of employment to say you cannot work that day because you are sick, you call in or call in sick.

   The manager was angry when her secretary called in three days in a row.

   Calling in sick too often is a good way to get fired.

2. **call... in** p.v. When you request the help of people or of an organization with more experience, power, or knowledge to help with a problem or difficult project, you call them in.

   When the local police couldn't handle the riot, the National Guard was called in.

   The local police chief considered calling the FBI in to help solve the crime.

**find out**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>find out</th>
<th>find &amp; finds out</th>
<th>finding out</th>
<th>found out</th>
<th>found out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **find ... out** p.v. (not usually separated — the object can be a noun, a noun clause, or a complete sentence) When you find out information or a fact, you learn or become aware of that information or fact.

   If you don't know when the movie starts, look in the newspaper to find out.

   I met a nice man at the party, but I never found out his name.

   I met a nice man at the party, but I never found out what his name was.

   I was surprised when I found out that he can speak fourteen languages.

   I was surprised when I found out he can speak fourteen languages.

   I tried to get the information, but I couldn't find it out.

**hand**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hand</th>
<th>hand back &amp; hands back</th>
<th>handing back</th>
<th>handed back</th>
<th>handed back</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **hand... back** (to) p.v. When you return things to people by holding them in your hand and extending your arm, you hand them back or hand them back to them.

   The teacher will hand the tests back in third period.

   The guard handed my ID card back to me.
### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Look at</td>
<td>look at &amp; looks at</td>
<td>looking at</td>
<td>looked at</td>
<td>looked at</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **look at** p.v. When you focus your eyes on people or things, you **look at** them.
   - *I looked at her* and told her I loved her.
   - *Look at me* when I talk to you!

2. **look at** p.v. When you examine something or a situation and decide what to do about it, you **look at** it.
   - The mechanic **looked at** my car but couldn’t find anything wrong with it.
   - *Your finger might be broken; you should have Dr. Smith look at it.*

3. **look at** p.v. When you think a certain way or have an opinion about something, that is the way you **look at** it.
   - *The way I look at it, Congress is to blame for this mess, not the President.*
   - *What should be done about this situation depends on how you look at it.*

4. **look at** p.v. [informal — always continuous] When you say that people are **looking at** an amount of money or a length of time, you mean that this is how much they think something will cost or how long something will take.
   - That was a serious injury. You’re **looking at** months and months of physical therapy.
   - *Putting a new roof on this house isn’t going to be cheap. You’re looking at at least $15,000.*

### pile up

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pile up</th>
<th>pile up &amp; piles up</th>
<th>piling up</th>
<th>piled up</th>
<th>piled up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **pile up** p.v. When things increase in number and start to form a pile, they **pile up**.
   - *When people add things to a pile, they pile them up.*
   - The snow **piled up** so high that I couldn’t open my door. In the fall we **pile the dead leaves up** in the driveway and burn them.
   - *Piled up part adj. When things are in a pile, they are piled up.*
   - A lot of dirty laundry is **piled up** in the basement.

2. **pile up** p.v. When work or something else that must be done increases faster than you can do it, it **piles up**.
   - *I'm really worried about money. My bills are piling up faster than I can pay them.*
   - *My work really piled up while I was on vacation.*

### setup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>setup</th>
<th>set up &amp; sets up</th>
<th>setting up</th>
<th>set up</th>
<th>set up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **set... up** p.v. When you arrange the parts of something so that they are in their proper position and can function, you **set it up**.
The kids got a swing set for Christmas, and Dad had to set it up in the snow. When you're camping, be sure to set your tent up before it gets dark.

set up part.adj. After the parts of something are in their proper position and function properly, they are set up.

The party is starting in one hour. Are the tables set up?

setup n. A collection or arrangement of parts or equipment necessary for a certain procedure or task is a setup.

The nurse prepared setups for the hospital emergency room.

2. set... up p.v. When you plan and organize an activity or project, you set it up.

I set up a 4:00 meeting with Jones and his lawyer.

Setting up a meeting of all fifty governors took a lot of planning.

set up part.adj. When an activity or project is planned, arranged, or organized, it is set up.

The arrangements for the wedding were very complicated, but everything is set up now.

setup n. How an activity or project is planned or arranged is the setup.

What's the setup for the Fourth of July picnic?

3. set... up p.v. [informal] When you commit a crime but make it appear that another, innocent person is guilty of the crime, you set the innocent person up.

Joe robbed the bank and tried to set me up by leaving some of the stolen money in my apartment and then telling the police about it. The detective didn’t believe me when I told him I was set up.

setup n. [informal] An attempt by someone to make it appear that an innocent person is guilty of a crime is a setup.

I told the detective it was a setup and that I could prove I had been at the racetrack when the bank was robbed.

EXERCISE 5a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. When he heard that his brother had been killed, he _______ _______ and cried.

2. We’re expecting company. Can you _______ _______ the card table in the dining room?

3. Can you help wash the dishes, please? They’re really beginning to _______ _______.

4. I gave the cashier my credit card, and then she _______ it _______ to me.
5. I don't know the answer, but I'll try to ________ ________.

6. We were very busy at work today. Two people ________ ________ sick.

7. Raul ________ ________ his watch and told me he had to leave.

8. My car is a real piece of junk. It ________ ________ at least once a week.

9. I'm a little confused about your theory. Would you mind ________ it ________ for me?

10. I'll tell the judge that I'm innocent and that Ned Kelly ________ me ________.

11. Hey, any way you ________ ________ it, one thing's for sure — we have to get more crooks off the streets and into the jails.

12. This is the FBI — open the door or we'll ________ it ________!

13. Maybe I can fix your computer. I'll ________ ________ it after dinner.

14. The family doctor has never seen a case of malaria before, so he is ________ ________ a specialist.

15. Some chemical compounds start to ________ ________ after only a few hours.

16. The arsonist tried to ________ ________ several houses in the neighborhood.

17. The secretary is ________ ________ a meeting.

18. The civil war started again after the peace talks ________ ________.

19. Jim buys a newspaper every day, but he never puts it in the garbage when he is finished. Newspapers are slowly ________ ________ in his basement.

20. The mechanic said, "To fix a car after an accident that bad, I'd say you're ________ ________ at least $4,000."

**EXERCISE 5b — Review the explanation at the beginning of this section of how two-word phrasal verbs are pronounced. Then, say each sentence in Exercise 5a aloud and circle the verb or particle that is accented.**

**EXERCISE 5c — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. The firefighters broke down. (the door, it)
2. They burned down, (the old barn, it)

3. He called in, (Dr. Shapiro, her)

4. Our teacher handed back, (the papers, them)

5. I set up, (the ironing board, it)

EXERCISE 5d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Jane arranged a baby shower. What did she do?

2. In Question 1, how would you describe the baby shower after Jane arranged it?

3. I get magazines in the mail faster than I can read them. What are my magazines doing?

4. In Question 3, how would you describe my magazines?

5. Todd returned the pen to Mark. What did Todd do?

6. Uncle Fred's car had a mechanical problem, and it stopped running. What did it do?

7. In Question 6, how would you describe Uncle Fred's car?

8. In Question 6, what did Uncle Fred have?

9. The soldiers destroyed the building with fire. What did the soldiers do?

10. The soldiers destroyed the building with fire. What did the building do?

11. When the detective told Jake he could get the death penalty, he became very nervous and upset. What did Jake do?

12. In Question 11, what did Jake have?

13. The boss was angry because you didn't call to say that you were sick and couldn't work. Why was the boss angry?

14. Judy took her new computer out of the box, connected all the cables, and got it ready to use. What did she do to her computer?

15. In Question 14, after Judy took her new computer out of the box, connected all the cables, and got it ready to use, how would you describe it?

16. The door was locked, but Hank forced it open and got inside. What did Hank do?

17. I learned that Alli's excuse was a big lie. What did I do?

EXERCISE 5e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check
come off, 2
got up to, 3
get over with, 3
go along with, 3
go in for, 3
look forward to, 3
put up with, 3
stay off, 2
talk down to, 3
throw up, 2

1. Her husband is a real jerk. How does she _______ _______ _______ him?
2. I wasn't sure if Charles _______ _______ _______ going scuba diving again so soon after the shark attack.
3. I'm telling you for the last time! _______ _______ the grass!
4. Can you help me with this jar? The top won't _______ _______.
5. I've never been to Italy, and I'm really _______ _______ _______ going there.
6. I’m sorry I can’t agree with you Dad, but I have to ________ ________ Mom.

7. When I had food poisoning I ________ ________ all night long.

8. You can be sure Paul will take his vacation out west. He really ________ ________ outdoor stuff like camping and mountain climbing.

9. Can you believe the nerve of that guy in the meeting yesterday? He ________ ________ me as if I was the stupidest guy on Earth!

10. I’m tired of arguing about the divorce settlement. I just want to ________ it.

6. FOCUS ON: pronunciation of three-word phrasal verbs

The pronunciation of three-word phrasal verbs is generally quite simple: the second, or middle, particle is accented regardless of whether the phrasal verb is separable or inseparable:

/ think I’ve come UP with an answer to your problem.
The detective didn’t get any information OUT of him.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boil down to</td>
<td>boil down to</td>
<td>boiling down to</td>
<td>boiled down to</td>
<td>boiled down to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. boil down to p.v. When you say that something boils down to something else, you are saying that it is the basic cause of a more complicated situation or problem.

Most of the crime in this city boils down to drugs.

My decision to stay at this awful job boils down to one thing — money.

come down with

come down with & comes down with | coming down with | came down with | come down will

1. come down with p.v. When you are starting to get sick, you are coming down with something or coming down with an illness.

I don’t feel well. Maybe I’m coming down with something.

My grandmother said, “If you don’t wear an undershirt, you’ll come down with pneumonia.”
Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come up with</td>
<td>coming up with</td>
<td>came up with</td>
<td>come up with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **come up with** p.v. When you think of an idea, plan, or solution, you **come up with** it.
   - It took me all night, but I **came up with** the answer.
   - Lydia wants to **come up with** a great idea for the party.

get around to

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>get around to</th>
<th>getting around to</th>
<th>got around to</th>
<th>gotten/got around to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **get around to** p.v. When you do something after waiting for some time because you are lazy, inefficient, or do not want to do it, you **get around to** it.
   - I didn't **get around to** doing my taxes until April 14.
   - Don't worry about the broken window. I'll **get around to** it one of these days.

get out of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>get out of &amp; gets out of</th>
<th>getting out</th>
<th>got out of</th>
<th>gotten/got out of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **get out of** p.v. When you **get out of** something or **get out of** doing something you must do but do not want to do, you find a way to avoid it.
   - Sam **got out of** gym class by pretending to be sick.
   - The boss wants me to work a double shift, but I'll **get out of** it.
   - I **got out of going to church** with my parents by pretending to be sick.

2. **get... out of** p.v. If an activity gives you pleasure, satisfaction, or some other benefit, you **get** pleasure, satisfaction, or some other benefit **out of** it.
   - I sat through that boring class for three months and didn't learn a thing. I didn't **get anything out of** it.
   - The judge didn't **get any pleasure out of** imposing such a harsh penalty.

3. **get... out of** p.v. When you use force, pressure, or deceit to get something, such as information or money, from people, you **get it out of** them.
   - They tortured him for days, but they couldn't **get any information out of** him.
   - It took me a while, but I **got the whole story out of** her.

go back on

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go back on &amp; goes back on</th>
<th>going back on</th>
<th>went back on</th>
<th>gone back on</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **go back on** p.v. When you make a promise, but you do not do what you promised to do, you **go back on** your promise.
   - I promised to take my son to a baseball game, and I'm not **going back on** my word.
   - The President **went back on** his **pledge** not to raise taxes.
### Infinitive Present Tense -ing Form Past Tense Past Participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal Verbs</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go through with</td>
<td>going through with</td>
<td>went through with</td>
<td>gone through with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go through with &amp; goes through with</td>
<td>going through with</td>
<td>went through with</td>
<td>gone through with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **go through with** p.v. When you do something that you have decided to do even though it may be dangerous or unpleasant or others may object, you go through with it.

The spokeswoman said the company would go through with its plan to move the company to Mexico. Despite his family's opposition, Erik went through with his decision to quit his job and start his own business.

2. **monkey around with** p.v. [informal] When you adjust or try to repair mechanical devices even though you do not have permission or do not have the skill to do it properly, you monkey around with them.

   - I monkeyed around with my camera, and I think maybe I fixed it.
   - Frank was monkeying around with my printer, and now it doesn't work.

**EXERCISE 6a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I'm not surprised that Ali stayed home from work today. Yesterday he thought he might be __________ __________ __________ a cold.

2. Last year, the company __________ __________ __________ its plan to move from downtown to the suburbs.

3. I've thought and thought, but I can't __________ __________ __________ any reason why your idea won't work.

4. Fixing the leak in the roof is going to be a big job, but I have to __________ __________ __________ it before the next rain.

5. Heather didn't want to tell me why she was mad, but I finally __________ the reason __________ __________ her.

6. I don't __________ much satisfaction __________ __________ teaching students who don't want to be in the class.
7. The explanation for our failure to solve this problem isn't complicated. It really _______ _______ _______ a lack of funding.

8. I think you should take your VCR to a repair shop. If you _______ _______ _______ it, you'll just make it worse.

9. I'm supposed to report for jury duty on Monday, but I don't want to. I've got to think of a way to _______ _______ _______ it.

10. You lied to me! You promised me you would quit smoking, and now you've _______ _______ _______ your word.

**EXERCISE 6b** — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Tom was very nervous about getting married, but he did it. What did Tom do?

2. We were in Paris for five days, but we never found time to go to the Eiffel Tower. What didn't we do?

3. My father said I had to cut the grass, but I told him I would do it tomorrow. What did I do?

4. Janice really likes teaching because it gives her a lot of satisfaction. Why does Janice like teaching?

5. Ms. Cummings thought of a way to manufacture her company's products more cheaply. What did Ms. Cummings do?

6. There are many reasons why one house sells for a higher price than other houses, but the main reason is the house's location. Why does one house sell for more than another?

7. You feel a little sick now, and you think you'll have a cold tomorrow. What's happening to you today?

8. I don't really know what to do, but I'll try to fix the air conditioner anyway. What will I do to the air conditioner?

9. My wife didn't talk to me all day, but she said nothing was wrong. I asked her again and again what the problem was and she finally told me. What did I do?

10. Raquel promised Alex she would go to the dance with him, but she went with Carlos instead. What did Raquel do?
EXERCISE 6c, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal Verb</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn down</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheat on</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find out</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go after</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand back</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pile up</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look at</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look up</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pile up</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan for</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point to</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put to</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrap up</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. We've been at this meeting all afternoon. Don't you think we should ________ it ________ and go home?
2. If we send out 75 invitations to the wedding, and everyone we invited brings his or her spouse, we should ________ ________ 150 guests.
3. Lydia ________ her best friend from college ________ when she was in Las Vegas.
4. The students who ________ ________ the test by writing the answers on their hands were expelled from school.
5. This camera isn't working right. I'm going to take it to Jim at the photo shop and ask him to __________ it.
6. Bill won't be happy if he ________ ________ that you scratched his car.
7. My son's thinking about ________ ________ his master's degree.
8. Evidence gathered after the air plane crash ________ ________ engine failure as the cause.
9. I really ________ it ________ her, and she admitted that I was right.
10. We'd better do the laundry soon; it's starting to ________ ________.
11. The police officer ________ my driver's license ________ to me along with a ticket.
12. The detective thinks the owner ________ ________ his restaurant for the insurance money.

EXERCISE 6d — Review the explanation at the beginning of Section 5 of how two-word phrasal verbs are pronounced. Then, say each sentence in Exercise 6c aloud and circle the verb or particle that is accented.
7. FOCUS ON: separable phrasal verbs with long objects

We have seen that the object of separable verbs can be placed between the verb and the particle or after the particle:

- clear: I looked up the word.
- clear: I looked the word up.

When the object is short — one word or just a few words in length — the meaning is clear either way. However, when the object is several words long, it can be awkward and confusing to place the object between the particles:

- clear: I looked up the words that our teacher said were really important and would probably be on the final exam.
- confusing: I looked the words that our teacher said were really important and would probably be on the final exam up.

It boils down to the following.

Short objects can be placed between the verb and the particle or after the particle:

She put on her dress.
She put her dress on.

Pronouns, such as him, her, and it must be placed between the verb and the particle:

She put it on.

And long objects should be placed after the particle to avoid confusion:

She put on the new dress with the red, yellow, and blue flowers that she bought last week for 40 percent off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cut up</td>
<td>cut up &amp; cuts up</td>
<td>cutting up</td>
<td>cut up</td>
<td>cut up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. cut... up p.v. When you use a knife or pair of scissors to cut something so that there are many small pieces, you cut it up.

The boy’s mother is cutting a piece of meat up for him.
I was so angry at her that I cut her picture up and flushed it down the toilet.

cut up part.adj. After something has been cut up, it is cut up.

This steak is for Aunt Kathy, but give the cut-up one to Uncle Fred — he doesn’t have any teeth.
Infinitive  | present tense | -ing form | past tense | past participle
---|---|---|---|---
hold up  | hold up & holds up | holding up | held up | held up

1. **hold up** p.v. When a wall, column, or other structure supports the weight of something above it, such as a ceiling, it **holds it up**.
   The workers were killed when they removed a column holding the roof up.
   The house was held up by jacks the foundation was repaired.

2. **hold up** p.v. When you prevent something from happening or cause it to happen late, you **hold it up**. When things or people delay you, they **hold you up**.
   The band hasn't arrived yet, and they're holding up the whole wedding.
   I'm sorry I'm late. I was held up by traffic.

**holdup** n. Something that prevents something else from happening or causes it to happen late is a **holdup**.
Why haven't you finished this work yet? What's the holdup?

3. **hold up** p.v. When you use a gun or other weapon to rob a person, bank, or store, you **hold it up**. **Stick up** is the same as **hold up**.
   The jewelry store owner was held up by three men wearing ski masks.
   Some idiot tried to hold the bank up with a squirt gun.

**holdup** n. When someone uses a gun or other weapon to rob a person, bank, or store, it is a **holdup**. A **stickup** is the same as a **holdup**.
   The robber fired his gun in the air and yelled, "This is a holdup."
   There was a holdup at First National Bank this morning.

4. **hold up** p.v. When an object remains in good condition after heavy use, it **holds up**.
   These cheap shoes won't hold up more than six weeks.
   Some Roman aqueducts have held up for 2,000 years.

5. **hold up** p.v. When a plan, idea, or agreement is still believed in or respected after a period of time, it has **held up**.
   Einstein's theories have held up despite occasional challenges.
   The ceasefire is holding up longer than anyone expected.

**let out**  | let out & lets out | letting out | let out | let out
---|---|---|---|---

1. **let ... out** p.v. When you allow animals or people to leave a place by giving permission or opening a door, you **let them out**.
   The guard lets the prisoners out of their cells every day at 1:00.
   I opened the door and let the dog out.
2. let... out p.v. When you make an item of clothing bigger by changing the seams, you let it out. 
   After I gained twenty pounds, I had to have all my pants let out. 
   The tailor let her old dress out so that she could wear it again.

3. let... out p.v. When you reveal secret or sensitive information, you let it out. 
   This information is secret. Don’t let it out.
   I was furious when my secretary let out that I had interviewed for a new position.

4. let out p.v. When you make a sound that shows your emotion or feelings, you let out that sound.
   Heather knew Jim was lying again, and let out a sigh.
   The lion let out a loud roar before he attacked the hunter.

Infinitive
present tense -ing form past tense past participle
point out & points out pointing out pointed out pointed out

1. point... out p.v. When you bring things or people to someone’s attention or indicate the location of things or people with your hand or index finger, you point them out.
   As we walked through the museum, the tour guide pointed several famous paintings out.
   General Johnston showed the satellite photo to the reporter and pointed out the enemy tanks.

2. point... out p.v. When you are writing or speaking and you stress or emphasize some important information you think the reader or listener needs to know, you point out the information.
   I pointed several flaws out in Prof. Childress’s theory.
   He said that he thought my plan was basically good but that he wanted to point out several possible problems.

run over
run over & runs over running over ran over run over

1. run over (to) p.v. When you run from where you are to where someone else is, you run over or run over to that person.
   I saw a man hitting a child, and I ran over and stopped him.
   When I saw Melanie, I ran over to her and gave her a big hug.

2. run... over p.v. When you drive over people or things with a car, truck, or other vehicle causing damage, injury, or death, you run them over.
   John was run over by a bus and killed.
   I ran over a glass bottle and got a flat tire.
3. run over p.v. When liquid in a container fills the container and goes over the top, it runs over.
   Keep an eye on the bathtub so that it doesn't run over.
   There's too much water in this pot. It's going to run over the side.

4. run over p.v. When you go beyond a limit, you run over or run over the limit.
   I hope the 11:00 meeting doesn't run over; I'm meeting a client for lunch at 12:00.

   The speaker was given fifteen minutes for her speech, but she ran over.

### Infinitive present tense -ing form past tense past participle

#### see about

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>see about</th>
<th>sees about</th>
<th>seeing about</th>
<th>saw about</th>
<th>seen about</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. see ... about p.v. When you talk to someone to get permission for something or to arrange something, you see about it or see someone about it.
   Is Luis going to see about changing his flight from the fifth to the sixth?
   The carpet in my office is filthy. I need to see the maintenance guy about getting it shampooed.

2. see about p.v. When you are upset about a change or a new policy, and you want to say that you will take some action or talk to someone in authority to prevent or reverse the change or new policy, you say "I'll see about that" or "We'll see about that."
   Now they're saying I can't even smoke in my own office. I'll see about that!
   Those crooks in City Hall want to double my real estate taxes. We'll just see about that.

### take apart

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>take apart &amp; takes apart</th>
<th>taking apart</th>
<th>took apart</th>
<th>taken apart</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. take ... apart p.v. When you completely separate the parts of something, you take it apart. Take apart is the opposite of put together.
   I had to take my bike apart when I moved.
   The mechanic took the engine apart.

### take in

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>take in &amp; takes in</th>
<th>taking in</th>
<th>took in</th>
<th>taken in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. take ... in p.v. When you bring a car or other household appliance to a mechanic or repair person, you take it in.
   Sally took her car in to have the oil changed.
   The VCR is broken again. I need to take it in.

2. take ... in p.v. When you take in a play, movie, museum, or other attraction, you go to it or see it.
   We stopped in Charleston and took in the sights.
   After dinner we took in a movie.
3. take... in p.v. When you allow people to live with you, you take them in.
   Judy's brother had nowhere to go, so she took him in.
   The Ortegas offered to take their neighbors in after the fire.

4. take... in p.v. [usually passive] When you are taken in by someone, that person successfully tricks or deceives you.
   Stalin was taken in by Hitler's assurances.
   They were completely taken in by Jake's elaborate hoax.

5. take ... in p.v. When you make an item of clothing smaller by changing the seams, you take it in.
   T.e. противоположно Let out.
   She likes some of her maternity clothes so much that she's going to take them in after the baby is born.
   If I lose any more weight, I'll have to have all my pants taken in.

EXERCISE 7a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. When the bullet hit him, he _______ _______ a slight gasp and fell dead.
2. My friends were supposed to be here an hour ago. What is _______ _______ them _______?
3. Will you please drive more carefully! You almost _______ _______ that lady back there.
4. Ann _______ _______ that she was going to go to Las Vegas with her boss, and the whole office was talking about it.
5. Take two pounds of beef _______ it _______ and put it in a frying pan.
6. The expedition leader spoke to us and _______ _______ the importance of taking plenty of water with us in the desert.
7. Open the gate and _______ the horses _______.
8. I'm embarrassed to admit I was _______ _______ by his lies.
9. After Todd's parents were killed, his Aunt Judy and Uncle Henry _______ him
10. The soldier was _______ his rifle _______ and cleaning it.
11. In Ecuador I rode on a steam locomotive that's still _______ _______ after 80 years.
12. After we saw the Empire State Building, we ________ ________ a Broadway play.

13. These aluminum poles_________ the tent.

14. Nicole is at the computer store ________ ________ getting more memory installed in her computer.

15. I had my old uniform ________ ________ so that I could wear it to the reunion.

16. A robber ________ ________ a liquor store with a shotgun last night.

17. When I got into the tub, the water ________ ________ the side and onto the floor.

18. The health department inspector walked around the restaurant and ________ ________ several rats ________ to the owner.

19. Jim’s phone was ringing, so I ________ ________ to his desk and answered it.

20. The suit was too big, but the store's tailor said he could ________ ________.

21. I heard a weird noise coming from my car's transmission. I think I'd better ________ ________ my car ________.

22. It's an unusual arrangement, but it has ________ ________ for several years.

23. The conference is scheduled to end Tuesday at 5:00, but there's a good chance that it will ________ ________ ________ ________.

24. I was just notified that I'm going to be transferred to Mongolia. We'll ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ that! I'm going to talk to the boss.

25. The robber was shot while trying to ________ ________ an off-duty police officer.

**EXERCISE 7b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses.**

1. The cook cut up. (the meat, it)

2. The snowstorm held up. (air travelers, them)
3. Don't let out. (the dog, it)

4. The real estate agent pointed out. (the swimming pool, it)

5. The truck ran over. (the man, him)

6. I'm going to take apart. (the broken doorknob, it)

7. The tailor took in. (the pants, them)

EXERCISE 7c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I don't like this hotel room. I'm going to ask the desk clerk about changing to a different room. What am I going to do?

2. No one believes in the scientist's theories anymore. What haven't the scientist's theories done?

3. Janice is going to make her pants smaller. What is she going to do?

4. Mr. Ortega was tricked by the salesman. What happened to Mr. Ortega?
5. A car drove over you. What happened to you?

6. The jeweler showed me several flaws in the diamond. What did the jeweler do?

7. The game started late because it was raining. What did the rain do?
8. Susie is using scissors to make several small pieces of paper from a larger piece of paper. What is Susie doing?

9. The posts are supporting the porch. What are the posts doing?
10. The woman told the bank teller to give her all the money in the cash register or she would shoot him. What did the woman do?

11. In Question 10, what happened at the bank?
12. I put my broken TV in my car, drove to the repair shop, and carried the TV in. What did to my TV?

13. Bill separated all the parts of his typewriter. What did Bill do?

14. There was too much water in the bathtub, and it spilled onto the floor. What did the water do?

15. After my parents died, my grandparents let me live with them. What did my grandparents do?

16. Mr. Young told some people about the secret information. What did Mr. Young do with the secret information?

17. I saw an empty luggage cart at the airport, and I went to it quickly and grabbed it. What did I do?

18. When the thief started to open the woman's door, a scream came from her mouth. What did the woman do?

19. I've been using this lawn mower for twenty-five years, and it still works fine. What has the lawn mower done?

20. The cowboy opened the gate so that the cattle could leave the corral. What did the cowboy do?

21. Dr. Smith went to a museum while he was in Rome. What did Dr. Smith do?

22. The meeting was supposed to end at 2:00, but it hasn't ended yet. What is the meeting doing?

23. I'm making my pants bigger. What am I doing?
EXERCISE 7d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

boil down to, 6  figure out, 1  go through with, 6
come down with, 6  get around to, 6  look forward to, 3
come off, 2  get out of, 6  monkey around with, 6
come up with, 6  go after, 4  put on, 1
doze off, 2  go back on, 6

1. I thought about what I was going to say to her, but when the time came, I was so nervous I couldn't ____________________ it.

2. The President's news conference didn't _______ ________ well because it revealed his poor understanding of the situation.

3. I __________ ________ ________ watching Aunt Kathy's vacation videotape by saying I had to study for a test.

4. I don't usually ______________ doing my Christmas shopping until December 24. 5. I've been ________ ________ ________ this broken refrigerator all day, but I still don't know what's wrong with it. 6. Mexico City's problems ________ _______ ________ one thing — too many people.

7. Have you seen my pen? I can't __________ ________ what happened to it.

8. If you _______ a coat of paint _______ that old house, it wouldn't look so bad.

9. One police officer helped the mugging victim while her partner _______ ________ _______ the mugger.

10. My son promised that he would stop cutting school, and so far he hasn't _______ _______ ________ that promise.

11. The company _______ ________ _______ a way to decrease labor costs without lowering wages.

12. I have never been to Thailand, and I'm really _______ ________ _______ going there.

13. She was so tired she __________ ________ _______ as soon as she sat down.

14. The show was canceled after the star _______ ________ _______ laryngitis.
8. FOCUS ON: present perfect phrasal verbs

The present perfect is used to talk about the past and the present at the same time:

- They have torn down the building. (The building is not there now because they tore it down in the past.)

- or to say that something is completed:
  - She has picked out some library books.

The present perfect is formed with have, or when the subject is he, she, it, or the name of one person or thing, has, and the past participle of the verb:

- present: The tree falls over.
- past: The tree fell over.
- present perfect: The tree has fallen over.

Remember that have can be combined with pronouns as 've:

- They've never heard of him.

Remember that has can be combined with pronouns as 's:

- She's picked out some library books. (She has...)
- She's picking out some library books. (She is...)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn out</td>
<td>burn out &amp; burns out</td>
<td>burning out</td>
<td>burned out</td>
<td>burned out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **burn out** p.v. When a fire, candle, or other flame stops burning because it has no more fuel, it **burns out**.

- We need more wood; the fire has **burned out**.

- Don't worry; the sun won't **burn out** for another four billion years.

**burned-out** part.adj. After a fire, candle, or other flame stops burning because it has no more fuel, it is **burned-out**.

- The **burned-out** rocket landed in the ocean.
- **burned-out** part.adj. When people are extremely tired, either physically or psychologically, because of stress or hard work, they are **burned-out**.

- Teaching those awful students for so many years has left him **burned-out**.

- Taking care of four small children day after day would leave any mother **burned-out**.
2. **burn out** p.v. When a light bulb stops producing light because it has reached the end of its useful life, it **burns out**.

   These new bulbs are guaranteed not to **burn out** for ten years. I can't see what I'm doing because this bulb has **burned out**.

**burned-out** part.adj. A light bulb that no longer produces light because it has reached the end of its useful life is **burned-out**.

   I climbed the ladder and unscrewed the **burned-out** bulb.

3. **burn ...out** p.v. When people are forced to leave their home or some other shelter or hiding place because of fire or fire damage, they are **burned out**.

   The only way to get the enemy soldiers out of the tunnels was to **burn them out**.

   Seven families were **burned out** of their homes by the huge fire.

**burned-out** part.adj. Something that has been damaged or destroyed by fire is **burned-out**.

   After the war, nothing was left but **burned-out** cars and buildings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>fall over</strong></td>
<td>fall over</td>
<td>falling over</td>
<td>fell over</td>
<td>fallen over</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **fall over** p.v. When people or things **fall over**, they fall to the ground from an upright position.

   That tree has been dead for fifty years, but it still hasn't **fallen over**.

   I almost **fell over** when I heard the terrible news.

2. **fall over** p.v. When you **fall over** yourself or (usually) **fall all over** yourself, you try so hard to serve someone or to make someone like you that you appear foolish.

   The supervisor **fell all over** himself trying to satisfy the customer.

   Mike was **falling all over** himself trying to impress Heather.

**fight back**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fight back &amp; fights back</th>
<th>fighting back</th>
<th>fought back</th>
<th>fought back</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **fight back** p.v. When you fight back, you fight, either physically or with words, someone or something that attacked you first.

   The soldiers **fought back** bravely, but the situation was hopeless.

   After being accused of corruption, the senator said she would **fight back** and prove her innocence.

2. **fight back** p.v. When you **fight back** an emotional response, such as tears or fear, you try very hard to overcome the emotion.

   The mother **fought back** tears when she saw the little white coffins.

   I had to **fight back** the urge to punch him in the nose.
## Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hear of</td>
<td>hear of &amp; hears of</td>
<td>hearing of</td>
<td>heard of</td>
<td>heard of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **hear of** p.v. When you learn about something for the first time, you **hear of** it.

   Do I know Fred Smith? No, I've never **heard** of him.
   I told my real estate agent, "If you **hear of** a good deal on a three-bedroom house, please call me right away."

2. **hear of** p.v. When you learn information about something that makes you angry and you say you will not **hear of** it, you mean that you will not tolerate or allow it.

   Our daughter wants to fly to Mexico with her boyfriend? I won't **hear of** it! I told him that his scheme was outrageous and that I wouldn't **hear of** such a thing.

## pick out

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pick out</th>
<th>pick out &amp; picks out</th>
<th>picking out</th>
<th>picked out</th>
<th>picked out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **pick out** p.v. When you choose something from a group because you prefer it to the others in the group, you **pick it out**.

   Have you **picked out** a dress to wear to the party yet?
   Mike's dog had puppies, and he asked me to **pick one out**.

2. **pick out** p.v. When you are able to find and recognize something in a group, you **pick it out**.

   Even though the class photo was fifty years old, I **picked my father out** easily. The police detective asked me if I could pick the mugger **out** from a group of photos.

## ring up

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ring up</th>
<th>ring up &amp; rings up</th>
<th>ringing up</th>
<th>rang up</th>
<th>rung up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **ring up** p.v. When you want to buy something in a store, a cashier uses a cash register to **ring up** what you want to buy in order to determine how much money you must pay.

   Well, I guess I'll take this one. Can you **ring it up** please?
   I couldn't believe it when the clerk finished **ringing it all up** — $946!

2. **ring up** p.v. (mainly British) When you call people on the telephone, you **ring them up**.

   He **rang up** Nancy and asked her to go to the dance.
   If you need a ride, **ring me up** when you arrive at the airport.

## tear down

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tear down</th>
<th>tear down &amp; tears down</th>
<th>tearing down</th>
<th>tore down</th>
<th>torn down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **tear down** p.v. When you **tear down** a building, you deliberately and completely destroy it.
They tore so many old buildings down in my hometown that I barely recognize it.
A lot of smaller homes in the suburbs are being torn down and replaced with larger ones.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>work in</td>
<td>work in &amp; works in</td>
<td>working in</td>
<td>worked in</td>
<td>worked in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. work... in p.v. When you make room, with some difficulty, for something in a schedule or plan, you work it in.

We’re going to be in Chicago for only a couple of days, but I’ll try to work in a Cubs game. I told him my schedule was pretty tight, but that I’d try to work the meeting in.

EXERCISE 8a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The Leaning Tower of Pisa still hasn’t __________ ________.
2. Every year I have to replace the Christmas tree lights that have __________ __________
3. The enemy was so strong that there was no way we could have __________
4. I don’t have time to talk about it now. I’ll __________ you __________ after dinner.
5. Sarah always tries to __________ ________ a little sightseeing on her business trips.
6. My brother is pretty easy to __________ ________ in a crowd — he’s almost seven feet tall.
7. If you haven’t __________ ________, a video yet, you’d better hurry — the store’s closing in five minutes.
8. The firefighters decided to let the fire in the lumberyard __________ itself ________.
9. That cashier has been yakking with his friends for ten minutes and still hasn’t __________ our stuff ________.
10. A screen door on a submarine? That’s the most ridiculous thing I’ve ever __________
11. When I told the waiter I was the owner of the restaurant, he __________ all ________, himself trying please me.
12. The taco stand moved across the street after it was __________ by the fire.
13. When I found out that one of my employees cheated a customer, I said I wouldn’t _______ such a thing in my store.
14. I had to _______ ________ my fear as I waited for my turn to jump from the plane.
15. They’ll have to __________ most of the buildings that were damaged by the earthquake.

EXERCISE 8b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The sheriff burned out. (the escaped convicts, them) ) _________________________________
2. Bill has picked out. (a new car, one) ) _________________________________
3. The clerk hasn’t rung up yet. (these CDs, them) ) _________________________________
4. The new owners have torn down. (the garage, it) ) _________________________________
5. The mayor tried to work in. (a tour of the factory, it) ) ________________________________
EXERCISE 8c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Make all the phrasal verbs present perfect.

1. I asked my father if I could smoke in the house, and he became angry and said he wouldn't allow it. What did my father say about smoking in the house?

2. The forest fire has stopped because there aren't any more trees left to burn. What has the fire done?

3. The cashier has totaled how much we must pay for our groceries. What has the cashier done?

4. They have chosen a hotel for their wedding reception. What have they done?

5. Sally's mother couldn't stop her tears. What couldn't Sally's mother do?

6. One of my car's headlights isn't working anymore. What did the headlight do?

7. In Question 6, how would you describe the headlight?

8. The stack of books was too high, and now the books are on the floor. What did the books do?

9. The coffee shop had to move to a different location because of a fire. What happened to the coffee shop?

10. In Question 9, how would you describe the coffee shop's previous location?

11. After they attacked us, we didn't attack them. What didn't we do?

12. I've made room in my busy day for a game of tennis. What have I done?

13. She hasn't called me on the telephone. What hasn't she done?

14. They've completely destroyed the old factory. What have they done?

15. The sergeant tried extremely hard to show the captain how well he was training the soldiers. What did the sergeant do?

16. I asked Jim if anyone had ever told him about the new seafood restaurant in the mall. What did I ask Jim?
**EXERCISE 8d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal Verb</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cut up, 7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go in for, 3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point out, 7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see about, 7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall for, 2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold up, 7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull through, 2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show up, 1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get over with, 3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let out, 7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up with, 3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take apart, 7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give in, 2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look up, 4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run over, 7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take in, 7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. My bicycle was really dirty, so I _______ it _______ and cleaned it.
2. It was a very serious injury, and no one expected Raul to _______ _______.
3. I've been waiting for the TV repair guy all day, but he still hasn't _______.
4. I feel just awful. I was driving to work, and I _______ _______ a dog.
5. The detectives weren't _______ _______ by the crook’s explanation.
6. The detectives didn't _______ _______ the crook’s explanation.
7. Mrs. Taylor's husband doesn't have any teeth, so she has to _______ all his food _______.
8. The freight train _______ _______ traffic for twenty minutes, so we were late for work.
9. In his report yesterday, the head of marketing _______ _______ several ways to increase the company's sales.
10. I _______ the word Internet _______ in an old dictionary, but I couldn't find it.
11. Susie's mother told her, "I'm not going to _______ you _______ of this house until you finish your homework."
12. The company finally _______ _______ to demands that it hire more women and minorities.
13. I'm having root canal surgery next week. I'll be glad to _______ it _______.
14. David called the travel agency to _______ _______ getting his ticket changed.
9. FOCUS ON: two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, 1

With some two-word verbs you must use a second particle when the verb has an object:

- The criminal broke out.
- The criminal broke out of prison.

Tom and Jerry don't get along.
- Tom and Jerry don't get along with each other.
- Tom and Jerry don't get along with each other.

Sometimes, as with break out and break out of, there is no change in meaning.
Sometimes, as with hang up and hang up on, there is a small change in meaning. And
sometimes, as with hook up and hook up to, the second particle is necessary not when
there is one object but only when there are two:

- I hooked up my new CD player.
- I hooked up my new CD player to my stereo.
- I hooked up my new CD player with my stereo.

There is no good way to always know which second particle must be used or if and how it
will change the meaning of the verb. The best thing to do is to simply memorize each
case.

Throughout this book, two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when
used with an object are shown with the second particle in parentheses:

- break out (of).

Do not confuse two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used
with an object with three-word phrasal verbs. Three-word phrasal verbs always have
three words — there is no two-word version, or if there is a phrasal verb with the same
verb and first particle, it has a different meaning and is classified as a different verb. For
example, break out and break out (of) are included in one definition because they have
the same meaning, but put up and put up with have different meanings and are
classified separately.
break out

breakout

break up

catch up

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break out</td>
<td>breakout &amp; breaks out</td>
<td>breaking out</td>
<td>broke out</td>
<td>broken out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **break out** (of) **p.v.** When you escape from a place where you are a prisoner, you **break out** or **break out** of that place.

   Bubba **broke out** of prison last month.
   The police have been looking for him ever since he **broke out**.

**breakout** **n.** An escape from prison is a **breakout**.

   There hasn’t been a successful **breakout** from the state prison in more than twenty-five years.

1. **breakout** **p.v.** When fighting begins suddenly, it **breaks out**.

   Rioting **broke out** after the general canceled the election.
   Millions will be killed if nuclear war **breaks out**.

**catch up**

1. **catch up** (with) **p.v.** When you move faster and reach the same level or place as people who had been moving faster or doing better than you were, you **catch up** or **catch up** with them.

   We left an hour before Luis, but he drove fast and quickly **caught up**.
   After missing several weeks of class, Raquel is so far behind that she’ll never **catch up**.
   Pepsi has **caught up** with Coca-Cola in some markets.
   The mugger was running so fast that the angry mob couldn’t **catch up** with him.

**caught up** **part. adj.** After you have moved faster and reached the same level or place as people who had been moving faster or doing better than you are, you are **caught up**.

   When I was sick, I missed a lot of schoolwork, but I worked hard and now I’m **caught up**.

1. **catch up** (on) **p.v.** When you study or learn something you are interested in but have not had time for, you **catch up** on it.

   I wonder what the latest gossip is. Let’s call Michael so we can **catch up**. After I returned from vacation, I read the newspaper to **catch up** on the local news.

**caught up** **part. adj.** After you have studied or learned something you are interested in but have not had time for, you are **caught up**.

   Now that I’ve read the newspapers I missed while I was on vacation, I’m **caught up**.
**Infinitive**
- Present tense
- -ing form
- Past tense
- Past participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chicken out</td>
<td>chicken out</td>
<td>chickening out</td>
<td>chickened out</td>
<td>chickened out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chickens out</td>
<td>chickens out</td>
<td>chickening out</td>
<td>chickened out</td>
<td>chickened out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **chicken out** (of) p.v. [informal] When you do not do something because you are afraid, you **chicken out** or **chicken out** of it.
   - I was going to ask Heather to go to the dance with me, but I chickened out. Miguel's mad at himself because he chickened out of asking his boss for a raise yesterday.

**get along**
- get along & gets along
- getting along
- got along
- gotten/got along

1. **get along** (with) p.v. When you **get along** with people, you have peaceful, harmonious relations with them. **Get on** is similar to **get along**.
   - Jim and his cousin aren't good friends, but they get along.
   - I haven't gotten along with my neighbors for years.

2. **get along** p.v. When you are able to do some sort of work without any serious problems, you **get along**.
   - How are you getting along in your new job?
   - Oh, I'm getting along okay, thank you.

**give up**
- give up & gives up
- giving up
- gave up
- given up

1. **give up** (on) p.v. When you stop trying to do something because you think you will never succeed, you **give up** or **give up** on it.
   - Forget it! This is impossible — I give up!
   - I've tried for years to have a nice looking lawn, but I've just given up on it.

2. **give up** p.v. When you are running from or fighting with the police or enemy soldiers and you surrender, you **give up** or give yourself up.
   - When the bank robbers realized they were surrounded by police, they gave up. The suspect got tired of hiding from the police, and he gave himself up.

3. **give it up** p.v. When you stop doing something you do regularly, such as a sport or a job, you **give it up**.
   - My father didn't give sky diving up until he was eighty-two.
   - I had to give up my second job because I was so exhausted all the time.

**hang up**
- hang up & hangs up
- hanging up
- hung up
- hung up

1. **hang up** (on) p.v. When you stop talking on the telephone and put down the receiver, you **hang up** the telephone. When you are angry and **hang up** the telephone without saying good-bye to someone, you **hang up** on the person you are talking to.
After I finished talking to her, I said good-bye and hung up. When he called me a moron, I got so mad I hung up on him.

2. **hang ... up** p.v. When you hang something in a high place so that it cannot touch the ground, you **hang it up**.

   When I get home, the first thing I do is hang my coat up.

   Timmy never hangs anything up; he just leaves it on the floor.

**hung up** part.adj. After you have hung something in a high place so that it cannot touch the ground, it is **hung up**.

   Timmy, why are your clothes on the floor and not hung up?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>hook up</strong></td>
<td>hook up &amp; hooks up</td>
<td>hooking up</td>
<td>hooked up</td>
<td>hooked up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **hook... up (to)** p.v. When you connect one electronic device to another, you **hook it up** or **hook it up** to something.

   I bought a new printer, but I haven't hooked it up yet.

   I hooked my sound system up to my TV, and now the TV is in stereo.

**hooked up** part.adj. After one electronic device has been connected to another, it is **hooked up**.

   There's a VCR on my TV, but don't try to use it because it's not hooked up.

**hookup** n. A **hookup** is an electrical connection.

   The cable TV hookup usually costs $20, but it's free this month.

1. **hook up** (with) p.v. [informal] When you meet people somewhere, usually after you have done some things separately, you **hook up** or **hook up** with them.

   You do your shopping, I'll go to the post office, and we'll hook up around 2:30, okay?

   I'll hook up with you at 12:00 at the corner of State and Madison, and we'll have lunch.

**work up**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>work up</strong></td>
<td>work up &amp; works up</td>
<td>working up</td>
<td>worked up</td>
<td>worked up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **work up** (to) p.v. When you gradually improve at something difficult that you do regularly, you **work up** to that improvement.

   You can't lift 200 pounds on your first day of weight training. You have to work up to it.

   When I started running, I couldn't go more than a mile, but now I've worked up to five miles.

2. **work up** p.v. When you gradually develop the energy, confidence, courage, and so on, to do something difficult or something you do not want to do, you **work up** the
energy, confidence, courage, and so on. When you gradually develop a feeling, you work up
the feeling.

It took me a long time to work up the nerve to ask my boss for a raise.
If I work up some energy, I'll wash the car.
I really worked up a sweat in the gym today.
Raking leaves all day sure works up an appetite.

worked up part.adj. [informal] When you are anxious, worried, or upset about
something, you are worked up or worked up about it.
Mark has been acting nervous all day. What's he all worked up about?
Relax, we're only a few minutes late. It's nothing to get worked up about.

EXERCISE 9a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section.
Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. My elbow has gotten so bad that I think I might have to _______ _______ tennis.
2. After several years of tension between the two countries, war _______ _______ in 1972.
3. Maria, how are you _______ _______ at your new job?
4. I am so lazy today. I just can't _______ _______ the energy to finish my school project.
5. The murderer was tired of running from the police, and he _______ himself _______.
6. The other runners were so far ahead that I couldn't _______ _______.
7. Susie, _______ _______ your clothes right now!
8. For a long time I could type only around twenty-five words per minute, but I've slowly _______ _______ to sixty.
9. I'm really behind in my work. If I don't take work home with me, I'll never _______ _______.
10. Lydia is a nice, easygoing person. You won't have any trouble _______ _______ her.
11. I tried and tried to learn to speak Japanese, but I finally__________.
12. Hello Mark? I'm really angry, and I've got some things to tell you, and don't you dare _______ _______ on me!
13. Dan is so shy. He was supposed to give a speech today at school, but he ________ ________.
14. Okay, here’s the plan: You go to the bookstore, I’ll get my laundry, and we’ll ________ ________ around 11:00.
15. I wonder what’s been happening while we were on vacation. I think I’ll read the newspaper so I can ________ ________.

16. This is a maximum security prison. No one has ever ________ ________.

17. Bob tried to ________ ________ my new dishwasher, but he didn’t do it right, and he flooded the kitchen.

EXERCISE 9b — Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.

1. I called my girlfriend to apologize for forgetting her birthday, but she ________ ________ me.
2. When I started lifting weights, I could lift only thirty kilograms, but little by little I ________ ________ fifty.
3. He’s very sick, but the doctors haven’t ________ ________ him yet.
4. Sofia was going to bleach her hair, but she ________ ________ it.
5. Don’t invite Carmen to Rosa’s birthday party. They don’t ________ ________ each other.
6. The bank robber was carrying 2,000 quarters, so it was easy for the police ________ ________ him.

7. No prisoner has ever ________ ________ this prison.
8. I need a different cable to ________ ________ my monitor ________ ________ my computer.
9. You’ve been gone a long time, and you have to ________ ________ a lot of things.

EXERCISE 9c — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Tonight I’m going to try to ________ ________ (my fax machine, it)
2. After my accident, I had to give up scuba diving.

3. You can hang up your coat in the closet.

EXERCISE 9d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. When I went on vacation three weeks ago, my sister and her husband were talking about getting a divorce. Now that I’m back from vacation, I want to know what happened while I was gone. What do I want to do?

2. Lydia has to stop driving because her eyesight is so bad. What does Lydia have to do?

3. Susie was walking with us, but she stopped to look in a store window, and we continued walking. What does Susie need to do now?

4. I spilled wine on your white carpet, and you became angry and upset. How would you describe yourself?

5. Connecting a printer to a computer is easy. What is easy?

6. In Question 5, how would you describe the printer after it is connected to a computer?

7. Several prisoners are going to try to escape from the state prison tonight. What are the prisoners going to try to do tonight?

8. In Question 7, if the prisoners are successful, what would their escape be called?

9. Linda and Nicole don’t like each other, and they argue sometimes. What don’t Linda and Nicole do?
10. We argued with our daughter for months, but we stopped trying to get her to stop smoking. What did we do?

11. Fights start in that bar all the time. What happens in that bar all the time?

12. Paul slowly developed the courage to ask his boss for a raise. What did Paul do?

13. In Question 12, what didn't Paul do?

14. The police told the robber to surrender. What did the police tell the robber?

15. Karen is trying to gradually be able to lift 100 pounds. What is Karen doing?

16. Betty was so angry with her boyfriend that she put the telephone receiver down without saying good-bye. What did Betty do to her boyfriend?

**EXERCISE 9e, Review** — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- burn out, 8
- cheat on, 4
- fall over, 8
- fight back, 8
- find out, 5
- hand back, 5
- hear of, 8
- look at, 5
- pick out, 8
- pile up, 5
- point to, 4
- put to, 4
- ring up, 8
- run into, 1
- tear down, 8
- work in, 8

1. Who is he? I've never _______ _______ him before, and I don't know anything about him.

2. My mail _______ _______ while I was on vacation.

3. Thanks for all your help. I'm sorry to _______ you _______ so much trouble.

4. That dead tree is rotten. I'm surprised it hasn't _______ _______ yet.

5. I _______ _______ several cars last weekend, but I can't decide which one to buy.

6. Can you help me _______ a tie _______ to wear with this shirt?

7. What a surprise! I _______ _______ my fifth grade teacher at the mall today.

8. Charles _______ _______ a beautiful Mercedes-Benz across the street and said it was his.

9. Okay, class, you've got until the bell rings. When you're finished with your tests, _______ them _______ to me.
10. Everyone in town knows that Jake has been _______ _______ his wife for years.

11. I'm not sure if there will be time to meet with you today, but I'll try to _______ it.

12. The invasion was so sudden that there was no way to _______ _______.

13. The cashier __________ our stuff and said, “That comes to $142.56.”

14. Bob’s not in a good mood today. He just _______ _______ that he needs surgery.

15. It was fun to visit my hometown, but I was sad to see that my old house was being _______ _______.

16. I need to buy a new 100-watt bulb; this one _______ _______ yesterday.

---

10. FOCUS ON: **phrasal verbs used as nouns, 1**

Many two-word phrasal verbs can be used as nouns. All the verbs in this section have a noun form. Notice that the two-word noun is sometimes written with a hyphen:

- **verb:** go ahead
- **noun:** go-ahead

and sometimes as one word:

- **verb:** lay off
- **noun:** layoff

Unfortunately, there is no rule that will help you to always know which form to use. Also, not everyone agrees which nouns should be hyphenated and which should be written as one word, so you will occasionally see a noun written both ways.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fall off</td>
<td>fall off &amp; falls off</td>
<td>falling off</td>
<td>fell off</td>
<td>fallen off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **fall off** p.v. When people or things drop to a lower level from a higher place, they fall off the place where they were.

   The dish fell off the table and broke.
   Be careful you don’t fall off your bicycle.
Handouts of food and clothing were given to the homeless people. Even though my father was poor, he was too proud to ask for a handout.

handout n. Printed material given to students or other people to provide them with important information.

The teacher prepared a handout for his students.

There are several handouts on a table by the library entrance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kick back</td>
<td>kick back &amp; kicks back</td>
<td>kicking back</td>
<td>kicked back</td>
<td>kicked back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. kick back (to) p.v. When you kick back money or kick back money to businesspeople or government officials, you illegally and secretly give them a percentage of the money that they spend with your company as a reward for giving you the business.

   The prosecutor said that 5 percent of every contract was kicked back to the head of the purchasing department.

   She offered to kick back 10 percent if I'd switch to her company.

kickback n. Money you illegally and secretly give to businesspeople or government officials as a reward for giving you business is a kickback.

   The FBI agent heard the governor asking for a kickback. The reporter discovered that the loan was really a kickback.


   It's been a tough week. Tonight I'm going to buy a case of beer and kick back. Let's kick back and watch the football game tonight.

lay off

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lay off</th>
<th>lay off &amp; lays off</th>
<th>laying off</th>
<th>laid off</th>
<th>laid off</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. lay... off p.v. When a company no longer needs workers because it does not have enough business, it temporarily or permanently lays off the workers.

   Ford laid off 20,000 workers during the last recession. My wife had to go back to work after I was laid off from my job.

layoff n. Jobs cut by a company because it does not have enough business are layoffs.

The company said there wouldn't be any layoffs, despite the decline in profits.

2. lay off p.v. [informal] When you lay off people, you stop criticizing, teasing, or pressuring them.

   You've been bugging me all day. If you don't lay off, you're going to be sorry.

   Lay off Nancy — she's having a bad day.
3. lay off p.v. When you lay off something, such as a food or an activity, you stop consuming the food, or doing the activity.

Listen to the way you're coughing. You've got to lay off cigarettes.

After Ned had a heart attack, he laid off cheese and butter sandwiches.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>screw</td>
<td>screw up &amp; screws up</td>
<td>screwing up</td>
<td>screwed up</td>
<td>screwed up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. screw... up p.v. [informal] When you damage something or do something wrong or badly, you screw up or you screw up what you are doing.

I tried to fix my computer, but I couldn't do it, and I just screwed it up instead.

Mark sent his wife a letter that he wrote to his girlfriend. He sure screwed up.

screwed up part.adj. When people or things are screwed up, they are damaged or confused.

My back is so screwed up I can't even walk.

George was a nice guy, but a little screwed up in the head.

screwup n. A problem or confused situation caused by someone's mistake is a screwup.

Two babies were switched because of a screwup in the maternity ward. There was a screwup in the finance department, and the bill was paid twice.

2. screw... up p.v. [informal] When people make a mistake that causes a problem for you, they screw you up.

The travel agent forgot to reconfirm my flight, and it really screwed me up.

You really screwed me up when you lost my car keys.

EXERCISE 10a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The teacher asked me to ______ the exams ______.
2. Why don't you let a mechanic fix the car? If you try to do it yourself, you'll just ______ it ______.
3. Nobody likes the new priest in our church, and attendance has ______ ______.
4. My feet were killing me a couple of weeks ago, so I ____________ jogging for a while, and now they're fine.
5. It really ______ me ______ when you told my boss what I said about him.
6. The Ortega’s won’t take a vacation this year because Mr. Ortega has been _______ _________ and they need to save money.

7. When Mother was _______ ________, there wasn’t any TV. People went to the movies or read instead.

8. The head of purchasing at my company went to jail because he made all the suppliers _______ _________ $2,000 of every contract.

9. My husband told me my plan to enter medical school was crazy, but I _______ _________ with it anyway.

10. The secretary in the human resources department said/Here’s an application. Take it and _______ _________ it _______.

11. If you want to borrow my car tonight, _______ ________, I’m not going anywhere.

12. The other mountain climbers are nervous about Jim because they think he’s going to _______ _________ a cliff.

13. You’ve been criticizing me for the last three hours! Will you _______ _________!

14. The manager asked his assistant to _______ him _______ about the problems in the warehouse.

15. It’s Friday night. Let’s buy some beer and _______ _________.

16. I can’t work tomorrow. Can you _______ _________ for me?

17. You’re acting like a big baby. _______ _________!

EXERCISE 10b — Complete the sentences with nouns from this section.

1. At the party, the children ate in the living room, and the _________ ate in the dining room.

2. The boss said, “One more _________ and you’re fired.”

3. The reporter discovered that the mayor was taking _________ from the construction company.

4. Every year at this time the king gives _________ to the poor.

5. Ned will be my _________ while I’m on my honeymoon.
6. The teacher prepared a __________ to give to the students.

7. The CEO said he regretted the __________ but that there was no other way for the company to avoid bankruptcy.

8. The team lost every game of the season and suffered a 60 percent __________ in attendance.

9. The president called General Chambers and gave him the __________ for the attack.

**EXERCISE 10c — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. You haven't filled in. (all the spaces, them) __________ __________

2. Is the teacher handing out? (the tests, them) __________ __________

3. The company is going to lay off. (my brother, him) __________ __________

4. I'm sorry I screwed up. (your plan, it) __________ __________
EXERCISE 10d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I wasn't sure if my plan would work, and I thought about it for a long time before I finally decided to try it. What did I do with my plan?

2. The secretary gave me an application and told me to put the correct information in the spaces, What did the secretary tell me to do?

3. In Question 2, how would you describe the application after I put the correct information in the spaces?

4. The mechanic is trying to fix my car’s transmission, but she's making a lot of mistakes. What is the mechanic doing to my car's transmission?

5. In Question 4, how would you describe the transmission after the mechanic finishes fixing it?

6. You give $3,000 to the mayor every month so that he will give your company city business. What do you do every month?

7. In Question 6, what is the $3,000 that you give to the mayor every month?

8. Business is bad at Nancy’s company, and they told her that they don't need her anymore. What happened to Nancy?

9. The hotel clerk forgot to call me in the morning to wake me up, and I was late for a very important meeting. What did the hotel clerk do to me?

10. I was born in Hawaii, and I lived there until I was eighteen. What did I do in Hawaii?

11. Sally’s parents told her she can't watch a TV show because it's for adults. What did Sally’s parents tell her about the TV show?

12. New home construction will decrease if there is a recession. What will new home construction do if there is a recession?

13. In Question 12, if there is a decrease in new home construction, what would it be called?

14. Timmy was teasing Susie all day until his mother told him to stop. What did Timmy's mother tell him to do?
15. Ali is doing Omar's job while Omar is on vacation. What is Ali doing?

16. Blankets and boxes of food will be given to the people whose homes were destroyed by the tornado. What will be done with the blankets and boxes of food?

17. Sarah had to answer the phone while she was watching a movie. After she returned to the TV room, Sarah's friend Sally told Sarah everything she had missed. What did Sally do for Sarah?

EXERCISE 10e, Review — Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

breakdown, 5  holdup, 7  hookup, 9  put-on, 1  setup, 5  takeoff, 1
breakout, 9  9

1. The pilot said that the __________ would be on time.
2. There was a __________ on the highway, and traffic was barely moving at all.
3. A cable __________ is usually $39.95, but this month it's free.
4. The guards suspected the prisoners were planning a __________.
5. Waiter, we've been waiting for our dinner for an hour. What's the __________?
6. I told my lawyer that it was a __________ and that I was innocent.
7. When the detectives came and arrested Hank, we didn't think it was real — just a big

EXERCISE 10f, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

catch up, 9  get along, 9  hook up, 9  talk down to, 3
chicken out, 9  give up, 9  pick out, 8  work up, 9

1. Don't try to run ten miles at first; you have to __________ __________ to it.
2. After searching for three days without any luck, the rescue team __________ __________ on finding any survivors.
3. The police showed me some pictures to see if I could __________ __________ the guy who mugged me.
4. You go to the bank, I'll go to the post office, and we'll _______ ________ with each other at the corner in forty-five minutes.

5. I wasn't happy about having Nancy for a partner on the project. I don't _______ ________ with her.

6. Just because you went to college and I didn't, doesn't make it okay for you to _______ ________ me.

7. The teacher said, "Your daughter has missed a lot of school, and she'll need to work hard to _______ ________ to the rest of the class."

8. Maria got scared and ________ of jumping off the high diving board.

11. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used in compound nouns

As we saw in Section 10, many two-word phrasal verbs can be used as nouns. Many of these nouns formed from two-word phrasal verbs can be combined with ordinary nouns to form compound nouns:

noun: backup   compound noun: backup disk
noun: follow-up   compound noun: follow-up call

Like ordinary compound nouns, the first noun has a function similar to that of an adjective:

question: What kind of clothes?
answer: Dirty clothes.

adjective

question: What kind of clothes?
answer: Workout clothes.

noun

The adjective dirty and the noun workout serve the same function: modifying the noun clothes. Always accent the first word in a compound noun:

noun: BACKup   compound noun: BACKup disk
noun: FOLLOW-up   compound noun: FOLLOW-up call
### backup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>backup</td>
<td>back up &amp; backs up</td>
<td>backing up</td>
<td>backed up</td>
<td>backed up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **back... up** p.v. When you walk backward, you backup. When you drive a vehicle in reverse, you **back up** or **back** the vehicle **up**.
   - The fire was so hot that we had to **back up**.
   - I put the car in reverse and **backed it up**.

2. **back up** p.v. When you are explaining something, and you repeat something that you already said, you **back up**.
   - You're going too fast. Can you **back up** a little and explain your plan again?
   - Sorry, I forgot part of the story. Let me **back up** a little.

3. **back... up** p.v. When you make a claim or statement and then show people evidence or give them information proving that the claim or statement is true or correct, you **back it up**.
   - No one believed Jim's accusations because he couldn't **back them up** with any evidence.
   - The IRS asked me for some receipts to **back up** my deductions.

4. **back... up** p.v. When you support people in a conflict or a confrontation, you **back them up**. When you support people by doing some work or a difficult assignment, you **back them up**.
   - Linda said she would **back me up** if I complained about our supervisor.
   - The general **backed up** his threats with 400,000 soldiers.
   - Jerry is the bar’s main bartender, and Tanya **backs him up** when it gets busy.

**backup** n. Someone or something that supports or is ready to provide support in a conflict or a confrontation by doing some work or a difficult assignment is a **backup**.

   - When the rioters grew more violent, the police called for **backup**.
   - The firefighter entered the burning building without a **backup**.

5. **back... up** p.v. When you duplicate important information, such as a computer program or data, so that you will still have it if the original information is lost or damaged, you **back it up**.
   - If you're going to install that new software, be sure you **back up** your entire hard disk first.
   - I **back my work up** every day before I go home.

**backup** n. A duplicate of important information, such as a computer program or data, is a **backup**.

   - I keep a **backup** of my important computer files on floppy disks.
   - The major gave a **backup** copy of the battle plan to his secretary.
**backed up** part.adj. After you duplicate important information such as a computer program or data, the original is backed up.

/ accidentally erased your book from your computer. I hope your work was backed up.

6. **back**... up p.v. When a piece of equipment or machinery is very important and another is kept available in case the one that is normally used fails, the second piece of equipment or machinery backs up the first.

The hospital bought a generator to back up the unreliable city power supply. We kept the old computer to back the new one up.

**backup** n. When a piece of equipment or machinery is very important and another is kept available in case the one that is normally used fails, the second piece of equipment or machinery is a backup.

The skydiver checked his main parachute and his backup before the flight. The school had to dose when the main power and the backup both failed.

7. **back**... up p.v. When something backs up, it is being prevented from moving, progressing, or flowing normally.

An accident backed up traffic for three miles. The assembly line is going to back up if Erik doesn't get the parts he needs soon.

**backup** n. A backup is a situation in which something is being prevented from moving, progressing, or flowing normally.

/ sat in that backup for three hours without moving an inch. The huge number of Christmas cards and packages caused a backup at the post office.

**backed up** part.adj. When something is being prevented from moving, progressing, or flowing normally, it is backed up.

Let's take the train downtown. Traffic is always backed up at this time of the morning.

---

**cut off** p.v. When you completely remove part of something with a knife, saw, or pair of scissors, you cut it off.

He cut off a piece of cheese so that I could taste it. One of the kings of England had his head cut off.

2. **cut**... off p.v. When you stop the supply or flow of something, such as water, electricity, or money, you cut it off or you cut off the people receiving it.

/ won’t be surprised if my electricity is cut off— I haven't paid the bill in three months.

The bartender told the drunk guy that she was cutting him off.
cutoff n. The time when something, such as water, electricity, or money, is cut off is the cutoff, cutoff point, or cutoff date.

I got a notice saying that if I don’t pay my water bill soon, the cutoff date will be March 10. Ninety is the cutoff—students with lower scores on the exam won’t be accepted into the advanced program.

3. cut... off p.v. When you abruptly and rudely drive a vehicle in front of other people’s vehicles, causing them to suddenly slow down or stop, you cut them off.

I had to slam on the brakes when some jerk cut me off on the way to work. The lady in the red car tried to cut me off, but I wouldn’t let her get in front of me.

4. cut... off p.v. When someone is cut off while speaking on the telephone, the connection is accidentally broken.

I was in the middle of an important call when I was cut off. Getting cut off happens all the time when you’re on the phone to China.

5. cut ...off p.v. When you create a physical or psychological barrier between yourself and other people, you cut yourself off from them. When you are separated from other people because of a barrier or a great distance, you are cut off from them.

After Dan joined a cult, he completely cut himself off from his family and friends. A flash flood cut us off from the rest of the expedition.

cutoff part.adj. When you are separated from other people because of a barrier or a great distance, you are cutoff.

The bridge was destroyed by the earthquake, and now we’re cut off.

Infinitive present tense -ing form past tense past participle

drop off drop off & drops off dropping off dropped off dropped off

1. drop... off p.v. When you take things or people to another place and leave them there, you drop them off.

Can you drop me off at the train station on your way to work? Luis dropped off his laundry at the cleaners.

drop-off n. Something that has been dropped off is a drop-off. The place where something or someone is dropped off is a drop-off point, drop off point, drop off window, and soon.

Luis left his laundry at the drop-off window. The north side of the train station parking lot is for drop-offs.

2. drop off p.v. When a business’s sales, the occurrence of some event, or the interest some people have in something declines, it drops off.

Attendance at baseball games has been dropping off in the last few years. After CDs were introduced, sales of records dropped off sharply.
**drop-off** n. A decline in a business's sales, in the occurrence of an event, or in the interest some people have in something, is a drop-off.

There has been a drop-off in traffic deaths thanks to strict drunk driving laws. The drop-off in car sales was explained by the recession.

3. **drop off** p.v. When the level of the ground declines steeply, it drops off.

Be careful hiking this trail, it drops off steeply on the other side of the mountain. The island has no beach at all. The land drops off straight into the sea.

**drop-off** n. A steep decline in the level of the ground is a drop-off.

The bus driver didn't see the drop-off, and the bus plunged into the gorge. It was hard to see the drop-off because of the dense jungle.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>follow up</td>
<td>follow up &amp; follows up</td>
<td>following up</td>
<td>followed up</td>
<td>followed up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **follow up** (on) p.v. When you follow up on something, you return to something that was important to you previously because you now have more information or more time or because you want to make sure some effort you made previously is correct or effective.

/ saw a beautiful house with a “for sale” sign and I followed up on it when I got home. The doctor told me I'd need to follow up the treatment with physical therapy.

**follow-up** n. A follow-up, follow-up call, follow-up visit, and so on, is a return to something that was important to you previously because you now have more information or more time or because you want to make sure some effort you made previously is correct or effective.

The customer service manager made a follow-up call to make sure I was happy with the repair job. The doctor asked me to see him two months after the operation for a follow-up.

**take out**

1. **take ... out** (of) p.v. When you take something out or take it out of a container, storage place, or building, you remove it. Put in/into is the opposite of take out.

/ want to take some books out of the library tonight. Jake took out a gun and shouted, "This is a holdup!" Nancy took $500 out of the bank.

**takeout** n. Takeout is food that is taken from a restaurant to be eaten at another location. Carryout and carry-out food are the same as takeout and take-out food.

/ don't feel like cooking tonight. Let's get takeout. That take-out chicken is good, but it sure is greasy.
2. *take ... out* (of) p.v. When you remove something because you do not want it or because it is damaged, you *take it out* or *take it out of* something. *Put in/into* is the opposite of *take out*.

- The teacher said my story would be a lot better if I *took this part out* of the third paragraph.
- The school will be closed while the asbestos insulation is being *taken out* and replaced.

3. *take... out* (of) p.v. When you *take money out* or *take money out of* a bank or a bank account, you withdraw the money. *Put in* is the opposite of *take out*.

- I had to *take money out* of my savings account to pay for my medical bills.
- Nicole’s at the bank *taking $1,000 out*.

4. *take... out* p.v. When you *take people out* or *you go with them to do something enjoyable* — dinner in a restaurant, a movie, and so on — and pay for it yourself.

- What do you think about *taking Mom out* for Mother’s Day?
- Jim *took his girlfriend out* last Friday.

5. *take... out* p.v. [informal] When you *take people out*, you kill them.

- The snipers will try to *take out* the kidnapper when he opens the door.
- The hit man *took Vito out* with a shotgun blast to the head.

---

**try out**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>try out</td>
<td>try out/tries out</td>
<td>trying out</td>
<td>tried out</td>
<td>tried out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. *try... out* p.v. When you *try something out*, you try it to see if you want to buy it or to see if you want to start using it regularly.

- I’m not going to spend $2,000 on a bicycle unless I *try it out* first. You can *try it out* for thirty days without any obligation.

2. *try... out* p.v. When you *try people out*, you give them a chance to show that they can perform a job well before hiring them or before giving them more difficult work to do.

- The manager agreed to *try him out* for a week.
- I told the supervisor that if she *tried me out*, she’d see that I could do the job.

---

**tryout** n. When you give something a *tryout*, you test it to see if you want to buy it or start using it regularly.

- *gave Betty’s new diet a tryout,* but I actually gained weight.

**tryout** n. When you give people a *tryout*, you give them a chance to show that they can perform a job well before hiring them or before giving them more difficult work to do.

- *Tryouts* for the football team will be next Saturday and Sunday.
- *If you give Mike a tryout,* I’m sure you won’t be disappointed.
3. **try out** (for) p.v. When you **try out** or **try out** for something, you try to show that you can perform a job well in order to get hired.

   A lot of guys will **try out**, but only a handful will make the team.

   Daniela’s mother told her, “**Trying out** for the cheerleading squad isn’t as important as doing your homework.”

### Infinitive present tense -ing form past tense past participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wake up</th>
<th>wake up</th>
<th>wakes up</th>
<th>waking up</th>
<th>woke up</th>
<th>woken up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **wake... up** p.v. When you stop sleeping, you **wake up**. When you cause other people to stop sleeping, you **wake them up**.

   AH is so sleepy in class that the teacher must **wake him up** every five minutes.

   I **woke up** at 2:00 AM and couldn’t get back to sleep.

   **wake-up** part.adj. When you are staying at a hotel and you ask the desk clerk to call you at a certain time to **wake you up**, you ask for a **wake-up** call.

   / asked the desk clerk to give me a **wake-up** call at 7:30.

2. **wake... up** p.v. When you learn something that causes you to understand the truth about something or someone, it **wakes you up** or **wakes you up** to the truth about something or someone.

   / used to smoke, but when my best friend died of lung cancer, it really **woke me up**. Hey, **wake up**!

   Nicole is lying to you. Can’t you see that?

### Work out

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>work out</th>
<th>work out</th>
<th>works out</th>
<th>working out</th>
<th>worked out</th>
<th>worked out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **work out** p.v. When a situation **works out** a certain way, it happens that way. When a situation does not **work out**, it is not satisfactory.

   The switch to the new system **worked out** a lot better than anyone expected.

   She said that living with her in-laws wasn’t **working out** very well.

2. **work out** p.v. When a situation **works out**, the end result is successful.

   Yes, I thought your idea was terrible, but I must admit it **worked out**.

   The marriage didn’t **work out**, and they were divorced after six months.

3. **work out** p.v. When a calculation or measurement **works out** to be a certain amount, this amount is the result of the calculation or measurement.

   The cost of the booze we need for the reception **works out** to more than $1,500.

   The monthly payment on a 6 percent loan **works out** to $642.

4. **work... out** p.v. When you **work out** a calculation, measurement, or other problem, you do the work necessary to determine the result of the calculation or measurement or think about how to solve the problem.
Maria worked out how much paint we will need for the living room — twenty-five gallons.
I’ve forgotten how to work out math problems without a calculator.
You need to go to the airport, I need to go to work, and we have only one car. How are we going to work this out?

5. **work out** p.v. When you **work out** a solution or plan, you decide what to do after careful consideration, either alone or in discussion with other people.
The opposing lawyers **worked out** a compromise.
I think I’ve **worked out** a way to buy a new car without borrowing money.

6. **work out** p.v. When you exercise in order to improve your health or physical appearance, you **work out**.

**Bob works out** in the gym for two hours every night. I’m a fat slob.
I need to start **working out** again.

**Workout** n. A series of exercises done in order to improve your health or physical appearance is a **workout**. **Workout** clothes are clothes you wear while exercising.
I’m really sore from that **workout** last night. The trainer designed a **workout** for each player on the team.

**Workout** n. When you say that you gave a mechanical device or system a **workout**, you mean that you caused it to perform some lengthy or difficult work.

Driving to Alaska sure gave this old truck a **workout**.
The snack bar got a real **workout** when three buses full of hungry tourists stopped at the same time.

**EXERCISE 11 a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. almost had an accident on the way to work when another driver ________ me _________.
2. With so many delivery truck drivers out sick with the flu, deliveries are starting to _________.
3. You should always ________ ________ your important computer files.
4. The art restorers are trying to ________ a way to clean the painting without damaging it.
5. hit a tree while I was ________ my car _________.
6. The butcher has only nine fingers. He ________ the other one _________.

77
7. Professor Childress has some interesting theories, but can he ______ them ______ with any evidence?
8. After every sale, a good salesperson ______ ______ with a cat! to make sure the customer is satisfied.
9. I’m going to leave early tomorrow so that I can ______ some film ______ at the photo lab.
10. No one believed I was telling the truth until Charles ______ me ______.
11. I usually ______ ______ around 7:00, but this morning I overslept.
12. Lydia had planned to spend the summer in Italy, but it didn't ______ ______.
13. The sharpshooter was ordered to ______ ______ the enemy leader.
14. The designers put in manual controls to ______ ______ the automatic system.
15. David and Maria ______ ______ how much their wedding is going to cost.
16. The cost of their wedding ______ ______ to $225 per person.
17. Be careful — the north side of the mountain ______ ______ sharply.
18. Hello? Hello? The phone is dead; I guess we were ______ ______.
19. Next weekend we're ______ Mom and Dad ______ for their fiftieth wedding anniversary.
20. The professor’s lecture was really confusing, so I asked him to please ______ ______ and explain it again.
21. The bank robbers tried to escape through the back door, but the police went to the back of the bank and ______ ______ them ______.
22. People’s fascination with the quintuplets ______ ______ quickly after the sextuplets were born.
23. Bob bought some new skis, and this weekend he’s going to ______ them ______.
24. I wasn’t very responsible when I was younger, but having children really ______ me ______.
25. Ned used to exercise every day, but he hasn’t ______ ______ in months.
26. The baseball manager decided to ____________ the new pitcher to see what he could do.
27. I like most of this article you wrote about me, but there's one thing I'd like you to ____________.
28. Sam had a lot of big ideas when he was young, but his life sure hasn't ____________ the way he expected.
29. The electricity was ____________ after a tree fell during the storm and cut some power lines.
30. I ____________ my ID card ____________ of my pocket and showed it to the guard.
31. Lydia has never ____________ a penny ____________ of her savings account.

**EXERCISE 11 b** — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Did you ____________? (your work, it) ____________ ____________ ____________
2. They’re ____________ ____________ (the power, it) ____________ ____________ ____________
3. I ____________ ____________ at the airport. (Frank/him) ____________ ____________ ____________
4. Mom asked me to ____________ ____________ ____________ (the garbage, it) ____________ ____________ ____________

**EXERCISE 11 c** — Write answers to the questions using nouns and compound nouns from this section. There may be more than one way to answer a question.

1. The photographer always keeps two cameras with him. One is his main camera. He'll use the second if there's a problem with the first. What is the second camera?
2. The phone company says my telephone service will stop on July 1 if I don’t pay my bill before that date. What is July 1?
3. Dr. Smith is a new doctor. If he's not sure how to treat a patient, he'll call Dr. Wood for help. What is Dr. Wood to Dr. Smith?
4. You used the new exercise equipment to see if you wanted to buy it. What did you do to the exercise equipment?
5. The police arrested Mrs. Taylor's husband because he was beating her. A social worker visited Mrs. Taylor a few days later to talk to her. What did the social worker do?
6. The clothes I wore yesterday while I was exercising got very dirty. What got dirty?
7. We got food from a Chinese restaurant and ate it at home. What kind of food did we eat?
8. Because of construction, traffic on the interstate stopped and there was a long line of cars. What was on
9. The number of arrests for burglary is a lot lower this year than last year. What has happened to the number of arrests for burglary?

10. Sally lost something very important on her computer because she didn't make another copy in case there was a problem with the original. Why did Sally have a problem?
11. At the edge of the continental shelf, the sea floor falls several thousand feet. What is at the edge of the continental shelf?

12. I made 7,000 copies on this photocopier. What did I do to the photocopier?

EXERCISE 11d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The electric company stopped my electricity because I didn't pay my bill. What did they do to the electricity?

2. I bought some fried chicken, and I took it to my house. What kind of food did I buy?

3. Exercising is good for your health. What is good for your health?

4. The long-distance company offered to let me use their service free for thirty days, and I'm going to try it. What am I going to do to the long-distance company's service?

5. In Question 4, what is the long-distance company letting me do?

6. During the flood, a lot of people couldn't leave their houses because of the water. What did the water do to them?

7. In Question 6, how would you describe these people?

8. You're making an extra copy of your work just in case. What are you doing?

9. In Question 8, what would you call the extra copy of your work that you're making?

10. The newspaper reporter is getting more information about something interesting that someone told her on the phone. What is the reporter doing?

H. My exercise routine is very difficult. What is difficult?

12. The prosecutor proved his accusation with some photographs. What did the prosecutor do with the photographs?

13. Jane wants to show the basketball coach that she would be a good member of the basketball team. What does Jane want to do?

14. I have a second alarm clock in case the first doesn't wake me up. What does my second alarm clock do to my first?
15. In Question 14, what would you call my second alarm clock?

16. Nicole takes her friend to the train station every morning. What does Nicole do to her friend?

17. I have an appointment with my doctor next month so that he can see if my surgery was successful. What would you call my appointment next month?

18. Maria’s plan isn’t happening the way she expected. What isn’t Maria’s plan doing?

19. Bill went with Judy to dinner and a movie and he paid for everything. What did Bill do?

20. Two hundred guests at $45 each calculates to $9,000. What does 200 guests at $45 each do?

21. I have never stopped sleeping at 3:30 in the morning before. What have I never done before?

EXERCISE 11 e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

**Phrasal Verbs:**
- come from, 1
- give back, 1
- hand out, 10
- look for, 1
- fall off, 10
- go ahead, 10
- hear about, 2
- screw out of, 3
- feel up to, 3
- go along with, 3
- kick back, 10
- screw up, 10
- fill in, 10
- grow up, 10
- lay off, 10
- stay off, 2

1. If the company doesn’t ___________ 20 percent of its employees, it's going to go out of business.
2. Blankets and boxes of food were ___________ to the flood victims.
3. I ___________ in Germany because my father was in the Army there.
4. Kathy didn’t close her car window last night, and it rained. She really ___________.
5. You ___________; I’ll catch up with you later.
6. The percentage of people who smoke ___________ after smoking was linked with lung cancer and heart disease.
7. What can I do to get my black cat to ___________ my white couch?
8. I've been ___________ an apartment that allows dogs, but I can't find one.
9. He’s ___________ New York and will be here in two hours.

---

10.
11.
10. I was so stuffed from that huge dinner my mother cooked that I didn’t _______ _________ playing tennis afterward.
11. Their lawyer tried to _______ them _______ $ 120,000.
12. I don’t feel like going anywhere tonight. Let’s just _______ ________ and take it easy.
13. I’m sorry I can’t agree with you, Joe, but I have to _______ ________ Linda on this decision.
14. Here’s my flashlight. Make sure you _______ _______ when you’re finished using it.
15. I didn’t get 100 on the test because I forgot to _______ _______ one of the blanks.
16. This restaurant is wonderful. I’m surprised I haven’t _______ _______ it before.

12. FOCUS ON: past perfect phrasal verbs
The past perfect is used to say that one thing in the past happened before another thing in the past:

Mike said the wedding had fallen through.

past earlier in the past

When I got to work, Mr. Toy for had already signed in.

past earlier in the past

The past perfect is formed with had and the past participle of the verb:

present: He wakes up.

past: He woke up.

past perfect: He had woken up.

Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>back off</td>
<td>back off</td>
<td>backing off</td>
<td>backed off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. back off p.v. When you move away from danger or a person you are arguing or fighting with in order to avoid injury or a more serious fight or argument, you back off. When you tell people to back off, you are warning them that you are becoming angry and that a fight or argument is likely.
I'm warning you! You'd better back off.
Tom backed off when he saw that Jake had a gun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come across</td>
<td>coming across</td>
<td>came across</td>
<td>come across</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **come across** **p.v.** When people cross from one side of a space or distance to where you are, they come across.
   As soon as Nicole saw me, she came across the room and gave me a big hug.
   By 1910, millions of immigrants had come across the ocean to America.

2. **come across** **p.v.** When you come across people or things, you see or find them without planning or expecting to. Run across is similar to come across.
   / asked the antique dealer if she had ever come across a Windsor chair.
   On the trail, we came across some hikers from Australia.

3. **come across** **p.v.** When something you say or do comes across a certain way, your attitude or feelings are perceived in this way by other people.
   / was just joking, but I don't think it came across that way.
   His American humor didn't come across well in Britain.

**come up**

1. **come up** **(to)** **p.v.** When people move toward you to a higher level or position, or from the south to the north, they come up. Come down is the opposite of come up.
   Why don't you come up and see me some time?
   My cousin from San Antonio came up to Detroit last week.

2. **come up** **p.v.** When you move to a higher social or professional position, you come up.
   / saw Dan driving a Mercedes. He's really coming up in the world.
   The major didn't go to the military academy. He came up through the ranks.

3. **come up** **p.v.** When a new topic is introduced into a conversation, it comes up.
   / don't agree with Jim about anything, so if politics comes up, I just leave the room.
   We were discussing possible candidates to manage the new office, and your name came up.

4. **come up** **p.v.** When something unexpected happens that requires further attention, it comes up.
   I'm sorry I can't go to your party; something important has come up.
   Until this situation came up, we were having a nice, relaxing weekend.

5. **come up** **p.v.** [always continuous] When something is coming up, it will happen soon.
Mother’s Day is coming up, so I need to buy my mother a gift soon.
The TV announcer told the audience what was coming up after the commercial.

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fall through</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall through &amp; falls through</td>
<td>falling through</td>
<td>fell through</td>
<td>fallen through</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **fall through** p.v. When people or things drop through an opening from one side to the other side, they fall through.
   - The roofer had fallen through a hole in the roof.
   - My Uncle Fred was ice fishing when he fell through a hole in the ice and was never seen again.

2. **fall through** p.v. When a plan, an arrangement, or a business deal does not happen or is canceled because of a problem or because someone does not do what is expected, it falls through.
   - The family reunion fell through after Dad got sick.
   - Our house is back on the market. The deal fell through because the buyers couldn’t get a loan.

### put out

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>put out</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>put up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up &amp; puts up</td>
<td>putting up</td>
<td>put up</td>
<td>put up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **put... up** p.v. When you move something to a higher level, you put it up.
   - Put these knives up where the baby can’t reach them.
   - He aimed the gun at me and said, “Put your hands up or I’ll shoot.”

2. **put... up** p.v. When you attach something, such as a picture or a sign, to a wall, you put it up.
   - The teacher had put some posters up in her new classroom.
   - Our real estate agent is putting up a “for sale” sign.

3. **put... up** p.v. When you build or install something, such as a building, shelf, fence, or wall, you put it up.
   - We need to put up a fence to keep the rabbits out of our garden.
   - I talked to a carpenter about putting up some shelves in the family room.

4. **put... up** p.v. When you erect or assemble something that is collapsed, folded, or in several pieces, you put it up.
   - The circus put up their tent outside of town.
   - The Native Americans stopped by the river and put up their teepees.

5. **put up** p.v. When you contribute money to pay for or help pay for something, you put up the money.
14. The charity was asked to ______ $2 million toward the purchase of new medical equipment.

15. Someone had ______ the lid ______ so tightly that I couldn’t get it off.
16. My house was destroyed by a tornado. Can you ______ me ______ for a few days?
17. I was upstairs working when my wife ______ to ask me what I wanted for lunch.
18. The applicant’s criticism of his previous employer didn’t ______ ______ well with the interviewer.
19. I bought a plastic Christmas tree that’s really easy to ______ ______.
20. Nancy ______ the Golden Gate Bridge every morning to go to work.
21. I didn’t go to a fancy Ivy League college. I ______ the hard way.
22. Can you ______ the window shade ______ so that we can get more light in here, please?
23. Susie’s mother told her that Christmas was ______ ______, so she had better be a good girl.

**EXERCISE 12b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Make all the phrasal verbs past perfect.**

1. Mike told me that Jerry had been angry and was going to hit Bill, but that Jerry had then changed his mind and walked away. What had Jerry done?

2. Luis had written his name on a piece of paper to show that he had come to work. What had Luis done?

3. The carpenter had dropped suddenly from the second floor to the first floor through a hole IN the floor. What had the carpenter done?

4. Timmy had argued with his mother because he didn't want to go to bed. What had Timmy done?

5. Todd's explanation made a good impression on the jury. What had Todd's explanation done?

6. The rich lady had given the money to build an animal shelter. What had the rich lady done?
7. The host of the TV talk show had said that the dancing bear act was going to take place right after the commercial. What had the host of the TV show said about the dancing bear act?

8. The cook had turned the lid of the jar so that it was tight. What had the cook done?

9. In Question 8, how would you describe the lid of the jar after the cook turned it so that it was tight?

10. The homeless shelter had allowed them to sleep there overnight. What had the homeless shelter done?

11. The president canceled his vacation because a serious problem had suddenly occurred. Why did the president cancel his vacation?

12. We’d had a deal to buy a new house, but we didn’t buy it because of a problem. What had happened to our deal?

13. Marsha’s name had been mentioned during the meeting. What had Marsha’s name done?

14. The Ortegas had built a fence around their swimming pool. What had the Ortegas done?

15. You had found some old newspapers while cleaning the attic. What had you done?

16. Miguel had traveled from Miami to New York. What had Miguel done?

17. The doctor had written her name on a piece of paper to show that she had left the hospital. What had the doctor done?

EXERCISE 12c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to make some of them questions, some negative, and some present or past perfect.

1. _________________________________________________. 2. _________________________________________________.

3. _________________________________________________. 4. _________________________________________________.

5. _________________________________________________. 6. _________________________________________________.

7. _________________________________________________. 8. _________________________________________________.
EXERCISE 12d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

back up, 11  follow up, 11  point to, 4  try out, 11  
cut off, 11  go after, 4  put to, 4  wake up, 11  
drop off, 11  pay for, 4  take out, 11  work out, 11  
fall off, 10  plan for, 4  throw up, 2  wrap up, 4

1. I don't care if it takes me the rest of my life, you'll __________ the terrible thing you did!
2. The salesman got a good lead from a friend, and he __________ on it immediately.
3. We need to take the baby to the doctor right now. She's __________ twice in the last hour.
4. Sales have __________ by 13 percent in the last year.
5. That was a very interesting question you __________ Mark at the meeting.
6. Relax, everything's going to __________ okay.
7. Can you follow me in your car so that I can __________ my car __________ at the mechanic?
8. Erik __________ his son __________ and told him it was time for school.
9. I drove into the mountains to __________ my truck's four-wheel drive __________.
10. You should always __________ anything important before you install a new program.
11. The police officer asked the boy where his father was, and the boy __________ the bar __________ across the street.
12. It's getting pretty late. Let's __________ this meeting __________.
13. The guy behind the counter __________ a small piece of cheese so I could taste it.
14. It was a bit of a problem when Jane brought her children with her to my dinner party. I hadn't __________ so many people.
15. The censor told the film director to __________ some of the violent scenes.
16. Jane's going to __________ that new job in the Boston office.

90
13. FOCUS ON: passive phrasal verbs, 1

The passive voice is used when what happened (the verb) is more important than who did it (the subject):

The scene of the crime was dosed off by the police.

when the subject is obvious:
The tests were handed in. (by the students — who else?)

or when the subject is unknown:
My dog was run over. (by an unknown person)

The passive is formed with be and the past participle of the verb. Be can be in any tense and can be continuous:

The game has been called off.
My name was left off.
The tent is being set up.
The criminals will be tracked down.

As we saw in the first three examples, saying who performed the action with a by phrase is optional, but it is always possible. This is a good way to test a sentence to see if it is in the passive:

The game has been called off by the referee.
My name was left off by Charles.
The tent is being set up by the campers.
The criminals will be tracked down by the police.

Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>call off</td>
<td>call off &amp; calls off</td>
<td>calling off</td>
<td>called off</td>
<td>called off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. call... off p.v. When you call off an event, such as a party, game, or something else that had been previously planned, you cancel it.

The football game was called off because of rain.
We can't call the party off— it's going to start in half an hour.

1. close ... off p.v. When you close off an area you prohibit people from entering it or passing through it by locking the door or blocking the entrance.

The police closed several streets off because of the parade.
The house was so expensive to heat that the owners closed several rooms off.

91
closed off part.adj. An area that you are prohibited from entering or passing through because the door has been locked or the entrance has been blocked is closed off

Three rooms in the museum are closed off.

Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hand in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand in &amp; hands in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. hand ... in (to) p.v. When you complete a test, report, or project and you give it to the person who assigned the work, you hand it in or hand it in to that person. Turn in is similar to hand in.
   - The tests must be handed in no later than 11:00.
   - He finished his investigation and handed his report in to the committee.

2. hand ... in p.v. When you hand in your resignation or letter of resignation, you inform your employer that you are quitting your job.
   - I was so furious that I handed my letter of resignation in the next day.
   - The President asked the cabinet members to hand in their resignations.

3. hand ... in (to) p.v. When you give something to a person of authority who has demanded it or because you no longer need or want it, you hand it in or hand it in to a person of authority. Turn in is similar to hand in.
   - The guard was ordered to hand his gun in after he shot the window washer.
   - The drivers return to the factory at 5:00 and hand their keys in to the dispatcher before they leave.

hit on hit on & hits on hitting on hit on hit on

1. hit on p.v. When you think of an interesting idea or a solution to a problem, you hit on it.
   - I think I've hit on a way to solve this problem.
   - After two years of tests, they finally hit on the solution.

2. hit on p.v. [informal] When you hit on a person of the opposite sex, you approach and aggressively try to interest that person in you romantically or sexually.
   - Lydia had a terrible time at the party. She was hit on by every guy there.
   - Let's go somewhere else — Mark keeps hitting on me, and I'm tired of it.

leave off leave off & leaves off leaving off left off left off

1. leave... off p.v. When you do not include people or things on a list, either accidentally or deliberately, you leave them off.
   - After what happened at the last party, Dan wasn't surprised that he was left off the guest list.
   - Check to make sure you don't leave anyone off the list.
2. leave off p.v. When you interrupt something that you intend to finish later, you leave off
at the point where you stop.

Okay class, we left off on page 92 last week, so open your books to page 93.

Finish your story, Uncle Fred. You left off where the giant octopus was about to eat you.

Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>let off</td>
<td>let off &amp; lets off</td>
<td>letting off</td>
<td>let off</td>
<td>let off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. let... off p.v. When you let someone off a bus or other form of transportation, you stop it
so that person can leave it.

The driver let her off at the corner. That's my house there. Can
you let me off please?

2. let... off p.v. When you are let off by a person in authority, you are not punished or you
are given only a light punishment.

It was Jake's first offense, so the judge let him off with a warning.

People were shocked that he had been let off so lightly.

3. let... off p.v. When you fire a gun or explode bombs or fireworks, you let them off.
(regional) When you let off steam, you express angry feelings or frustration or do
something to relieve those feelings.

The high school was evacuated after someone let off a smoke bomb.

When I was a kid I used to love letting off firecrackers on the Fourth of July.

I'm sorry I was so angry this morning; I was just letting off steam.

light up

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>light up &amp; lights up</th>
<th>lighting up</th>
<th>lit up</th>
<th>lit up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. light... up p.v. When you shine lights on something or attach lights to
something, you light it up.

Airport runways are lit up so that pilots can see them in the dark.

The police lit the house up with their spotlights.

lit up part.adj. After a light is shined on something or you put lights inside or attach lights to
the outside of something, it is lit up.

The signs aren't lit up, so it's hard to see them at night.

2. light... up p.v. When you light up a cigarette, cigar, or pipe, you use a match or lighter
to start it burning.

Here are the matches — let's light up. Lighting a cigarette up next to the gasoline truck was the last
thing he ever did.
Infinitive  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>track</strong></td>
<td><strong>tracks</strong></td>
<td><strong>tracking</strong></td>
<td><strong>tracked</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **track... down** p.v. When you find things or people after looking very hard for them, you track them **down**.
   - The terrorists were **tracked down** by Interpol.
   - I finally **tracked down** that book I've been looking for.

**EXERCISE 13a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The judge ________ her ________ with a warning.

2. It wasn't cold enough, so we ________ ________ the hockey game.

3. As soon as Nancy's boyfriend went to the washroom, the guy at the next table ________ ________ her.

4. Every Christmas my father used to ________ ________ our house with thousands of lights.

5. The police finally ________ ________ the killers ________ and arrested them.

6. The principal caught me as I was ________ ________ a cigarette in the washroom.

7. The room that was damaged by the fire was ________ ________ to the public.

8. I was really angry that I was ________ ________ the list.

9. That's a great idea! You've really ________ ________ something.

10. Three students got a zero because their projects weren't ________ ________ on time.

11. Driver, can you ________ ________ me ________ at the next corner?

12. Dr. Smith resumed his lecture where he had ________ ________ before the lunch break.

13. After Wilson screwed up the finance department, he was asked to ________ ________ his letter of resignation.

14. Even though the enemy soldiers were half a mile away, we ________ ________ a few shots.

15. The crooked police officers were ordered to ________ ________ their badges ________.
EXERCISE 13b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The bride hasn’t called off. (the wedding, it) ________ ________ ________

2. Are they closing off? (the gallery, it) ________ ________ ________

3. The accountant handed in. (her report, it) ________ ________ ________

4. Have you left off? (Carmen, her) ________ ________ ________

5. The judge let off. (the pickpocket, him) ________ ________ ________

6. I told him not to light up. (the cigarette, it) ________ ________ ________
7. The EPA tracked down (the polluters, them) ________ ________ ________

EXERCISE 13c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Make all the phrasal verbs passive.

1. He discovered the source of the rumor. What happened to the source of the rumor?
2. The students finished their quizzes and gave them to the teacher. What happened to the quizzes?
3. The judge never sends first-time offenders to jail. What always happens to first-time offenders?
4. A guy started talking to Heather at the dance. What happened to Heather?
5. The list of candidates didn't include your name. What happened to your name?
6. The referee canceled the game. What happened to the game?
7. They are putting ropes around the plaza so that no one can go in. What is happening to the plaza?
8. In Question 7, after they finish putting ropes around the plaza, how would you describe it?
9. The battleship shined lights on the enemy submarine. What happened to the enemy submarine?
10. In Question 9, how would you describe the submarine after the battleship shined lights on it?
EXERCISE 13d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

burn down, 5  let out, 7  point out, 7  set up, 5
call in, 5  look at, 5  run into, 1  take apart, 7
give back, 1  pile up, 5  run over, 7  take off, 1
hand back, 5  plan for, 4  screw out of, 3  talk down to, 3

1. Most of the city was __________ by the invading soldiers.
2. Teacher, will points be __________ for spelling?
3. Dan is so rude — I have never been __________ like that before.
4. A conference will be __________ between the lawyers for each side.
5. The Taylors were __________ their life savings by their stockbroker.
6. The children were happy to be __________ of school early.
7. The entire staff was __________ to the office and given pink slips.
8. Several flaws in the plan were __________.
9. Raquel was almost __________ by a cement truck while she was driving to work.
10. There wasn't enough room inside the cabin, so the firewood had to be __________ outside.
11. The general said the occupied territory would never be __________.
12. The test will be __________ to the students tomorrow.
13. This engine has been __________ three times, but no one can figure out what's wrong with it.
14. This is a very important project. Every possible problem must be __________.
15. My neighbor stopped at the side of the road to change a flat tire, and he was __________ and killed by a drunk driver.
16. Each proposed design for the new flag was __________ and rejected.
14. FOCUS ON: participle adjectives formed from phrasal verbs, 1

The past participles of many English verbs can also be used as adjectives. You will see that sentences with adjectives formed from past participles are very similar to sentences with verbs in the passive voice: in both cases a form of be is used with the past participle. For this reason, it is not always easy to say whether a sentence contains an adjective formed from a past participle or a verb in the passive voice:

The door was closed. (Is this a passive sentence or is dosed an adjective?)

Sometimes, whether a sentence contains an adjective formed from a past participle or a verb in the passive voice is clear from the sentence structure:

The door was closed by the secretary. (passive)

The door was closed when I came home last night. (adjective)

or the context:

question: What happens if the health inspector finds rats in a restaurant?
answer: It’s closed. (passive)

question: Is the window open?
answer: It’s closed. (adjective)

But in some cases it is not possible to say absolutely whether a sentence contains an adjective formed from a past participle or a verb in the passive voice. Fortunately, it is usually not very important because the meaning is often essentially the same. For that reason, throughout this book true adjectives formed from past participles and past participles functioning as adjectives are both classified as participle adjectives.

Much more important than the difference between adjectives formed from past participles and past participles functioning as adjectives is what the words mean.

Some participle adjectives are written with a hyphen (make-up), some without a hyphen (fixed up), and some as one word (rundown). Because not everyone agrees which participle adjectives should be hyphenated/which should not, and which should be written as one word, you will occasionally see the same participle adjective written with or without a hyphen or written as one word. Also, British English hyphenates many participle adjectives that are not normally hyphenated in American English; many of the participle adjectives shown unhyphenated in this book are hyphenated in British English.
0.1. butt in **p.v.** When you enter a conversation, situation, or place (especially a line) aggressively, rudely, and without invitation you **butt in.**

I was trying to talk to Mm at the party, but Bob kept **butting in.**

My father taught me that it's not polite to **butt in** line; you have to go to the back and wait your turn.

0. dress up **p.v.** When you **dress up,** you wear very nice clothes, often for a special occasion. When you **dress** people up, you put very nice clothes on them/ often for a special occasion.

You should always **dress up** for a job interview.

The Taylors **dressed** their children up so they could take some pictures.

0.1. dressed up **part.adj.** When you are **dressed up,** you are wearing very nice clothes, often for a special occasion.

Where are Tom and Nancy going? They're all **dressed up.**

I felt like an idiot at the party — everyone was really **dressed up** except me.

0.2. dress up (like/as) **p.v.** When people wear old-fashioned clothes or costumes, they **dress up, dress up** like someone, or **dress up** as someone.

Did you see Charles at the Halloween party? He **dressed up** like a cowboy.

At Jane's costume party, everyone has to **dress up** as a clown.

0. dry up **p.v.** When something **dries up** or something **dries it up,** all the water or other liquid in it goes away.

The sun came out and **dried** up all the rain. The Great Salt Lake is slowly **drying up.**

0.1. dried up **part.adj.** After all water or other liquid in something goes away, it is **dried up.**

The cowboys reached the river only to find that it was **dried up.**

These leaves will burn okay now that they're **dried up.**

0.2. dry up **p.v.** When the amount or supply of something gets smaller and then disappears completely, it **dries up.**

The factory switched to synthetic rubber after the supply of natural rubber **dried up.**

The small grocery store's business **dried up** after a huge supermarket opened across the street.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fill out</td>
<td>fill out &amp; fills out</td>
<td>filling out</td>
<td>filled out</td>
<td>filled out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **fill... out** p.v. When you **fill out** a form, you put information in the correct spaces. **Fill in** is the same as **fill out**.
   - The personnel director asked Sofia to **fill out** an application.
   - Fill the withdrawal slip **out** and give it to the teller.

2. **fill... out** p.v. When slender people gain weight, they **fill out**.
   - Jake was really thin when he got out of prison, but he has really **filled out** since then.
   - Nicole started to **fill out** after she started working at the candy shop.

3. **put away** p.v. When you return something to the place where it is usually stored while it is not being used, you **put it away**.
   - I told you to **put away** your toys before you go outside.
   - Todd always dries the dishes, and I **put them away**.

4. **put away** part.adj. If something is in the place where it is usually stored while it is not being used, it is **put away**.
   - Where is my tool kit? I looked in the closet, and it's not **put away**. The dishes are **put away**. Now let's watch TV.

5. **put... away** p.v. When people are **put away**, they are sent to prison or a mental institution.
   - I hope they **put that maniac away** and throw away the key.
   - Jake was **put away** for ten years after he was convicted of murder.

6. **put... away** p.v. [informal] When you consume large quantities of food or drink (especially alcoholic drink), you **put it away**.
   - Be sure to buy plenty of beer if David is coming to the party. He can really **put it away**.

7. **stick up** p.v. When you use a gun or other weapon to rob people, banks, or stores, you **stick them up**. **Hold up** is the same as **stick up**.
Call the police! They're sticking up the bank.
If we need some money, we can always stick up a liquor store.

stickup n. When someone uses a gun or other weapon to rob a person, bank, or store, there is a stickup. A holdup is the same as a stickup.
A man wearing a ski mask yelled, "This is a stickup!"
The detective was asking questions about the stickup last night.

2. stick... up p.v. When you put something, such as a picture, sign, or notice, in a place where people can see it, you stick it up.
Sam stuck a notice up about his lost dog.
I'm going to stick these "no smoking" signs up all over the school.

3. stick... up p.v. When you push something inside a container or space that is long and narrow, you stick it up.
We had to take Susie to the emergency room after she stuck a paper clip up her nose.
Mark stuck his hand up the chimney to try to find the hidden key.

4. stick up p.v. When something long and narrow is raised above the surface, it sticks up.
Be careful walking around a construction site — there might be a nail sticking up.
My hair was sticking up in the back after I woke up from my nap.

stuck-up part.adj. [informal — although the participle adjective stuck-up derives from stick up, the verb form is never used in this sense] When you think you are better than other people because you are more beautiful or more intelligent or because you come from a higher level of society, you are stuck-up.
Heather is the most popular girl in the school, but she isn't stuck-up.
They're so stuck-up — they'll never sit at our table.

Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>use up</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>use up</td>
<td>use up &amp; uses up</td>
<td>using up</td>
<td>used up</td>
<td>used up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. use... up p.v. When you use up something, you use all of it.
After you use something up, be sure to write it on the grocery list.
I used up all the glue; we need to buy more.

used up part.adj. After all of something has been used, it is used up.
Do we have another tube of toothpaste in the house? This one's used up.

wind

| wind up | wind up & winds up | winding up | wound up | wound up |

1. wind ...up p.v. When you turn the handle or key of a mechanical toy, watch, or clock to make it operate, you wind it up.
/ overslept because I forgot to wind up my alarm clock. This toy doesn't use batteries; you have to wind it up.

wound up part.adj. After someone turns the handle or key of a mechanical toy, watch, or clock, it is wound up.

The toy soldier is wound up. Just push the button to make it walk.

What is wrong with this watch? It's wound up, but it still doesn't work.

wound up part.adj. When you are nervous or tense, you are wound up.

Don't even talk to Joe today. He's really wound up.

I'm feeling really wound up — I need a drink.

2. wind up p.v. When you say that someone or something winds up a certain way or winds up doing something, you mean that this situation was the result of a series of decisions, actions, or unplanned and unexpected occurrences. End up is similar to wind up.

We got totally lost and wound up 100 miles from the campground.

If you don't start driving more carefully, you're going to wind up dead.

3. wind ... up p.v. When you wind up an activity or event, you finish it or get ready to finish it. Wrap up is similar to wind up.

The detective wound up her investigation and made several arrests.

We'd better wind things up here; it's getting late.

4. wind ... up p.v. When you wrap something long, such as an electrical cord, rope, string, or measuring tape, around and around so that it is in a ball or on a spool, you wind it up.

That's enough fishing for today. Let's wind up our lines and go home.

The firefighters wound up their fire hoses and went back to the station.

wound up part.adj. When you wrap something long, such as an electrical cord, rope, or measuring tape, around and around so that it is in a ball or on a spool, it is wound up.

This rope is a mess. You should keep it wound up.

This electrical cord is really wound up tight.

EXERCISE 14a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. We couldn't decide where to go, so we _______ _______ staying home.

2. Be sure you _______ this form _______ carefully.

3. My son loves to eat. He can _______ _______ an extra large pizza in less than fifteen minutes.
A. I'll _______ this notice _______ on the wall.
5. We're going out to a nice restaurant tonight, so be sure to _______ _______.
6. Business at the ski shop always _______ _______ in summer.
7. When you're finished with your Monopoly game, _______ it _______.
8. Congress is _______ _______ some unfinished business before the summer recess.
9. The firefighter _______ her hand _______ the drain pipe to try to reach the kitten.
10. The meeting's almost over _______ they're _______ it _______.
11. Janice went to the costume party _______ _______ like Marie Antoinette.
12. The desert is so hot that rainwater _______ _______ almost immediately.
13. I don't know what time it is. I forgot to _______ my clock _______.
14. Be careful when you sail your boat in this shallow water. Sometimes logs _______ _______ from the bottom.
15. Lydia has _______ _______ a little since she had the baby.
16. Aunt Kathy finished knitting the sweater and _______ _______ her knitting needles.
17. Frank and Jesse James _______ _______ a bank in Northfield, Minnesota, in 1876.
18. I hope they catch those crooks and _______ them _______ for a long time.
19. I _______ all my time _______ on the first half of the test and didn't have any time left for the second half.
20. My brother is so rude! Whenever I try to talk to my friend Karen, he _______ _______ and won't let me talk.

**EXERCISE 14b — Complete the sentences with participle adjectives from this section.**

1. I hope it rains soon. Our lawn is really _______.
2. Why are you _______ _______? Are you going to a party?
3. Some of these forms are blank and others are _______.
4. All the people who live in that neighborhood think they're better than everyone else in town. There're so _______.
5. I can't use my printer. The toner cartridge is _______ _______, and I need to buy a new one.
6. The clock isn't working because it isn't _______.
7. Timmy, are your toys all over the floor where they were last night, or are they _______ _______?

**EXERCISE 14c — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.**

1. Janice _______ up. (her son, him)
   _______ _______.
The sun quickly dries up. (the water, it)
Filling out isn’t necessary. (the entire form, it)
Ed put away in an hour. (six beers, them)
They stuck up. (notices, them)
EXERCISE 14d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Jake was riding his motorcycle too fast and not being careful. Now he is in the hospital with a broken leg. What happened to Jake?

2. It was hard talking to my mother because my sister kept rudely interrupting our conversation. What did my sister keep doing?

3. A lot of rain fell and made a small lake in the field. Now, after a week, the water is not there anymore. What happened to the water?

4. Alex was playing with his toy trains. Now they are in the box where he keeps them when he is not playing with them. What did Alex do?

5. In Question 4, how would you describe Alex’s toys?

6. It rained three hours ago, but now there is no more water in the streets. How would you describe the streets?

7. I turned the key in this grandfather clock, and now it is working. What did I do to the clock?

8. In Question 7, how would you describe the clock?

9. Daniela put on her best clothes for the dance. What did Daniela do?

10. In Question 9, how would you describe Daniela?

11. Luis wrote all the necessary information on the form. What did Luis do?

12. In Question 11, how would you describe the form?
EXERCISE 14e, Review — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participled Adjective</th>
<th>Section Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>backed up</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut off</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hooked up</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>screwed up</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broken-down</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut up</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hung up</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set up</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hooked up</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filled in</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paid for</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake-up</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>screwed up</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set up</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worked up</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burned-out</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut up</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filled in</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paid for</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake-up</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caught up</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grown-up</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piled up</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worked up</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The clothes are __________ in the closet.
2. I don't owe any money to the bank for my house. It's _______ _______.
3. My VCR is connected to my TV. My VCR is _______ _______.
4. We live far out in the country away from town, our friends, and our families. I don't like being so _______ _______.
5. My car's _______, so I have to take the bus to work.
6. All the plans and arrangements for our vacation are ready; everything is _______ _.
7. All the spaces in this form have the necessary information in them. The form is _______ _______.
8. Nancy's four-year-old son was playing with her computer, and now it's all _______.
9. I was sick and missed several homework assignments in school. But I worked hard and finished all the homework I missed, and now I'm _______ _______.
10. I'm very nervous and upset about something. I'm _______ _______.
11. These videotapes aren't for children — they're _______ videotapes.
12. Timmy's mother used a knife to cut his meat into many small pieces. Timmy's meat is _______.
13. I'm tired all the time, I hate my job, and I need a vacation. I'm _______ _______.
14. My computer crashed last night, but fortunately all my important files are _______.
15. The hotel forgot my _______ call, and I missed my plane.
16. The magazines are _______ _______ in a big stack.
15. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and will or be going to

Both will and be going to are used to talk about the future in English, but they are not the same.

Predictions: will or be going to
Use will or be going to for predictions. When you predict the future, you say what you think will happen:

- The wind will blow away these paper plates.
- The wind is going to blow away these paper plates.

Willingness: will
Use only will for willingness. When you offer to do something that you do not have to do, you are willing to do it:

I will put up the shelves for you.

Plans: be going to
Use only be going to for plans. When you decide to do something in the future, whether it is long and complicated or short and simple, you plan to do it:

He is going to head for Mexico next week.

The future with will is formed by using will plus the infinitive form of the verb:

- statements: He will come through San Francisco.
- question: Will he come through San Francisco?
- negative: He will not come through San Francisco.

These contractions are used with will:

- I will = I'll
- you will = you'll
- he will = he'll
- she will = she'll
- it will = it'll
- they will = they'll
- will not = won't

When two contractions are possible, it is more common to contract will with not rather than with a pronoun:

- common: He won't come through San Francisco.
- uncommon: He'll not come through San Francisco.

The future with be going to is formed with a form of be plus going to plus the infinitive form of the verb:

- statement: He is going to head for Mexico next week.
- question: Is he going to head for Mexico next week?
- negative: He is not going to head for Mexico next week.
These contractions are used with be going to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Contraction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>I'm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are</td>
<td>you're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he is</td>
<td>he's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she is</td>
<td>she's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it is</td>
<td>it's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are</td>
<td>they're</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are not</td>
<td>aren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is not</td>
<td>isn't</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When two contractions are possible, both are equally common:

- common: He's not going to head for Mexico next week.
- common: He isn't going to head for Mexico next week.

In informal spoken English, going to is often pronounced gonna. It is not necessary to pronounce going to in this way, but it is necessary to understand it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blow away</td>
<td>blow away</td>
<td>blowing away</td>
<td>blew away</td>
<td>blown away</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **blow away** p.v. When the wind moves something away from where it was, it blows it away.
   - Don't leave the newspaper outside. The wind will blow it away. The picnic wasn't much fun. It was really windy, and everything kept blowing away.

2. **blow... away** p.v. [informal] When a person or company has an ability, product, or service that is much better than that of a competing person or company, it blows away the competing person or company.
   - Apple's new computer is so fast it's going to blow the competition. I thought I had a chance to win the race, but Erik just blew me away.

3. **blow... away** p.v. [informal] When something you have seen or heard makes you very shocked, amazed, or emotional, it blows you away.
   - The first time I saw the Pyramids, they just blew me away.
   - I was blown away when my mother told me that I was adopted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>come through</th>
<th>come through &amp; comes through</th>
<th>coming through</th>
<th>came through</th>
<th>come through</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **come through** p.v. When you are in a place and people or things come through it, they pass from one side to the other side where you are.
   - Betty came through the door and sat down at our table.
   - The soldiers were coming through the hole in the wall.
2. **come through** p.v. When people travel to your town, stay for a while, and then leave, they **come through** or **come through** town.

   Aunt Sally promised she’d **come through** Milwaukee on her way to Indianapolis.

3. **come through** p.v. When important information, authorization, or permission that you have been waiting for is received, it **comes through**.

   We can buy the house — the loan finally **came through**.

   The execution was stopped when the call from the governor **came through**.

4. **come through** (with) p.v. When you promise to do something or produce something and keep your promise, you **come through** or **come through** with what you promised to do or promised to produce.

   We were all surprised when Bob **came through** with front row tickets just like he said he would. The state legislature promised to provide the financing for a new stadium, but they didn’t **come through**.

5. **come through** p.v. When you **come through** a difficult or dangerous experience, you survive it.

   My Uncle Fred saw lots of action during the war, but he **came through** without a scratch.

   **Coming through** the earthquake alive was a miracle.

6. **come through** p.v. When someone’s feelings, attitudes, or opinions can be perceived by someone else, they **come through**.

   The author’s hatred of the dictatorship **came through** in the novel.

   The professor’s enthusiasm for the subject really **comes through** in his lectures.

---

## Infinitive and Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dry out</td>
<td>dry out &amp; dries out</td>
<td>drying out</td>
<td>dried out</td>
<td>dried out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **dry out** p.v. When something **dries out** or something **dries** it out, all the water or other liquid in it goes away.

   Before you put this tent away, be sure you **dry** it **out**. After the flood, it took weeks for our house to **dry out**.

   **dried out** part.adj. After all the water or other liquid in something goes away, it is **dried out**.

   My skin always gets **dried out** in the winter.

   We shampooed our carpet a week ago, and it’s still not **dried out**.

   **fix up**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fix up</td>
<td>fix up &amp; fixes up</td>
<td>fixing up</td>
<td>fixed up</td>
<td>fixed up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **fix up** p.v. When you fix up a place, such as a building, street, or park, you repair and decorate it.
I am going to fix this place up and try to sell it.
The city decided to fix up the park.

fixed up part.adj. After you repair and decorate a place, such as a building, street, or park, it is fixed up.

Now that his house is fixed up, it looks pretty nice.
When you see how fixed up Jim’s apartment is now, you’ll be surprised.

fixer-upper n. [informal] A fixer-upper is a building in poor condition that can be repaired, renovated, or redecorated in order to increase its value.

The way to make money in real estate is to buy a fixer-upper and do as much of the work yourself as you can.

2. fix... up p.v. When you fix yourself up, you style your hair nicely and put on make-up and nice clothes.

If you’re going to that fancy restaurant, you’d better fix yourself up. Heather is upstairs fixing herself up for the prom.

fixed up part.adj. After you style your hair nicely and put on make-up and nice clothes, you are fixed up.

Where’s Lydia going? She’s all fixed up.

I got all fixed up, and my boyfriend took me to a demolition derby.

3. fix... up (with) p.v. When you fix people up with something, you arrange for them to have or to use something that they need or want.

We told the hotel desk clerk that we wanted their best room, and she fixed us up with the honeymoon suite.

The travel agent fixed me up with a limo to take me to the resort.

4. fix... up (with) p.v. [informal] When you fix people up or fix them up with someone, you arrange a date for them with a member of the opposite sex.

Linda and Tom are perfect for each other. I’m going to fix them up.

I asked Jerry if he’d fix me up with his sister.

Infinitive present tense -ing form past tense past participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go with</th>
<th>go with &amp; goes with</th>
<th>going with</th>
<th>went with</th>
<th>gone with</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. go with p.v. When one thing is usually or always found with another, they go with each other.

A lot of responsibility goes with being a doctor.
I never wanted to own an old house because of all the maintenance that goes with it.

2. go with p.v. When two things are part of one unit or set or are meant to be with each other, they go with each other.
One of the fringe benefits of that job was the car that went with it. You can't buy the cup without the saucer that goes with it.

3. **go with** p.v. When one item of clothing looks nice with another, they go with each other.
   
   She needs to find a blouse that goes with her new skirt.

   I like white shirts because they go with everything.

4. **go with** p.v. When you go with people, you agree with and support their idea or plan.
   
   Senator Doolittle has no opinions. He just goes with the majority. We've decided to go with the committee's recommendation.

5. **go with** p.v. When you choose someone or something from a group, you go with your choice.
   
   That gray suit was nice, but I think I'm going to go with the black one.

   Everyone who applied for the job is highly qualified. I don't know who I'm going to go with.

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>head back</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>head back</td>
<td>head back &amp; heads back</td>
<td>heading back</td>
<td>headed back</td>
<td>headed back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **head back** (to) p.v. When you head back or head back to a certain location, you return to a place where you were before. When you are headed back or are heading back to a certain location, you are returning to a place where you were before.

   We'll spend a month in California and then head back to Des Moines. We got to the beach around 10:00, and we headed back when it started to get dark.

2. **head for** p.v. When you head for a certain location, you move toward it. When you are headed for or are heading for a certain location, you are planning to go there or you have stopped and will resume going there. Head toward is the same as head for.

   Tomorrow we're going to leave Des Moines and head for California.

   I told the guy at the gas station I was headed for Santa Fe.

2. **head for** p.v. When you are headed for or are heading for a certain situation, condition, or consequence, it is becoming more likely.

   If you don't shut your mouth you're headed for trouble.

   This is going to be a great vacation — we're heading for a good time!
Infinitive  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tell on</td>
<td>tell on &amp; tells on</td>
<td>telling on</td>
<td>told on</td>
<td>told on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **tell on** p.v. [informal—used primarily by children] When you tell on people, you inform someone in authority, such as a parent or teacher, that they have made a mistake or broken a rule.

1. If I broke a glass, you're not going to tell on me, are you? Timmy didn't do his homework, and his sister told on him.

**EXERCISE 15a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The first time I held my newborn son in my arms it just ______ me ______.
2. I asked Linda if she would ______ me ______ with her friend Nancy.
3. Bob said he could get us backstage after the concert, and he ______ ______ just like he promised.
4. This house is dump now, but after I ______ ______ it'll look nice.
5. I saw you eating cookies before dinner when Mommy told you not to. I'm going to ______ ______ you.
6. The composer's love for his native land really ______ ______ through in his music.
7. Can you help me? I'm ______ ______ Toronto, but I'm lost.
8. I've never been to the opera before. I think I'd better ______ ______ myself ______.
9. The train ______ ______ town three times a week.
10. If you keep charging stuff like crazy on your credit cards, you're ______ ______ bankruptcy.
11. Do you think these brown pants ______ ______ this blue shirt?
12. All the books damaged in the flood have to be ______ ______.
13. Coke's new sales promotion is going to ______ Pepsi ______.
14. We sat by the phone nervously waiting for the judge's decision to ______ ______.
15. My brother works in a car rental place, and he said he can _______ me _______ with a Mercedes at no extra cost.

16. After looking at pictures of several models, the photographer decided to _______ _______ Nicole.

17. Dr. Wood _______ _______ the door and said hello.

18. All the clothes I left outside to dry were _______ _______ by the storm.

19. My father hated being a salesman because of all the travel that _______ _______ the job.

20. Two of my brothers went to Vietnam, but only one _______ _______ it alive.

21. I asked the clerk in the computer store if the monitor _______ the computer.

22. It’s getting late and I’m tired. I think I’m going to _______ _______ to my house.

23. His proposal made a lot of sense, so we decided to _______ _______ it.

EXERCISE 15b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Use will or be going to with all phrasal verbs.

1. I asked the restaurant manager for the best table in the house, and he is going to give us a table next to the fireplace. What is the restaurant manager going to do?

2. Linda’s father promised to pay for her wedding, and she is sure that he will. What is Linda sure about?

3. Raquel’s husband is going to be very surprised when she tells him she won $10 million in the lottery. What is the news going to do to her husband?

4. He’ll repair some things in his house and paint it before he puts it on the market. What will he do?

5. In Question 4, how will the house be after he makes some repairs and paints it?

6. Timmy won’t tell the teacher that Susie didn’t do her homework if she gives him a candy bar. What won’t Timmy do?

7. Those mobile homes aren’t going to be there after the tornado. What is the tornado going to do?
8. If there's an earthquake, no one in this old building will survive. What won't the people do if there's an earthquake?

9. She'll put on her nicest outfit and her best jewelry and get a perm. What will she do?
10. In Question 9, how will she look after she puts on her nicest outfit and her best jewelry and gets a perm?

11. Tomorrow, you're going to leave San Diego and go to Tucson. What are you going to do tomorrow?
12. A month from now, you're going to leave Tucson and return to San Diego. What are you going to do a month from now?

13. Erik said he won't ask his sister if she will go on a date with Mike. What won't Erik do?
14. Lydia is at the paint store to choose a paint color for her house. She hates the color blue. What isn't Lydia going to do?

15. IBM has a new chip that's twice as fast as the competition's fastest chip. What is IBM going to do to the competition?

16. Uncle Fred is going to visit our town, stay for a short time, and then continue on his trip to Florida. What is Uncle Fred going to do?

17. This pond is going to slowly evaporate and disappear. What is the pond going to do?
18. In Question 17, after the pond evaporates, how will it be?

EXERCISE 15c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to use will and be going to.

1. __________________________________________________
2. _________________________________________________________
3. _________________________________________________________
4. _________________________________________________________
5. _________________________________________________________

114
EXERCISE 15d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>back off, 12</th>
<th>call off, 13</th>
<th>close off, 13</th>
<th>come across, 12</th>
<th>come up, 12</th>
<th>leave off, 13</th>
<th>screw on, 12</th>
<th>call off, 13</th>
<th>fall through, 12</th>
<th>let off, 13</th>
<th>sign in, 12</th>
<th>sign out, 12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Did my ex-husband talk about me at the party? Yes, your name _______ _______ several times.
2. Our vacation plans _______ _______ after Tom broke his leg.
3. I told you not to _______ that cigarette _______ in here.
4. Flying Mom here for the holidays is going to cost $1,000. My brother is going to pay $300, and I'm going to _______ _______ the rest of the money.
5. So far, the police have been unable to _______ _______ the stolen paintings.
6. The searchlights _______ _______ the night sky, looking for enemy bombers.
7. You can't go in that part of the museum; it's been _______ _______.
8. When you travel, always _______ the tops of your toiletries _______ tightly.
9. We decided to _______ our ski trip _______ because there wasn't enough snow.
10. I was getting really angry, and I told him that I was going to punch him in the nose if he didn't _______ _______.
11. The teacher told the students to _______ _______ their homework.
12. I didn't agree with that list of the 100 best movies. They _______ some of my favorites

13. The manager reminded Maria not to forget to _______ _______ when she comes to work in the morning.
14. Mrs. Nash isn't in the office anymore. She _______ _______ about an hour ago.

15. The Judge told Jake that the next time he got in trouble he wouldn't _______ him _______ with a warning.

16. I was going through some stuff in the attic, and I ______________ some interesting old pictures.

16. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with gerund objects, 1

Gerunds — verbs in the -ing form that function as nouns — can serve as objects of many phrasal verbs.

It is more common to use gerund objects with nonseparable two- and three-word phrasal verbs:

- She's counting on getting that job.
- I don't feel up to playing hockey.

but gerund objects are sometimes used with separable phrasal verbs:

- I wouldn't put robbing a bank past him.
- Mr. Taylor wants to give smoking up.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>believe in</td>
<td>believe in &amp; believes in</td>
<td>believing in</td>
<td>believed in</td>
<td>believed in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. believe in p.v. When you believe in something or believe in doing something, you have a strong opinion about something that is important to you.

- I believe in working hard and saving money.
- Maria doesn’t believe in sex before marriage.

2. believe in p.v. When you believe in something, you think it exists.

- Do you believe in ghosts?
- Ned is an atheist; he doesn’t believe in God.
3. **believe in** p.v. When you **believe in** people, you have confidence in them and believe what they say because you think they are honest, correct, or competent.

I don't care what anyone else says, I still **believe in** you.

We want to **believe in** you, but we need some proof that your invention really works.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>carry on</td>
<td>carry on &amp; carries on</td>
<td>carrying on</td>
<td>carried on</td>
<td>carried on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **carry on** p.v. When you **carry on**, you continue as before, despite a difficult experience in your life.

   You'll have to **carry on** for the sake of the children.

   It was difficult for Mrs. Nelson to **carry on** after her husband died.

2. **carry on** (with) p.v. When you **carry on**, carry on with an activity, or **carry on** doing an activity, you continue it or continue doing it.

   The men stopped working when General Chambers entered the room, and he told them to **carry on**.

   She plans to **carry on** with her career after the baby is born.

   They knew I was trying to sleep, but they **carried on** talking and singing anyway.

3. **carry ... on** p.v. When you **carry** something on an airplane, you keep it with you in the passenger compartment instead of giving it to an airline agent to put in the baggage compartment.

   This suitcase is pretty big. I hope they'll let me **carry on**.

   You should **carry** your laptop computer on. You don't want to take any chances.

   **carry-on** n. Carry-on, **carry-on** luggage, **carry-on** baggage, **carry-on** bags, and so on, are not given to an airline agent to put in the baggage compartment but are kept in the passenger compartment of an airplane.

   I'm staying only one night in New York, so all I'll need is a **carry-on** bag.

4. **carry on** (about) p.v. [informal] When you **carry on** or **carry on** about something, you are very persistent and vocal about something that upsets you.

   I forgot our anniversary, and she **carried on** all day.

   I said I was sorry; now will you please stop **carrying on** about it?

**count on** n. Count on, count on it, **count on** something, and so on, are not given to a person to do something important for you.

   I'm **counting on** getting a ride to the airport with Betty.

   Farmers **count on** a lot of rain in the spring.

1. **count on** p.v. When you need something important to happen or a certain condition to exist, you are **counting on** it. When you need someone to do something important, you are **counting on** that person.

   I'm **counting on** getting a ride to the airport with Betty.

   Farmers **count on** a lot of rain in the spring.
2. **count on** p.v. When you rely on someone or something for help or support if you need it, you are **counting on** that thing or that person.

I'm going to sell this car and buy one that always starts. I need a car I can **count on**.

The governor said that she's **counting on** our support in the next election.

3. **count on** p.v. When you are certain than something will happen or that a certain condition will exist, you are **counting on** it.

Marvin makes a fool of himself at every party. You can **count on** it.

You can **count on** crowds and long lines at Disney World if you go in August.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get through</td>
<td>get through &amp; gets through</td>
<td>getting through</td>
<td>got through</td>
<td>gotten/got through</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **get through** (with) p.v. When you **get through**, **get through** with an activity, or **get through** doing an activity, you finish it or finish doing it.

I have so much homework that I might not **get through** with it until midnight.

After you **get through** washing the dishes, you can start ironing.

2. **get through** (to) p.v. When you **get through** or **get through** to someone, usually on a telephone or radio, you are able to speak to that person.

Nancy tried calling Jim last night, but she couldn't **get through**.

It wasn't easy, but I finally **got through** to my brother in Borneo.

3. **get through** (to) p.v. When you **get through** or **get through** to someone, you make that person understand your opinion or point of view.

Mr. Taylor has tried to make his daughter understand why it's important to work hard in school and get good grades, but he just can't **get through**. I've explained it a hundred times!

What do I have to do to **get through** to you?

4. **get...through** p.v. [informal] When you **get something through** someone's head, you make that person understand your opinion or point of view. When you **get something through** your own head, you understand it.

Finally **got it through** my son's head that I was serious about sending him to military school.

**When are you going to get it through** your head that our marriage is over?

5. **get...through** p.v. When something **gets you through** a difficult experience, it comforts and supports you.

Julia's faith in God was what **got her through** the loss of her husband.

He was very nervous about giving the speech, so he had a drink to help **get him through** the ordeal.
Infinitive present tense -ing form past tense past participle

go for
go for & goes for going for went for gone for

1. go for p.v. [informal] When you go for something, you like it a lot.
   Erik really goes for scuba diving.
   Let's go to a different nightclub. I don't go for jazz.

2. go for p.v. When you go for something, you try to achieve it.
   The gymnast said she was going to go for the gold at the next Olympics.
   After she finished her master's, she went for a Ph.D.

3. go for p.v. [always continuous] When you have something going for you, you have an advantage that makes it easier for you to do something or get something that you want.
   Sam's not especially good at basketball, but he has one thing going for him — he's seven feet tall. I have ten years of experience going for me, so I think I have a good chance of getting the job.

4. go for p.v. When you say that a statement about one person or thing goes for another person or thing, you mean that it is also true about the other person or thing. When you say "That goes for me," you are agreeing with someone else's opinion.
   Heather said that Tom was a jerk, and I said that that goes for Tom's brother Bill, too.
   Betty's really angry about it, and that goes for me, too.

hold off hold off & holds off holding off held off held off

1. hold off p.v. When you hold off or hold off doing something, you delay doing it.
   I held off setting our house until our youngest child moved out.
   You'd better hold off accusing Mike until you're 100 percent sure.

2. hold ... off p.v. When you hold off an attack, you prevent the attacker from getting close to you or from winning the fight. If you hold off a competitor, you prevent the competitor from winning.
   The enemy was so strong that there was no way to hold them off.
   The champion held off the challenger and won the game.

put past

1. put... past p.v. [used only in the infinitive form and only in negative sentences] When you want to say that you think someone is capable of doing something wrong, you say that you wouldn't put it past that person. When you want to warn someone that you think another person is capable of doing something wrong, you say "Don't put it past (that person)."
Is he capable of murder? Well, I wouldn't put killing someone past him. Marvin is evil. There isn't any crime I wouldn't put past him. You don't think Hank would steal money from his grandmother? I know him better than you do — don't put it past him.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>think about</td>
<td>about &amp; thinks about</td>
<td>thinking about</td>
<td>thought about</td>
<td>thought about</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. think about p.v. When you think about something or think about doing something, you consider it before making a decision.
   The salesman tried to get me to sign the contract, but I said I'd think about it. I'm thinking about quitting my job.

**EXERCISE 16a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. This house is too small for our family. We're ________ ________ moving to a bigger one.
2. These skis are pretty big. Do you think they'll let me ________ them ________?
3. This work is very important, and I know you can do it. I'm ________ ________ you.
4. At the next Olympics, Raul's going to ________ ________ a new record in the pole vault.
5. I don't ________ ________ talking about people behind their backs.
6. I tried several times to call Tim in Timbuktu, but I couldn't ________ ________.
7. The roller coaster is very popular. If you go on the weekend, you can ________ ________ waiting in line for three hours.
8. As soon as you ________ ________ washing the car, come inside and eat lunch.
9. I wanted to buy a digital camera, but I ________ ________ buying one until the prices fell.
10. Marvin seems like a nice guy, but he isn't. I wouldn't ________ anything ________ him.
11. David asked me to buy beer when I went to the store, but I forgot, and he ________ ________ about it for an hour.
12. The defenders ________ ________ the attackers as long as they could.
13. Mike really ________ ________ auto racing when he was young.

14. Sally has a good education and a pleasant personality. She has a lot ________ ________ her.

15. How can I ________ ________ after this terrible tragedy?

16. I've explained the rules a thousand times. Why can't you ________ it ________ your head that I'm the boss around here, not you?

17. Everyone else thinks Dr. Hatcher's ideas are crazy, but I ________ ________ him.

18. Uncle John was the only one who knew how to run this business. Now that he's dead, we won't be able to ________ ________.

19. I didn't used to ________ ________ ghosts, but what I saw last night changed my mind.

20. I've tried to get her to understand my point of view, but I can't ________ ________ to her.

21. The Republicans are idiots, and that ________ ________ the Democrats, too.

22. Letters from his family helped Jake ________ ________ his prison sentence.

23. I always knew that my brother was the one person I could ________ ________ if I had a problem.

EXERCISE 16b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Judy likes taking pictures a lot. How does she feel about taking pictures?

2. Maria didn't finish studying until 11:00 P.M. What didn't Maria do until 11:00 P.M.?

3. The Ortegas took two bags with them to keep in the passenger compartment when they flew to New York. What did they do to the two bags?

4. In Question 3, what kind of bags did the Ortegas keep with them?

5. Jane is considering spending the summer in Bolivia. What is Jane doing?

6. Bill feels strongly that hunting is wrong. How does Bill feel about hunting?
7. Paul couldn't continue his career as a dancer after his accident. What couldn't he do after his accident?

8. We delayed having children until after we had done some traveling. What did we do?

9. You think stealing is something Hank would do. What do you think about Hank?

10. Nancy is going to try to call her sister in Nepal tonight. What is Nancy going to try to do tonight?

11. Hank isn't reliable. You can't be certain he will do what he says he will do. What can't you do to Hank?

12. Dan was very angry, and he yelled and complained for three hours. What did Dan do for three hours?

13. You can't be 100 percent certain that the weather will be nice in Florida in the winter. What can't you do to the winter weather in Florida?

14. Many children are sure that monsters are real. What do many children think about monsters?

EXERCISE 16c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to use gerund objects.

1. __________________________________________________

2. __________________________________________________

3. __________________________________________________

4. __________________________________________________

5. __________________________________________________

6. __________________________________________________

7. __________________________________________________

8. __________________________________________________

122
EXERCISE 16d, Review — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

closed off, 13  filled out, 14  put away, 14  used up, 14
dressed up, 14  fixed up, 15  screwed on, 12  wound up, 14
dried up, 14  lit up, 13  stuck-up, 14  wrapped up, 4

1. Charles is so ______ ___. He thinks he's better than everyone else because he comes from a rich family.
2. Now that your house is ______ ___, it's worth a lot more.
3. There isn't any more paper for the copier — it's ______ ___.
4. I washed and dried the dishes, and now they're ______ __ in the cabinet.
5. Frank's really ______ ______ about his wedding tomorrow.
6. The presents have wrapping paper on them. They're ______ ___.
7. This form has all the information in the correct spaces. It's ______ ___.
8. The floor of the bathroom isn't wet anymore; it's ______ ___.
9. Why is Sarah all ______ ___? Is she going out dancing?
10. Be sure the top of the Coke bottle is ______ ___. If it isn't, the Coke will go flat.
11. You can't go in the east wing of the palace because it's ______ ___.
12. I can see the road easily at night when I'm driving because it's ______ _____.

EXERCISE 16e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

break down, 5  get over with, 3  put up with, 3
give up, 9  go in for, 3  take in, 7
break in, 14  leave off, 13  wind up, 14
see about, 7  work out, 11
feel up to, 3  look forward to, 3
get around to, 6  put up, 12
get out of, 6

1. We couldn't decide where to go for dinner last night, so we ______ ______ staying home.
2. Sally loves all outdoor sports, and she especially _______ _______ _______ swimming.

3. I hate cigarettes, and I will not _______ _______ _______ smoking in my house!

4. It's been seven years since Tom saw his sister. He's really _______ _______ _______ seeing her again.

5. My eyesight got so bad that I had to _______ _______ driving.

6. I'm exhausted. I really don't _______ _______ _______ doing any more sightseeing.

7. The heat in my apartment doesn't work. I need to _______ the manager _______ getting it fixed.

8. It's been three hours since I asked you. When are you going to _______ _______ _______ taking out the garbage?

9. I promised Sally I would lend her $1,000, but now I don't want to give it to her. How can I _______ _______ _______ lending her the money?

10. Raking the leaves is a big job, but I have to _______ _______ _______ before it snows.

11. The teacher continued her lecture where she _______ _______ the previous week.

12. I haven't _______ _______ all the details, but I've decided to quit my job and start my own business.

13. I was late to work because my car _______ _______ on the expressway.

14. My TV was broken, so I _______ _______ _______ and had it fixed.

15. When you're camping, you should always _______ your tent _______ before it gets dark.

16. Fighting between protesters and government troops _______ _______ after the general canceled the election.

17. The line to buy tickets for the football game was really long, so a lot of people tried to _______ _______.
17. FOCUS ON: adverbs and phrasal verbs

Adverbs are words that modify verbs. Many adverbs end with -ly, for example, quickly, slowly, suddenly, foolishly; but other adverbs, such as always, sometimes, and never, do not. The placement of adverbs in sentences with phrasal verbs depends on whether the verb is intransitive or transitive, and if transitive, whether it is separable or nonseparable. In general, adverbs are placed like ordinary one-word verbs with the exception of nonseparable phrasal verbs, which also allow for the placement of adverbs between the verb and the particle. All possible placements of adverbs in sentences containing the various types of phrasal verbs are shown with Xs:

Intransitive phrasal verbs
X subject X verb particle X.
Immediately he came over.
He immediately came over.
He came over immediately.

Separable phrasal verbs
X subject X verb particle object X.
Angry she ripped up the paper.
Angrily she ripped the paper up.
She angrily ripped the paper up.
She ripped up the paper angrily.
She ripped the paper up angrily.

Nonseparable phrasal verbs
X subject X verb X particle object X.
Slowly we headed into town. We headed slowly into town. We headed into town slowly.

Three-word phrasal verbs
X subject X verb? particle? object X.
Eventually I grew out of the sweater.
I eventually grew out of the sweater.
I grew out of the sweater eventually.

Placing adverbs within three-word phrasal verbs is sometimes possible, but it can be problematic. Sometimes an adverb between the verb and first particle sounds acceptable and other times it does not. Sometimes, an adverb placed
between the two particles sounds acceptable, and other times it will not. This is more a matter of style than of what is correct or incorrect, so unless you are sure it sounds okay, it is better not to place adverbs within three-word verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>come over &amp; comes over</td>
<td>coming over</td>
<td>came over</td>
<td>come over</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. *come over* (to) p.v. When people move from one side of a place to the other, where you are, they *come over* or *come over to* where you are.
   
   **Come over** here and say that again.

2. *come over* (to) p.v. When people come to your house for a visit, they *come over* or *come over to* your house.
   
   Would you like to *come over* tonight?

3. *come over* p.v. When people cross a river or cross the ocean from east to west or west to east, they *come over*.
   
   *My grandparents came over* from Sweden in 1904.

   *The ferry comes over* to this side of the lake every day at 5:30 P.M.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fall apart</th>
<th>fall apart &amp; falls apart</th>
<th>falling apart</th>
<th>fell apart</th>
<th>fallen apart</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. *fall apart* p.v. When the parts of something become completely separated because it is old or in bad condition, it *falls apart*.
   
   These old shoes are starting to *fall apart*.

   *There's no way to fix this thing. It has completely fallen apart*.

2. *fall apart* p.v. When a plan, arrangement, system, or agreement fails, it *falls apart*.
   
   After five difficult years, their marriage totally *fell apart*.

   *The peace agreement is slowly falling apart*.

3. *fall apart* p.v. When people suddenly lose control and start laughing or become very upset or emotional, they *fall apart*.
   
   *Sally fell apart* when she heard the tragic news.

   *Tom was so funny at the party last night that I just fell apart* laughing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>get back at</th>
<th>get back at &amp; gets back at</th>
<th>getting back at</th>
<th>got back at</th>
<th>gotten/got back at</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. *get back at* p.v. When you *get back at* people, you do something bad to them because they have done something bad to you.
John won't forget what you did to him. He'll definitely get back at you someday.

She wants to get back at her ex-husband for the way he treated her.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go about</td>
<td>go about &amp; goes about</td>
<td>going about</td>
<td>went about</td>
<td>gone about</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **go about** p.v. When you *go about* something or *go about* doing something, you begin or continue to follow all the steps necessary to do it.
   - I have no idea how to go about opening a restaurant. Everyday he quietly went about his business and never caused any problems.

2. **grow out of** p.v. When people become too tall or too big to wear an item of clothing, they **grow out of** the item of clothing.
   - \( / \) bought Susie's shoes one size too big, but she's quickly growing out of them.
   - \( / \) Do you want these clothes for your daughter? Mine has grown out of them.

3. **head into** p.v. When you *head into* or are *headed into* a place or area, you begin to enter it.
   - \( / \) almost had an accident as I was heading into town.
   - We scared away the bear, and it headed slowly into the woods.
   - Jim was headed into Ashland when his car broke down.

4. **rip up** p.v. When you tear paper or cloth into many pieces, you **rip it up**.
   - Nancy was furious when she read Tom's letter, and she angrily ripped it up. Always **rip up** a check before you put it in the wastebasket.

   **ripped up** part.adj. After a piece of paper or cloth has been torn into many small piece, it is **ripped up**.
   - After the kids opened their Christmas presents, the floor was covered with **ripped up** paper.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past particip</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wear down</td>
<td>wear down &amp; wears down</td>
<td>wearing down</td>
<td>wore down</td>
<td>worn down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **wear... down** p.v. When something *wears down* or when someone *wears* something down, the top or surface gradually disappears because of friction.
   The feet of thousands of visitors a year have *worn down* the marble steps.
   **worn down** part.adj. After the top or surface of something has gradually disappeared because of friction, it is *worn down*.
   The marble steps are very old and *worn down*.

2. **wear ... down** p.v. When people *wear you down*, they gradually persuade you, through persistent pressure, to change your mind about a decision.
   He wouldn't tell me the answer, but little by little, I *wore him down*.
   She still will not give us permission, but I think we're *wearing her down*.

**EXERCISE 17a*** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I waved to Jim when I saw him across the street, and he _______ ________ and talked to me.

2. This company has been _____________ since that idiot was made the manager.

3. Don't leave the newspaper where the dog can get it. He'll totally _______ it

4. We need a lot of things from the supermarket. When are you _______ ________ town?

5. Jake told the boss I was drinking on the job, and I got fired, but I _______ ________ ________
   Jake — I told his wife about his girlfriend.

6. During the American Revolution, the French fleet _______ ________ and helped the Americans fight the British.
7. The heels on my boots have _______ _______ badly, and I need to get them replaced.

8. Can you help me get hooked up to the Internet? I have no idea how to _______ _______ it.

9. Don’t spend a lot of money on baby clothes — she’ll _______ _______ _______ them in a few weeks.

10. I need a new car. This piece of junk is _______ _______.

11. Sally asks her parents for a pony about a hundred times a day. She’s trying to _______ _______ them _______.

12. When his wife said she wanted a divorce, he just _______ _______.

13. If you’re not busy tonight, would you like to _______ _______ and watch TV?

14. My four-year-old son thinks it’s really funny to say bad words. I hope he _______ _______ _______ it.

EXERCISE 17b — Rewrite these sentences and place the adverb in parentheses in two possible positions.

1. (frequently) Ms. Taylor comes over.
   _____________________________________________________________
   _____________________________________________________________

2. (sometimes) These cheap toys fall apart.
   _____________________________________________________________
   _____________________________________________________________

3. (nervously) He went about making the bomb.
   _____________________________________________________________

129
4. (eventually) Sally will grow out of her childish behavior.

5. (reluctantly) Jim headed into the swamp.

6. (suddenly) Pat upped up Mike's letter.

7. (soon) Frank will get back at Todd.

8. (gradually) He wore down my resistance.

EXERCISE 17c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The contract was torn into many small pieces. What was done to the contract?

2. In Question 1, how would you describe the contract?

3. Her plan is not working properly, and there's a lot of confusion. What is happening to her plan?
4. My friends visited me last night. What did my friends do last night?

5. Mike doesn't know anything about applying for a mortgage. What doesn't he know?

6. Tomorrow we're going to drive from the country to the city. What are we going to do tomorrow?

7. When Judy was a teenager, she was very shy, but she's not shy anymore. What did she do to her shyness?

8. The old lion's teeth are not as sharp or as long as they used to be. What has happened to them?

9. In Question 8, how would you describe the lion's teeth?

10. I did something bad to my brother, and now he has done something bad to me. What has my brother done to me?

11. The Vikings crossed the ocean before Columbus. What did the Vikings do before Columbus?

12. The teacher walked across the room and looked at your paper. What did the teacher do?

13. Jim became very sad and lost control when he heard that his brother had died. What did Jim do?

14. This sweater will be too small for my daughter soon. What will my daughter do to the sweater soon?

15. The pages are coming out of this old book. What is the book doing?

16. The police are pressuring the suspect to tell the truth. What are the police trying to do to the suspect?

**EXERCISE 17d, Review** — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- boil down to, 6
- chicken out of, 9
- come down with, 6
- come up, 12
- fall over, 8
- fight back, 8
- find out, 5
- get along, 9
- go ahead, 10
- go through with, 6
- hear of, 8
- kick back, 10
- monkey around with, 6
- set up, 5
- work in, 8
1. I don't know when the train to Boston leaves. I'll ask the ticket agent and _______ ________.
2. I don't like our neighbors, and they don't like me. We don't, _______ ______.
3. Julia was nervous about bleaching her hair blond, and she decided not to _______ ______.
4. Sarah was nervous about bleaching her hair blond, and she _______ ______ it.
5. The ambassador will try to _______ _______ a meeting between the president and the rebel leader.
6. We have a really busy day planned, but I'd like to _______ _______ a visit to the museum.
7. If someone hits you, you have to _______ _______.
8. I missed a week of work when I _______ _______ German measles.
9. Having a mechanic fix my car will cost a lot of money, so I'll _______ _______ _______ it to see if I can fix it myself.
10. The owner of the construction company was _______ _______ thousands of dollars to the mayor.
11. Are you kidding? That's the most ridiculous thing I've ever _______ _______.
12. The country's economic problems are very complicated. Can you tell me what it _______ _______ _______ ______? 
13. I'm sorry I have to cancel our lunch date, but something very important has _______ _______. and I have to return to my office immediately.
14. After the car hit the telephone pole, the pole _______ ______ and crushed the car.
15. I was so angry at my boss that I told him I was going to quit, and he said, "_______ ________, I don't care!"
18. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and *can, could, will*, and *would*

*Can, could, will*, and *would* are *modal auxiliary verbs*, often called *models*. Modals are very important in English, but they can be confusing because they are used to say many different things. Here is a basic review of *can, could, will*, and *would* and their most common uses.

**Could** is used as the past tense of *can*:
- *I can't* come over tonight.
- *I couldn't* come over last night.

**Would** is used as the past tense of *will* (the future use of *will* has already been discussed in Section 15) to talk about something that was future in the past:
- *I didn't buy that nice coat for my son because I knew he would quickly grow out of it.*

**Would** is used in place of *will* when repeating someone else's words:
- She said she *would get* next Friday *off*.

**Would** is used as the past tense of *will* to talk about a repeated past action:
- When I worked as a bank guard, I *would stand around* all day doing nothing.

Normally, *can, could, will*, and *would* have different uses, and it is important to use the correct one; however, in one special case — making requests — they can be used with very little difference in meaning:

- *Can you get off the couch?*
- *Could you get off the couch?*
- *Will you get off the couch?*
- *Would you get off the couch?*

*Can* and *could* are used, with little difference in meaning, to ask for permission:

- *Can I think about it before I make a decision?*
- *Could I think about it before I make a decision?*

*Can, could, will*, and *would* are used in conditional sentences. Conditional means that a condition, usually stated in an *if* clause, must be satisfied for the *main clause* to be true. When the condition is something that is actually possible, the verb in the *if* clause is normally in the present tense. If the condition in the *if* clause is something that could not actually be true, the past tense form of the verb is used.

When the condition in the *if* clause is something that is actually possible, *can* is used in the main clause to discuss a *real ability*:

- *If I have a car, I *can come over.*
When the condition in the *if* clause is something that is actually possible, *will* is used in the main clause to discuss a *real willingness* or *intention*:

If I have a car, I *will* come over.

When the condition in the *if* clause is not something that is actually possible, *could* is used in the main clause to discuss an *unreal* or *imaginary ability*:

If I had a car, I *could* come over.

When the condition in the *if* clause is not something that is actually possible, *would* is used in the main clause to discuss an *unreal* or *imaginary willingness* or *intention*:

If I had a car, I *would* come over.

Either the *if* clause or main clause can occur first in a sentence, with a slight change in punctuation:

If I had a car, I *would* come over. I *would* come over if I had a car.

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>breakthrough</td>
<td>breakthrough</td>
<td>breaking through</td>
<td>broke through</td>
<td>broken through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&amp; breaks through</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **breakthrough** p.v. When you use force to go through a wall or other barrier, you *break through* it.

   The thieves *broke through* the wall of the jewelry store.
   
   The attackers couldn't *break through* the thick walls of the fort.

2. **breakthrough** p.v. When you cannot do something because of a problem and you find a way to solve or eliminate the problem, you *breakthrough*.
   
   After the problem of tissue rejection is *broken through*, organ transplants will become more common.

It took three days of negotiation, but we finally *broke through* the deadlock.

### n.

**breakthrough** An important discovery or development that solves or eliminates a problem that is preventing you from doing something is a *breakthrough*.

Dr. Wood announced an important *breakthrough* in the search for a cure for AIDS.

### figure on

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>figure on &amp; figures on</th>
<th>figuring on</th>
<th>figured on</th>
<th>figured on</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **figure on** p.v. When you *figure on* something, you expect it or plan for it.

   *I didn’t figure on* such cold weather. I wish I’d brought a coat.
   
   You can *figure on* spending a least hundred bucks if you’re going to that restaurant.
Infinitive | past participle
--- | ---
get off | gotten/get off

1. **get off** p.v. When you get off a bus, airplane, or train, you leave it.
   The bus stopped and I got off.
   You can’t get off the train while it’s moving.

2. **get off** p.v. When you are standing, lying, or sitting on something, such as a horse, bicycle, motorcycle, stage, platform, or piece of furniture, and you step down from it onto the ground, you get off it.
   You’re so lazy. Why don’t you get off the couch and help me? Get off your bicycle and come inside.

3. **get off** p.v. When you are standing within an area of ground, or on something that covers an area of ground, and you move to the side of it and step off of it, you get off it.
   The referee told the player to get off the field. You’re standing on our beach blanket — get off it!

4. **get... off** p.v. When you get something off, you remove it even though it may be difficult.
   I can’t get this paint off my hands. The top of this bottle is on so tight I cannot get it off.

5. **get... off** p.v. When you get a certain period of time off, you are allowed by your employer to miss work during this period.
   Pregnant women usually get three months off with pay. Could I get tomorrow morning off to go to the doctor?

6. **get off** p.v. When you get off, or get off work, you finish that day’s work and leave your place of employment.
   Sally said she wouldn’t get off work until 6:00. I haven’t gotten off early all week.

7. **get... off** p.v. When you do something wrong but are not punished, or you are punished only lightly for it, you get off. Someone who helps you to avoid punishment gets you off.
   He killed four people, but he got off with only three years in jail. If his lawyer hadn’t been so incompetent, he would have gotten him off with a lighter sentence.

8. **get off** p.v. When you stop talking on the telephone, you get off the telephone.
   Get off the phone — I need to use it! It’s late, we’d better get off the phone.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go beyond</td>
<td>go beyond &amp; goes beyond</td>
<td>going beyond</td>
<td>went beyond</td>
<td>gone beyond</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **go beyond** **p.v.** When people or things are better or worse, or do something in a better or worse way than is normal or expected, they go beyond what is normal or expected.

   Did you say Jackson's new book is good? I think it goes beyond good — it's fantastic! Sam's wife discovered that he wasn't just friends with his secretary; their relationship went way beyond friendship.

2. **lift upon**

   - lift up & lifts up
   - lifting up
   - lifted up
   - lifted up

1. **lift... up** **p.v.** When you lift up something, you use your hands to raise it above the surface that it was on.

   That rock is too heavy — I can't lift it up. Lift up the cover and look in the box.

2. **line up**

   line up & lines up
   - lining up
   - lined up
   - lined up
   - lined up

1. **line... up** **p.v.** When people or things form a row, they line up. When you arrange people or things so that they form a row, you line them up.

   People lined up to buy Superbowl tickets. Timmy is lining his toy cars up.

lined up **part.adj.** People or things that form a row are lined up.

   People have been lined up outside the box office for three days. The children are lined up for attendance.

2. **line... up** **p.v.** When something lines up with something else, or when you line up something with something else, it is positioned correctly in relation to something else.

   If this bolt doesn't line up with that hole, the lock won't work. The holes in part A have to line up with the holes in part B before you screw them together.

3. **line... up** **p.v.** When you arrange for someone or something to be available at a future activity or event, you line that thing or person up.

   I couldn't line a clown up for Susie's birthday party. Who have they lined up for the show?

lined up **part.adj.** Someone or something that you have arranged to be available for a future activity or event is lined up.

Don't worry about the show; everything is lined up.

The singer is lined up, but the band isn't.
**lineup n.** The people or things planned for an event are the **lineup**.

The network has planned quite a **lineup** of entertainers for the halftime special. There’s always a trapeze act in the circus **lineup**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stand around</td>
<td>stand around &amp; stands around</td>
<td>standing around</td>
<td>stood around</td>
<td>stood around</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **stand around** p.v. When you **stand around**, you stand in a place wasting time and not doing anything useful.

   “I have all this work to do, and you guys just **stand around** watching me. The manager told them to stop **standing around** and get to work.”

**tell apart** p.v. When it is possible to see how two similar things are different, you can **tell them apart**.

   The twins are identical; no one can **tell them apart**. All the puppies look the same, and I have a hard time **telling them apart**.

**EXERCISE 18a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Could you _______ _______ the phone? I want to make an important call.
2. Neither side would give an inch. There was no way to _______ _______ the stalemate.
3. If you put this fake Rolex watch next to a real one, you can _______ _______ easily.
4. Jim wanted to go to a movie tonight, but I told him I wouldn’t _______ _______ work until late.
5. If the holes don’t _______ _______, the screws won’t go in.
6. There weren’t any chairs at the party, so we just _______ _______ talking.
7. I told Frank that his drinking problem isn’t just hurting him; it _______ _______ that — it’s hurting his family, too.
8. The lawyer was sure he could _______ _______ with only two years in prison.
9. When I took this job after I finished high school, I never _______ _______ spending thirty-five years here.
10. Mother was the last one to ________ ________ the airplane.
11. Bob ________ ________ everything in his cabinet so that it's easy to find what he's looking for.
12. Lydia told me she would try to ________ three weeks ________ so we can go on vacation.
13. There were police barricades around the palace, but some of the protesters ________ ________.
14. Children, stop jumping on the bed with your dirty shoes. ________ ________ right now!
15. Can you ________ ________ the TV while I put the VCR under it?
16. Some CDs come wrapped in plastic that's almost impossible to ________ ________.
17. I couldn't ________ ________ a magician for the birthday party.
18. ________ ________ the carpet. I just shampoed it.

EXERCISE 18b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Paul said he would remove his cat from the table. What did Paul say?
2. I can't see any difference between the original and the copy. What can't I do?
3. Erik can't raise the box of books because it's too heavy. What can't Erik do?
4. Bill said he hadn't expected snow in May. What did Bill say?
5. Nancy arranged for a great band to play at the prom next week. What did Nancy do?
6. In Question 5, how would you describe the band?
7. Jerry thought the problem with his car is that it needs a tune-up, but the mechanic said it's worse than that. What did the mechanic say?
8. The soldiers smashed a hole in the wall and entered the city. What did the soldiers do to the wall?
9. Carlos stops working at 5:00 everyday. What does Carlos do at 5:00 everyday?
10. You were arrested for drunken driving, but the judge gave you only a warning. What did you do?

11. The teacher moved all the desks in his classroom so that they were in straight rows. What did the teacher do?

12. In Question 11, how would you describe the desks?

13. She asked me if I would stop talking on the telephone. What did she say?

14. I stood at the bus stop for an hour waiting for the bus. What did I do for an hour?

15. The personnel manager at my new job said I wouldn’t have to work on Sundays. What did the personnel manager say?

16. When you put a doorknob on a door, the two sides have to be directly across from each other. How do the two sides have to be?

17. Sam stepped from the train. What did Sam do?

18. Mark’s father told him to move from the grass to the sidewalk. What did Mark’s father tell Mark?

**EXERCISE 18c — Complete these sentences, using your own words, with phrasal verbs from this section or previous sections.**

1. Last week, he couldn’t ______________________________.
2. When I was younger, I could ______________________________.
3. He’ll ______________________________.
4. When I ______________________________, I would ______________________________.
5. Could you ______________________________?  
6. Would you ______________________________?  
7. Can I ______________________________?  
8. Could I ______________________________?
EXERCISE 18d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

believe in, 16  go along with, 3  hold off, 16
carry on, 16  go for, 16  put past, 16
come over, 17  go with, 15  tell on, 15
come through, 15  grow out of, 17  think about, 16
count on, 16  head back, 15
get through, 16  head for, 15

1. I suggested that we go to Paris, and she really ________ ________ the idea.
2. After I ________ ________ it, I decided not to take the job.
3. I ________ ________ buying a new computer because I thought they would be on sale in January.
4. Do you think this yellow tie ________ ________ this blue shirt?
5. Her uncle promised to pay for her wedding, and he ________ ________.
6. It’s very important that you do this work correctly. I’m ________ ________ you.
7. Timmy broke a window, and his sister ________ ________ him.
8. The detective asked me if Jake had ________ ________ the liquor store, and I said I didn’t know but that I wouldn’t ________ ________ ________ him.
9. Todd said he would ________ ________ to my house after dinner and help me with my homework.
10. The reason Charles is vice-president of the company is that he ________ ________ ________ the boss on every decision.
11. Tomorrow I’m going to leave Winnipeg and ________ ________ Toronto.
12. I probably won’t ________ ________ to Winnipeg for a month or more.
13. I didn’t get Sally what she wanted for her birthday, and she ________ ________ about it all day.
14. You have so much work to do. When do you think you’ll ________ ________?
15. I bought these pants for my son a month ago, and he's already them already.

16. Ned didn't UFOs until he saw one.

19. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and the adverb *right*

The adverb *right* is often used to intensify the meaning of a phrasal verb. Placed before the particle, *right* means *directly, immediately, or quickly*. It is not important whether the phrasal verb is intransitive, separable, or nonseparable. What does matter is whether the action of the verb is something that can logically be done directly, immediately, or quickly. For example, it would be illogical to use *right* with *stand around,* or *wear down:

She aimed right at me. (She aimed directly at me.)
I'll bring it right over. (I'll bring it over immediately.)
The room warmed right up. (The room warmed up quickly.)

*Right* can be used when a separable phrasal verb is separated by its object; however, *right* cannot be used when the object follows the particle:

He brought my radio right back. He
brought right back my radio.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aim at</td>
<td>aim at &amp; aims at</td>
<td>aiming at</td>
<td>aimed at</td>
<td>aimed at</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. aim ... at p.v. When you point a weapon at people or things, you aim it at them.
   The robber aimed the gun right at my head.
   He was aiming the arrow at the apple, but he missed.

2. aim at p.v. When you aim at something you want, you do what is necessary to get it.
   The manager said she was aiming at a 14 percent increase in sales next year.
   The new law is aimed at reducing crime in the streets.

3. aim ... at p.v. When you do something designed to affect one class or type of people, you aim it at those people.
   Cigarette manufacturers were accused of aiming their advertising at young people.
   The candidate’s speech was aimed at female voters.
### Table of Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bring back</td>
<td>bring back &amp; brings back</td>
<td>bringing back</td>
<td>brought back</td>
<td>brought back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **bring... back** p.v. When you take something to another place and then bring it from that place to the place where you were before, you **bring it back**.
   - I told Tom to **bring my pen right back**.
   - Sally borrowed my blue sweater and **brought it back** yesterday.

2. **bring... back** p.v. When something that was popular or current in the past is introduced again, it is **brought back**.
   - Many schools are **bringing back** uniforms for children.
   - Every few years designers try to **bring miniskirts back**.

3. **bring... back** p.v. When something causes you to recall memories and emotions from the past, it **brings the memories and emotions back**.
   - Looking at these old pictures **brought back** wonderful memories.
   - I had tried to forget that awful incident, but this magazine article has **brought it all back**.

---

1. **bring... over** p.v. When people take something from one place to the place where you are, they **bring it over**.
   - I called Frank to ask if I could use his electric drill, and he **brought it right over**.
   - Linda is going to **bring her wedding pictures over** tonight.

2. **cool off** p.v. When the temperature of a thing or place becomes lower, it **cools off**.
   - It was really hot yesterday, but it **cooled off** in the evening.
   - This is too hot — I’ll eat it after it **cools off**.

3. **cool off** p.v. When people or things cause a thing or place to become cooler, they **cool it off**.
   - The coffee was really hot, but he put an ice cube in it and it **cooled right off**.
   - This bath is too hot. Put more cold water in it to **cool it off**.

4. **cool off** p.v. When you become less angry or less excited, you **cool off**.
   - He’s furious now, but he’ll **cool off** by morning.
   - Their passion for each other has **cooled off**.
### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go back</td>
<td>go back &amp; goes back</td>
<td>going back</td>
<td>went back</td>
<td>gone back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **go back** (to) **p.v.** When you return to a place where you were before, you **go back** or **go back** to that place.
   - That restaurant was terrible. We'll never **go back**.
   - Dorothy left the Emerald City and **went back** to Kansas.

2. **go back** (to) **p.v.** When a condition, problem, practice, or custom **goes back** to a certain time, it began at that time.
   - The tradition of saluting in the military **goes back** to the Middle Ages.
   - His drug problem **goes back** to his college years.

3. **go back** (to) **p.v.** When you are discussing the age of something, you **go back** or **go back** to when it was created or started.
   - This table is very valuable. It **goes back** to the 1760s.
   - The archeologist found ruins that **go back** 5,000 years.

### hand over

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hand over</th>
<th>hand over &amp; hands over</th>
<th>handing over</th>
<th>handed over</th>
<th>handed over</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **hand ...over** (to) **p.v.** When you give something to people because they demand it, because they require it, or because you are not its rightful owner, you **hand** it **over** or **hand** it **over** to them. **Turn over** is similar to **hand over**.
   - I found some money in the street, and I **handed** it **over** to the police.
   - That's my calculator — **hand it right over**!

**handover** n. When you transfer ownership or control of something to someone because that person has demanded it or because you are not its rightful owner, a **handover** takes place.
   - The Chinese celebrated Britain's **handover** of Hong Kong. The President demanded the immediate **handover** of the occupied territory.

2. **hand ...over** **p.v.** When you give someone responsibility for an important project, duty, or problem, you **hand** that project, duty, or problem **over** or **hand** it **over** to someone.
   - Mr. Wilson retired and **handed** control of the company **over** to his son.
   - The TV news anchor **handed** the show **over** to the reporter at the White House.

### pull over

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pull over</th>
<th>pull over &amp; pulls over</th>
<th>pulling over</th>
<th>pulled over</th>
<th>pulled over</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **pull... over** **p.v.** When you are driving and then move your vehicle to the side of the road, reduce your speed, and then stop, you **pull over** or **pull** your vehicle **over**.
   - I **pulled over** to fix a flat tire. We're lost.
   - Let's **pull the car over** and ask someone for directions.
2. pull... over p.v. When you are driving and a police officer signals you to move your vehicle to the side of the road, reduce your speed, and stop, the police officer pulls you over or pulls the vehicle over.

Jim was driving on the wrong side of the road, and he got pulled over by the state police.

When the police officer saw the driver go through a red light, he pulled the car right over.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>warm up</td>
<td>warm up &amp; warms up</td>
<td>warming up</td>
<td>warmed up</td>
<td>warmed up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. warm up p.v. When the temperature of a thing or place becomes higher, it warms up.
   - It's cold outside. I hope it warms up before the picnic.
   - I set the thermostat at eighty degrees, and the house warmed right up.

2. warm... up p.v. When people or things cause a thing or place to become warmer, they warm it up.
   - The fireplace doesn't really warm the house up much.
   - That soup is cold. You can warm it up in the microwave.

warmed up part.adj. After a thing or place has become warmer, it is warmed up.

Give the baby the bottle with the flowers on it; it's warmed up.

3. warm... up p.v. When you allow a mechanical device to run for a short time before being used, you warm it up. When a mechanical device runs for a short time before being used, it warms up.
   - You should always warm your car up for a few minutes before you go anywhere.
   - In the winter I always let my car warm up while I eat breakfast.

warmed up part.adj. After a mechanical device has been allowed to warm up and is ready to be used, it is warmed up.

   - We have to go — is the car warmed up yet?

4. warm up p.v. When you do light exercises before playing a sport or exercising with greater effort, you warm up. When performers play musical instruments or sing just before a performance in order to be ready, they warm up.
   - Before a race most runners warm up with stretching exercises.
   - The singer warmed up in her dressing room before the concert.

warm-up n. Light exercises done before playing a sport or exercising with greater effort are called a warm-up. When a performer plays an instrument or sings just before a performance in order to be ready, this is a warm-up.

The runners got to the stadium early so they would have time for a warm-up.
warm-up n. Warm-up clothes are worn during a warm-up. Warm-up exercises are done before playing a sport or exercising. A warm-up game, round, and so on, is played in order to warm up for the actual game.

The baseball players wore their warm-up jackets when they weren’t on the field.

EXERCISE 19a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The pizza was cold, so I put it in the microwave to _______ it _______.
2. My car was making a strange noise, so I _______ _______ to look at the engine.
3. Can I use your lawn mower? I’ll _______ it _______ tomorrow.
4. Jim always puts milk in his coffee to _______ it _______.
5. The roots of the trouble in the Middle East _______ _______ thousands of years.
6. The new police chief said that he thinks that abolishing capital punishment was a mistake and that it should be _______ _______.
7. The judge ordered the thieves to _______ _______ the stolen merchandise immediately.
8. Hearing Uncle John’s stories about the old country _______ _______ a lot of memories.
9. With this new antipollution law we’re _______ _______ reducing the amount of pollution by 50 percent in ten years.
10. I asked Judy if I could use her video camera, and she said she would _______ it right _______.
11. The mechanic recommended letting the car _______ _______ before driving it.
12. The robber changed his mind when he saw the guard _______ his shotgun right _______ him.
13. The local police chief _______ the investigation _______ to the FBI agents.
14. Your father’s angry right now. Talk to him about your miserable report card after he’s _______ _______.
15. The changes at the factory are _______ _______ reducing costs and increasing profits.
16. The mystery of the Pyramids _______ _______ nearly 5,000 years.
17. The coach always makes the players _______ _______ before the game.
18. After lunch Jerry _______ right _______ to work.
19. This coffee is too hot. I can't drink it until it ___________ _____________.

20. I was _______ _______ by the sheriff for going eighty miles per hour in a school zone.

21. It's cold now, but it'll _______ _______ by noon.

**EXERCISE 19b —** Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Could you bring back. (my tool kit, it)

2. I'll bring over. (your tool kit, it)

3. The air conditioner quickly cooled off. (my apartment, it)

4. Todd handed over. (his wallet, it)

5. The sheriff pulled over. (the suspects, them)

6. The drivers are warming up. (their trucks, them)
EXERCISE 19c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. Replace the underlined adverbs with right. Remember that right can be used only when the verb and the particle are separated.

1. They lit a fire, and the cabin became warm quickly. What did the cabin do?
2. You will return to work immediately. What will you do?
3. After the sun set, the backyard became cooler quickly. What did the backyard do?
4. If I saw the flashing lights of the police car, I would slow my car and stop at the side of the road immediately. What would I do?
5. Sergeant Jones pointed his rifle directly at the enemy soldier. What did Sergeant Jones do?
6. She told me to return her dictionary immediately. What did she say?
7. Linda's father told her to give him his credit card immediately. What did Linda's father tell her to do?
8. I called Lydia and told her I needed medicine for my son, and she took the medicine from her house to my house immediately. What did Lydia do to the medicine?

EXERCISE 19d. Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

| back off, 12 | go beyond, 18 | stand around, 18 |
| break through, 18 | head into, 17 | tell apart, 18 |
| come across, 12 | hit on, 13 | track down, 13 |
| come up with, 6 | let off, 13 | wind up, 14 |
| fall through, 12 | lift up, 18 |
| figure on, 18 | put up, 12 |

1. The prisoners _________ the wall of the prison and escaped.
2. It was easy for them to escape because the guards had been _________ smoking cigarettes.
3. The warden wasn't just upset with the guards — the problem _______ _______ that.
4. The guards used dogs to ___________ one of the escaped prisoners the next day.
5. The other prisoner _______ _______ some dense forest.
6. The prisoner tried to steal a man's car, but when he saw the man's large dog, he _______ _______.
7. The police had a meeting to try to ___________ _______ a way to capture the prisoner.
8. They finally _______ _______ the idea of using a helicopter.
9. The helicopter plan _______ _______ because the weather was so bad.
10. The police thought the prisoner would probably _______ _______ at his family's house.
11. The prisoner has a twin brother, and the police couldn't _______ them _______.
12. That was one problem the police didn't _______ _______.
13. One police officer walked behind the house and _______ _______ some garbage cans.
14. He heard a noise from the garbage can, so he ___________ the top and saw the prisoner.
15. The prisoner _______ _______ a fight, but the police were able to capture him.
16. Both prisoners were charged with escaping from prison, but the judge _______ them _______ with a warning.
20. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs followed by the -ing form

Some phrasal verbs can be followed by the -ing form of verbs:

- He ended up staying home.
- She lies around doing, nothing.

The -ing form can be negative:

- He ended up not going anywhere.
- She lies around not doing anything.

Nouns and pronouns can come between the phrasal verb and the -ing form:

- The doctor went around the hospital visiting his patients.
- Jim hangs around Janice hoping she’ll fall in love with him.

Prepositional phrases can come between the phrasal verb and the -ing form:

- My luggage ended up on the wrong flight going to the wrong city.
- I started out at the bottom working in the mailroom.

Other adverbs and adverbial expressions can come between the phrasal verb and the -ing form:

- Bill goes around constantly looking for bargains.
- She stayed up late watching TV.
- I went around all day not knowing I had spinach in my teeth.
- He ended up here asking for money.

Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>end up</td>
<td>end up &amp; ends up</td>
<td>ending up</td>
<td>ended up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **end up** p.v. When people end up doing something or end up a certain way, it is the result of a series of decisions, actions, or unplanned and unexpected occurrences. End up is similar to wind up.

A hurricane was approaching Florida, so we ended up coming home from our vacation early.

Judy has never gone skydiving before, so she’ll probably end up in the hospital with two broken legs.

2. **end up** p.v. When people or things end up in a place, this place is where their journey ends even though the outcome may have been unplanned or unexpected.

How did London Bridge end up in Arizona?

The taxi driver didn’t understand me, and we ended up in Newark instead of New York.

Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go around</td>
<td>going around</td>
<td>gone around</td>
<td>gone around</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **go around** p.v. When people or things follow a circular path and return to the same place, they go around.
   - The horse has **gone around** the track three times.
   - It took seven days to **go around** the island.

2. **go around** p.v. When people or things follow an indirect or curved path in order to avoid an obstacle or to change direction, they **go around** or **go around** the obstacle.
   - Heather **went around** the curve too fast, and she ended up in the ditch.
   - There was some broken glass in the street, but I **went around** it.

3. **go around** p.v. When an object spins or turns, it **goes around**.
   - The disk drives in computers **go around** very fast.
   - The children have to stay on the merry-go-round until it stops **going around**.

4. **go around** p.v. When you **go around** a place, you visit various parts of it.
   - The president **went around** the state giving the same speech at every stop.
   - The exterminator is **going around** the house looking for rats.

5. **go around** p.v. When you **go around** in a certain condition or **go around** doing something, you go to various places and allow other people to see you.
   - I was so embarrassed — I **went around** all day with my zipper open.
   - Are you going to **go around** all day wearing that stupid hat?

6. **go around** p.v. When you **go around** doing something, you go to various places and deliberately do something that may bother or upset other people.
   - The new manager **goes around** telling everyone how to do their jobs.
   - Don’t **go around** sticking your nose in other people’s business.

7. **go around** p.v. When something **goes around**, it spreads to various parts of a larger place.
   - A rumor **went around** that the plant was going to close.
   - He probably has the flu; it’s been **going around**.

8. **go around** p.v. When something is being distributed to a group of people and there is enough for everyone, there is enough to **go around**.
   - There wasn’t enough food to **go around**, and some of the famine victims got nothing.
   - Don’t make the pieces of wedding cake too big, otherwise there won’t be enough to **go around**.
Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Go off</td>
<td>go off &amp; goes off</td>
<td>going off</td>
<td>went off</td>
<td>gone off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **go off** p.v. When a gun **goes off**, it fires. When a bomb **goes off**, it explodes. When an alarm or alarm clock **goes off**, it makes a loud noise.
   The terrorists were killed when the bomb **went off** accidentally.
   I was late for work because my alarm clock didn’t **go off**.

2. **go off** p.v. When an electrical device or system **goes off**, it stops operating. **Come on** is the opposite of **go off**.
   The electricity **went off** at 8:30 last night.
   A thermostat makes the air conditioner **go off** if it gets below a certain temperature.

3. **go off** (with) p.v. When you **go off**, you leave a place or the people you are with and go to a different place. When you **go off** with someone, you leave a place or the people you are with and go to a different place with them.
   Mark **went off** not realizing he had left his wallet at home.
   At the museum Sally **went off** with her friends to see some things we weren’t interested in.

4. **go off** p.v. When an event or plan **goes off** well, smoothly, without a problem, or without a hitch (a hitch is a problem), it happens as planned.
   The drug bust **went off** without a hitch.
   The invasion didn’t **go off** the way the general planned it.

5. **go off** p.v. When a road, trail, path, and so on, **goes off**, it leaves the main road, trail, or path, and goes in a different direction.
   This trail that **goes off** to the left will take you to the campground.
   We didn’t know which way to go — one path **went off** to the left, the other to the right.

---

**go on**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go on</td>
<td>go on &amp; goes on</td>
<td>going on</td>
<td>went on</td>
<td>gone on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **go on** p.v. When an electrical device or system **goes on**, it begins to operate.
   A thermostat makes the air conditioner **go on** if it gets above a certain temperature. The lights **goes on** automatically if someone walks near the door.

2. **go on** p.v. When something **goes on**, it happens. “What’s **going on**?” is a common informal greeting.
   Tell me what **went on** at the party last night. If you see anything illegal **going on**, call the police immediately.

3. **go on** p.v. When people **go on**, they continue doing something. Sometimes, **on** is repeated for emphasis.

151
I asked her to be quiet, but she went right on singing.
Just go on with what you're doing. I'll wait until you're finished.
I told him to stop talking, but he went on and on and on and on.

4. go on p.v. When an event or activity goes on, it continues.
The party went on until dawn. I hate long meetings that go on for hours.

5. go on p.v. When you go on information, you are able to continue an investigation or other project because you have this information.
The detective said he needs more to go on and asked the public for information.
The auto company won't recall 75,000 cars because of one accident. That's just not enough to go on.

6. go on p.v. When you go on a diet, you start a plan to lose weight.
I go on a diet every January.
I have to go on a diet; my high school reunion is in two months.

7. go on p.v. When you say "Go on" to people, you are encouraging them to do something.
Yes, caviar is fish eggs, but it's good — go on, try it. Oh, go on — don't be afraid.

Infinitive present tense -ing form past tense past participle
hang around & hangs around hanging around hung around hung around

1. hang around p.v. [informal] When you hang around or hang around doing something, you stay in a place without a purpose for being there or because you are waiting for someone or something.
I had to hang around for three hours waiting for the bus.
Bob's been hanging around the house all day. Doesn't he have anything to do?

2. hang around p.v. [informal] When people stay in a place instead of leaving, they hang around.
What's the hurry? Hang around for a while, and when I finish my homework we can watch TV.
Do you have to go or can you hang around for a while?

3. hang around p.v. [informal] When you hang around people, you spend a lot of time with them. When you hang around a place, you spend a lot of time there.
Erik's mother is worried. She doesn't like the guys he's hanging around with.
Jim and Bill were good friends. They always hung around when they were kids.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lie around</td>
<td>lie around &amp; lies around</td>
<td>lying around</td>
<td>lay around</td>
<td>lain around</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **lie around** p.v. When you **lie around** or **lie around** doing something, you recline and relax and do not do anything important.

   - Today is my day off, so don't ask me to do any work. I'm just going to **lie around**.
   - All my sister ever does is **lie around** watching soap operas.

2. **lie around** p.v. [always continuous] When something is **lying around**, it is disorganized and no one is using it or paying attention to it.

   - Jake is a slob. There are empty beer cans and old newspapers **lying around** all over his house.
   - We need to do something about all that junk **lying around** in the backyard.

1. **start out** p.v. When you begin something, you **start out**. **Start out** is used to discuss how the end of something was different from its beginning.

   - The stock market **started out** in positive territory but closed 200 points lower.
   - Nancy **started out** as a secretary, thinking she might have a future with this company, but she doesn't feel that way anymore.

2. **stay up** p.v. When something **stays up**, it remains in a place that is higher than ground level.

   - That shelf won't **stay up** if you put all those books on it.
   - The astronauts **stayed up** for 241 days.

2. **stay up** p.v. When you **stay up**, you go to bed later than you normally do.

   - Judy's tired because she **stayed up** until dawn studying for a chemistry test.
   - Don't **stay up** late — tomorrow's a school day.

**EXERCISE 20a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. This is a dangerous neighborhood — so stay with me and don't _____ _____ by yourself.

2. Yesterday at work Leticia _______ _______ showing everyone her engagement ring.

3. Wedding ceremonies in some countries can _______ _______ for days.

4. The bomb will _______ _______ at exactly 6:00.
5. Where are you going? Why don't you ________ ________ until Jim comes home and then we can order a pizza.
6. The driver took a wrong turn, and we ________ ________ in the middle of nowhere.
7. On Sundays my husband usually ________ ________ on the couch watching football games.
8. My lazy son ________ ________ the house all day not lifting a finger to help with anything.
9. She's going to ________ ________ at her new job working only part-time, but later she'll switch to full-time.
10. Buy lots of champagne for the party; you want to be sure there's enough to ________ ________.
11. Bill likes to go to bed early — he can't ________ ________ past 8:00 P.M.
12. Rosa wanted to study medicine in college, but she ________ ________ studying law instead.
13. The paleontologist was amazed to find dinosaur eggs just ________ ________ in the desert.
14. I can't believe you ________ ________ town wearing those dirty clothes all day.
15. I'm sorry I missed the party. Did anything exciting ________ ________?
16. I'm nervous about the wedding. I hope it ________ ________ the way we planned it.
17. A rumor is ________ ________ the school about two of the teachers.
18. It's normal for the power to ________ ________ during a thunderstorm.
19. If that poster doesn't ________ ________ with tape, we'll have to use thumb tacks instead.
20. In the morning Dr. Smith usually ________ ________ the hospital visiting his patients.
21. Jim is usually a good boy, but when he ________ ________ with Jake he gets in trouble.
22. He was trying to ________ ________ a slow truck when he had the accident.
23. I ________ ________ a diet two weeks ago, and so far I haven’t lost an ounce.
24. In the past no one believed that the earth ________ ________ the sun.
25. If you’re leaving, what are you waiting for? ________ ________ leave!
26. How can I make such an important decision with so little information? I need more to ________.
27. I’m surprised that the heat ________ ________ last night — it’s only September.
28. Miguel’s new race car is really fast. Yesterday he ________ ________ the track in record time.
29. After you cross the bridge, you’ll see a gravel road that ________ ________ a lake and heads toward the mountains.
30. I don’t want to retire. I’m going to ________ ________ working as long as I can.

EXERCISE 20b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. You’re going to spend the day on the sofa watching TV. What are you going to do all day?
2. Lydia walked to various places in her new house making decorating plans. What did Lydia do in her new house?
3. The letter was supposed to go to Austria, but it finally arrived in Australia. What happened to the letter?
4. The electricity stops working everyday at 2:00. What does the electricity do?
5. Joe called and asked what was happening. What did Joe ask?
6. Bob goes to every office at work telling awful jokes. What does Bob do at work?
7. Janice didn’t go to bed all night. What did Janice do?
8. Dan stays in his house all day. He doesn’t go anywhere or do anything. What does Dan do all day?
9. You were late to work because your alarm clock didn’t ring this morning. What didn’t your alarm clock do this morning?
10. Jerry went to many places wearing a Hawaiian shirt. What did Jerry do?
11. When it gets dark the street lights begin to operate automatically. What do the lights do?
12. I bought only twenty-five hot dogs for the party, but thirty people showed up, so some people didn’t get a hot dog. Why didn’t some people get a hot dog?
13. There are a lot of potholes in the street, and I have to avoid them while I’m driving. What do I have to do while I’m driving?
14. I couldn’t decide between the red car and the blue car, but I finally decided on the red car. What did I finally do?
15. Mr. Watson is the brains of this company. If he left we couldn’t continue. What couldn’t we do without Mr. Watson?
16. Jane began the project thinking it would take only a few weeks. What did Jane do?

EXERCISE 20c — Write original sentences using these phrasal verbs from this section
and previous sections followed by the -ing form. The first number after the verb is the section; the second number is the meaning. It is only that meaning that can be followed by the -ing form. Try to make some of the sentences similar to those in the **FOCUS** section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break down</td>
<td>5/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come over</td>
<td>17/1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end up</td>
<td>20/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go around</td>
<td>20/4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go off</td>
<td>20/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on</td>
<td>20/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang around</td>
<td>20/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie around</td>
<td>20/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show up</td>
<td>1/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay up</td>
<td>20/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start out</td>
<td>20/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>1/7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie around</td>
<td>20/1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind up</td>
<td>14/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ____________________________________________________
2. _____________________________________________________
3. _____________________________________________________
4. _____________________________________________________
5. _____________________________________________________
6. _____________________________________________________
7. _____________________________________________________
8. _____________________________________________________
9. _____________________________________________________

156
EXERCISE 20d. Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

aim at, 19 call off, 13 go about, 17 rip up, 17
blow away, 15 cool off, 19 go back, 19 screw out of, 3
break out, 9 dry out, 15 hear of, 8 see a bout, 7
bring over, 19 give up, 9 pay for, 4 work up, 9

1. My teacher made a mistake when he corrected my test and ________ me ________ ten points.
2. You'd better wear a jacket — it has ________ ________ outside.
3. Her letter made me so mad that I ________ it ________.
4. You don't need to rake the leaves; the wind will ________ them ________.
5. We knew we didn't have any hope of winning the battle, so we ________ ________.
6. You can't run ten miles on the first day of your exercise program. You have to ________ ________ to it.
7. Michael didn't see the red light and hit a gasoline truck. He ________ ________ his mistake with his life.
8. Sam asked me if I knew someone named Francisco, and I said I had never ________ ________ him.
9. My family has been in Massachusetts since the seventeenth century. They ________ ________ on the Mayflower.
10. Our trip to Miami was ________ ________ because of the hurricane.
11. I'm going to ________ the dentist ________ getting my teeth whitened.
12. Do you know how to ________ ________ getting a passport?
13. This rug is wet; let's take it outside to _______ _______ in the sun.

14. The new restrictions on cigarette advertising are _______ _______ reducing the level of teenage smoking.

15. They _______ _______ of prison by tunneling under the prison wall.

16. We don't have enough plates for the party, so I called Maria and asked her to _______ some _______.

---

21. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and *should* and *ought to*

*Should* and *ought to* have two important meanings in English. One is familiar to most students, but the other is not.

**A good idea: should and ought to**

*Should* and *ought to* can be used to say that doing something is a good idea because it will benefit the person you are speaking about:

- You *should* zip up your coat.
- You *ought* to zip up your coat.

or because the person you are speaking about is expected, though not required, to do something:

- You *should* bring in the groceries for your mother.
- You *ought* to bring in the groceries for your mother.

Although *should* and *ought* are modal auxiliary verbs, *ought* must be used with *to*. In other words, *ought* does not equal *should*; *ought to* equals *should*. Never say *should to*.

**Very probable: should and ought to**

*Both* *should* and *ought to* are used to say that something is very probable, very likely, or 90 percent sure to happen — that if everything is normal, as expected, or as planned, a condition will very probably exist or something will very probably happen:

- The rebel territory *should* settle down once winter comes.
- The rebel territory *ought to* settle down once winter comes.

In the examples above, either *should* or *ought to* can be used — they have the same meaning — however, only *should* is used in questions:
Should Tom zip up his jacket?

Ought Tom to zip up his jacket?

and only should not or shouldn’t is used in negative sentences:

Tom should not zip up his jacket.

Tom ought not to zip up his jacket.

Should not (or shouldn’t) is used to say that something is not probable. It means that something is very improbable, very unlikely, or 90 percent sure not to happen — that if everything is normal, as expected, or as planned, a condition will very probably not exist or something will very probably not happen:

I set the thermostat at sixty-five degrees, and I’m sure it won’t get below seventy tonight, so the heat shouldn’t go on.

1. **look around** p.v. When you turn your head to see what is behind you or around you, you **look around**.

   I heard a sound, and I looked around to see who it was. Sally looked around the room and didn’t recognize anyone.

2. **look around** p.v. When you **look around** or **look around** a place, you go to various parts of the place in order to see what it is like or what is there.

   You should **look around** before you decide whether you want to buy the house.

   Linda looked around the bookstore but didn’t find anything interesting.

**look over**

look over & looks over looking over looked over looked over

1. **look over** p.v. [usually separated] When you look something **over**, you look at it or read it carefully and thoroughly.

   He ought to **look over** the car before he buys it.

   Here’s the first chapter of my new book, look it **over** and tell me what you think.

**pick on**

pick on & picks on picking on picked on picked on

1. **pick on** p.v. When you **pick on** people, you continually tease and criticize them.

   Susie, you shouldn’t **pick on** your little brother.

   The teacher never criticizes anyone else — she **picks on** only me.
**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>settle down</td>
<td>settle down &amp; settles down</td>
<td>settling down</td>
<td>settled down</td>
<td>settled down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **settle ... down** p.v. When you **settle down**, you become less active, nervous, or upset. *When you settle other people down, you do something to make them less active, nervous, or upset. Calm down is similar to settle down.*

   - Why are you so nervous about the test? Just **settle down**: you’ll do just fine.
   - Can’t you **settle** the children down? All that noise is driving me crazy.

2. **settle... down** p.v. When a confused or violent situation becomes less confused or violent, it **settles down**. When you **settle a confused or violent situation down**, you make it less confused or violent and more calm. *Calm down is similar to settle down.*

   - Rioting and arson continued for three days before the area **settled down**.
   - The head of the union spoke to the angry strikers to try to **settle them down**.

3. **settle down** p.v. When people **settle down**, they start to live a less active life and perhaps get married, buy a house, and start a family.

   - Mike led a pretty wild life when he was in his early twenties, but he got married when he was 29 and **settled down**.

   - My son is forty-one. I wish he’d **settle down** and raise a family.

---

**step on**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>step on &amp; steps on</th>
<th>stepping on</th>
<th>stepped on</th>
<th>stepped on</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **step on** p.v. When you **step on** something, you place your foot on it.

   - If the carpenter steps on a nail, she’ll have to go to the hospital for a tetanus shot.
   - Sam **stepped on** a cockroach.

2. **step on** p.v. [informal] When you say “**Step on** it” to someone who is driving a car, you are telling the driver to drive faster.

   - Hank needed to get to the airport in fifteen minutes, so he told the taxi driver to **step on** it.

   - **Step on it!** We have to be at work in ten minutes.

---

**take out on**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>take out on &amp; takes out on</th>
<th>taking out on</th>
<th>took out on</th>
<th>taken out on</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **take... out on** p.v. When you **take something out on** people, you unfairly criticize or punish them because you are angry about something that has occurred or about something that someone else has done.

   - If you’re mad at your boss, you shouldn’t **take it out on** your wife.
   - Hey! It’s not my fault you got a speeding ticket. Why are you **taking it out on** me?
1. **think ahead** p.v. When you *think ahead*, you plan for a future situation or activity so that you will not have a problem.

When we're out camping, there won't be any stores around if you forget something, so *think ahead*.

We *thought ahead* before we drove through the desert; we took forty liters of water.

---

**zip up**

_1. zip... up_ p.v. When you *zip up* a coat or other item of clothing, you close it with a zipper.

- It's freezing outside — *zip your coat up*.
- I can't *zip my dress up*. Can you?

*zipped up*_ part.adj. After you *zip up* a coat or other item of clothing, it is *zipped up*.

- Look at Timmy out there in the snow without his coat *zipped up*.
- Before you go to the airport, make sure your suitcases are *zipped up*.

---

**EXERCISE 21 a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. It's not your brother's fault you failed the math test. You shouldn't _______ it _______ ________ him.
2. Timmy left some of his toys on the floor. Be careful not to _______ ________ them.
3. There's a guy in my class who's really mean and makes jokes about me. I told the teacher that he's always _______ ________ me.
4. Someone called my name, and I _______ ________ to see who it was.
5. Jane is already thirty-four, but she's not interested in _______ ________ and having children.
6. I've _______ ________ your resume, and I think you're the right person for this job.
7. Timmy and Susie were running around the house like crazy, so I played their favorite videotape to try to _______ ________ them ________.
8. You should _______ ________ your backpack ________; otherwise all your books are going to fall out.
9. The two countries have a history of border clashes, but things have _______ _______ in the last few years.
10. I've never been in your house before; I'd like to _______ _______ and see how you've decorated it.
11. You don't want to arrive in Tokyo and realize you forgot something important back in Vancouver, so _______ _______.
12. We're late — _______________ it!

EXERCISE 21 b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.
1. Dan ought to look at the car very carefully before he decides whether to buy it. What should Dan do?
2. You went to a big bookstore and walked around so that you could see what books they have. What did you do in the bookstore?
3. Our neighbors were arguing all evening, but they stopped arguing and got quieter at around 1:00 A.M. What did our neighbors do around 1:00 A.M.?
4. It's freezing outside, so you ought to close the zipper on your jacket. What should you do to your jacket?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe the jacket after it is closed?
6. At the meeting, the boss asked Betty some difficult questions, and Betty wasn't ready with the answers. What didn't Betty do?
7. Frank unfairly criticizes his son. What does Frank do to his son?
8. Mark had a bad day at work, and when he came home he yelled at his wife. What did Mark do to his wife?
9. When Mike was dancing with Heather, he put his foot on her foot. What did Mike do to Heather's foot?
10.
EXERCISE 21 c, Review — Rewrite the underlined words in the sentences using these phrasal verbs from previous sections and should or ought to. Remember that ought to is not usually used in negative sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break through, 18</td>
<td>cool off, 19</td>
<td>hold up, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn out, 8</td>
<td>fall off, 10</td>
<td>pull through, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come over, 17</td>
<td>get off, 18</td>
<td>warm up, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come through, 15</td>
<td>get through, 16</td>
<td>wind up, 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come up, 12</td>
<td>go for, 16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: If they go to that restaurant, they will very probably expect to pay $200. If they go to that restaurant, they should figure on paying $200. or If they go to that restaurant, they ought to figure on paying $200.

1. Business in this restaurant will very probably decrease in January.
2. They are very probably finishing the investigation.
3. These cheap shoes will very probably not stay in good condition more than three months.
4. Jim flies from Florida to Boston every year in April, and it's April now. Jim will very probably travel to Boston soon.
5. It almost always gets cooler in October, and it's October 1st today, so it will very probably get cooler soon.
6. Paul's disease is not serious, so he will very probably be well again.
7. Francisco almost never works past 5:00, and it's 4:50 now. He will very probably stop working in a few minutes.
8. Lydia likes skiing a lot, so if you suggest that we go skiing next weekend, she will very probably like the idea.
9. The enemy soldiers have been trying to smash a hole in the wall of the fort for two hours, and they will very probably smash a hole in the wall soon.
10. Sally said she would come to my house at 5:30 and it's 5:40 now. She will very probably come to my house soon.

11. This work normally takes four hours to finish, so if you start at 9:00 you will very probably finish around 1:00.

12. The train almost always passes through town at 3:25, and it's 3:20 now, so the train will very probably pass through town in five minutes.

13. I put a lot of wood on the fire, so it very probably will not stop burning before morning.

14. The car heater is on maximum, so it will very probably get warm soon.

EXERCISE 21 d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

bring back, 19  go around, 20  hand over, 19  pull over, 19  end up, 20  go back, 19  hang around, 20  ring up, 8  fall apart, 17  go off, 20  lie around, 20  start out, 20  get back at, 17  go on, 20  line up, 18  stay up, 20

1. After Mark's father died, Tom _________ the office collecting money to buy some flowers for the funeral.
2. Who said you could use my camera? _________ it _________ right now!
3. The smoke alarm in our kitchen _________ every time I fry chicken.
4. We've been driving for five hours straight. Let's _________ and rest for a few minutes.
5. Our travel agent is trying to _________ a hot air balloon to take us to the top of Mt. Everest.
6. Last night I _________ late watching Casablanca on TV.
7. My old bicycle is in very bad condition. I ought to buy a new one before it completely _________ _________.
8. I'm mad at Sarah for telling my husband what happened at the office party. I'll _________ _________ her someday.
9. I ________ ________ thinking it wouldn't cost more than $300 to fix my car, but I've already spent more than $700.
10. Jimmy didn't used to get in trouble until he started to ________ ________ with Jake.
11. If you don't quit smoking and lose some weight, you're going to ________ ________ dying before you're fifty.
12. Visiting my old high school last week __________ a lot of great memories.
13. Are you going to do anything today or just ________ ________ watching TV?
14. I'm sorry I interrupted your story. Please ________ ________.
15. The cashier ________ ________ my stuff and said, "That comes to $47.21."
16. Alfonso left his credit card at the restaurant, so he had to ________ ________ to get it.

22. FOCUS ON: the particle up and the adverbs right and all

The particle up is used in many phrasal verbs, and one of its uses is to say that something has been done thoroughly or completely:

The building burned. (The building was damaged but not destroyed.)
The building burned up. (The building was completely destroyed.)

Right, discussed in Section 19, is often used in phrasal verbs with up to indicate that the action of the verb not only happened thoroughly and completely but also quickly:

They ate it up. (They ate all the food.)
They ate it right up. (They ate all the food, and they ate it quickly.)

Remember that right can be used in this way only after an object that is separating the verb and particle:

They ate the pizza right up.
They ate the pizza right up the pizza.

Even though up indicates that the action of the verb is thorough and complete, all is sometimes used for further emphasis with participle adjectives derived from phrasal verbs with up:

My taxes are all paid up.
The drain is all plugged up.
Infinitive present tense -ing form past tense past participle

burn up

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>p.v.</th>
<th>v.</th>
<th>adj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn up &amp; burns up</td>
<td>burning up</td>
<td>burned up</td>
<td>burned up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **burn up** p.v. When something is completely destroyed by heat or fire, it **burns up**.
   - The rocket's fuel will **burn up** after only forty seconds.

2. **burn... up** p.v. When people or things destroy something with heat or fire, they **burn it up**.
   - There's no more coal. We **burned it all up**.
   - Jet engines **burn up** fuel at a tremendous rate.

**burned up** part.adj. After something is completely destroyed by heat or fire, it is **burned up**.
   - There isn't anymore firewood; it's all **burned up**.
   - The house is all **burned up**. There's no way it can be saved.

3. **burned... up** p.v. [informal] When something makes you very angry, it **burns you up**.
   - It really **burns me up** when other people take credit for my work.
   - I have to say something to Sally about what she did. It's **burning me up**.

**burned up** part.adj. [informal] When you are very angry, you are **burned up**.
   - Jim was **burned up** when his boss criticized him during the meeting.
   - Relax — it's nothing to get all **burned up** about.

clear up

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>p.v.</th>
<th>v.</th>
<th>adj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clear up &amp; clears up</td>
<td>clearing up</td>
<td>cleared up</td>
<td>cleared up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **clear up** p.v. When a problem, misunderstanding, or disease goes away, it **clears up**.
   - The misunderstanding **cleared up** right away after we talked about it.
   - My rash is **clearing up** by itself. I don't need to go to the doctor.

**cleared up** part.adj. After a problem, misunderstanding, or disease goes away, it is **cleared up**.
   - I feel great. My sinus infection is all **cleared up**.
   - Everything's okay. It was a big misunderstanding, but it's **cleared up** now.

2. **clear... up** p.v. When you do something to solve a problem or misunderstanding or do something to cure a disease, you **clear it up**.
   - Everyone was confused about the new policy, so a memo was issued that **cleared everything up**.
   - The medicine Dr. Smith gave me **cleared the infection up**.
3. clear up p.v. When clouds in the sky go away, the weather clears up.

Unless it clears up, we'll have to cancel the picnic.

It was a beautiful day after the sky cleared up.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>count up</td>
<td>count up &amp; counts up</td>
<td>counting up</td>
<td>counted up</td>
<td>counted up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. count up p.v. When you count all of something to see how many of them there are, you count them up.

Count the money up and tell me what the total is.

Counting up the yes and no votes is going to take a long time.

eat up

1. eat... up p.v. When you eat food up, you eat all of it.

There's no more pizza; David ate it all up. Don't eat up the cake before your father gets a piece.

There's no more pizza; David ate it all up. Don't eat up the cake before your father gets a piece.

I'm broke. Fixing my car last week ate up my entire paycheck. I don't want to go shopping with you. I'll eat up the whole day.

2. eat... up p.v. When something eats up something else, such as money or time, it uses all of it.

Sometimes the sun heats up the desert to 120 degrees.

Don't give the baby that cold bottle; give her this heated up one.

The spaghetti has been in the microwave for five minutes, so I'm sure it's heated up by now.

heat up

1. heat ... up p.v. When something or someone makes something hotter, they heat it up.

Waiter, this soup is cold. Would you heat it up for me?

Sometimes the sun heats up the desert to 120 degrees.

heated up part.adj. After something or someone makes something hotter, it is heated up.

Don't give the baby that cold bottle; give her this heated up one.

The spaghetti has been in the microwave for five minutes, so I'm sure it's heated up by now.

pay up

1. pay up p.v. When you pay up, you pay all the money you owe to a person, bank, and so on, usually as a result of pressure to pay the money.

A guy from the collection agency called and told me I'd better pay up.

I wasn't surprised when the insurance company refused to pay up.
**paid up** part.adj. After you are *paid* up, you have paid all the money you owe to a person, bank, and so on.

I told the bill collector that he had made a mistake. I'm all *paid up*.

Betty's VISA card is *paid up*, so there won't be any finance charge next month.

---

**plug up**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>plug up &amp; plugs up</th>
<th>plugging up</th>
<th>plugged up</th>
<th>plugged up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **plug** ... *up* p.v. When people or things block a narrow passage, such as a pipe, drain, or hole, so that nothing can flow through it, they **plug** it *up*.

Don't pour bacon grease in the sink; it'll plug up the drain.

I need to **plug up** the hole in the roof where the rain is leaking in.

**plugged up** part.adj. When a narrow passage, such as a pipe, drain, or hole, is completely blocked so that nothing can flow through it, it is **plugged up**.

Call the plumber; the sink's **plugged up**.

My nose is all **plugged up**, and I can't smell anything.

---

**wipe up**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wipe up &amp; wipes up</th>
<th>wiping up</th>
<th>wiped up</th>
<th>wiped up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **wipe** ... *up* p.v. When you completely remove a liquid from a surface by moving a towel or sponge across it with a sweeping motion, you **wipe** the liquid *up*. (**Wipe up** is similar to **wipe off**; however, you **wipe up** a liquid, but you **wipe off** the surface the liquid is on.)

Susie spilled her milk, and her mother told her to **wipe it all up**.

You'd better **wipe up** the water on the bathroom floor before someone falls.

**EXERCISE 22a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Don't **________________** the potato chips. Leave some for me.
2. We have to **________________** the hole in this boat **________** fast before it sinks.
3. It **________________** me **________** when people smoke in a nonsmoking section.
4. There was a lot of confusion about the new plan, so we asked Tom to **________________** it **________** for us.
5. The bill collector threatened to repossess my car if I didn't **________________**.
6. The pain I had in my shoulder **________________** right **________** after I tried the new therapy.
7. Okay, let's **________________** the points to see who won the game.
8. It was cloudy in the morning, but around 11:00 it **________________** right **________**.
9. It hasn't rained in months, so this dry forest will really **________________________** if there's a fire.
10. **________________________**
10. Would you get a towel and ________ ________ the coffee you spilled?
11. I'll put your dinner in the refrigerator, and you can ________ ________ when you come home.
12. I'm going to ________ ________ all these old papers in the fireplace.
13. I didn't have any insurance, so paying for those hospital bills really ________ ________ all my savings.

EXERCISE 22b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. They burned up. (the wood, it)
2. He ought to clear up. (the misunderstanding, it)
3. Would you count up? (the votes, them)
4. Have they eaten up? (all the candy, it)
5. I can't plug up. (the hole, it)
Wipe up right now! (that water, it)

EXERCISE 22c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. You completely blocked the drain so that water couldn’t go through it. What did you do to the drain?

2. In Question 1, how would you describe the drain?

3. I'm putting my coffee in the microwave to make it hotter. What am I doing to my coffee?

4. In Question 3, how would you describe my coffee after I take it out of the microwave?

5. Erik hasn't counted all the money. What hasn't Erik done?

6. You'll pay all your late mortgage payments. What will you do to your mortgage?

7. In Question 6, how will you be regarding your mortgage?

8. The police used fire to destroy all the drugs. What did the police do?

9. In Question 8, how would you describe the drugs now?

10. My disease went away immediately. What did my disease do?

11. Sarah is cleaning up all the orange juice that she spilled on the floor. What is Sarah doing?

12. Carlos always eats all his baby food, and he eats it quickly. What does Carlos do?
EXERCISE 22d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

carry on, 16  go with, 15  look around, 21  step on, 21
count on, 16  hand in, 13  put away, 14  take out on, 21
dress up, 14  head back, 15  sign in, 12  think ahead, 21
dry up, 14  head for, 15  sign out, 12  zip up, 21

carry on, 16  go with, 15  look around, 21  step on, 21

1. I’ll be there when you need me. You can ________ ________ me.
2. Do you think these shoes ________ ________ my dress?
3. ________ ________ so that you have everything you need when you get there.
4. Linda is here in the office somewhere — she ________ ________ at 8:52.
5. Linda always leaves at 5:00, and it’s almost 6:00 now, so I’m sure she has already ________ .
6. That guy is crazy. He ought to be ________ ________.
7. When you finish with the job application, you can ________ it ________ to the secretary.
8. I don’t think we should make any changes now. Let’s ________ ________ our original plan.
9. The party will be casual, so you don’t have to ________ ________.
10. Maria told me she would be in the library between 7:00 and 8:00, but I ________ ________ and couldn’t find her.
11. There’s some broken glass there — don’t ________ ________ it.
12. I hope it rains soon. The lake is starting to ________ ________.
13. ________ ________ your coat — it’s fifteen degrees below zero outside.
14. Janice hates her job, and she ________ it ________ ________ her husband.
15. I’m ________ ________ ________ San Diego, and I should get there by late afternoon.
16. I’ll stay in San Diego for a week and then ________ ________ to Los Angeles.
23. FOCUS ON: two-word phrasal verbs that require an additional particle when used with an object, 2

As we saw in Section 9, many phrasal verbs that can be used both intransitively and transitively require a second particle when they are used transitively, which makes them three-word phrasal verbs.

Although these phrasal verbs have a three-word version, they remain classified as two-word verbs because the two-word and three-word phrasal verbs have the same meaning — they are variations of the same verb:

He filled in. He filled in for Mike.

There are, however, three-word phrasal verbs that share the same verb and first particle as another two-word phrasal verb but have an entirely different meaning. These are two different phrasal verbs and are classified separately:

He put up a poster.

He put up with her rudeness.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crack down</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crack down &amp; cracks down</td>
<td>cracking down</td>
<td>cracked down</td>
<td>cracked down</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. crack down (on) p.v. When you crack down or crack down on someone or something, you enforce rules and laws more than you enforced them before or you make new, stronger rules and laws.

The chief of police said he was going to crack down on car theft.
The students have been coming to class later and later everyday. It's time to start cracking down.

crackdown n. When you enforce rules and laws more than you enforced them before, this is a crackdown.
The FBI is planning a major crackdown on organized crime.
After the crackdown, the crime rate plunged.

cut down

cut down & cuts down | cutting down | cut down | cut down |
|---------------------|--------------|----------|----------|

1. cut... down p.v. When you cut down a tree, you use a saw or an axe to cut it and make it fall to the ground.

You should cut that dead tree down before it falls on your house.
The builder was criticized for cutting down so many trees when he built the house.

2. cut... down p.v. [informal — always separated] When you cut people down to size, you do or say something to make them feel less important or less powerful.
I'm tired of that jerk. I'm going to cut him down to size.

Hank thinks he's such a tough guy. Someone ought to cut him down to size.

3. cut down (on) p.v. When you cut down or cut down on something that you consume, you use it less. When you cut down or cut down on something you do, you do it less. Cut back is similar to cut down.

If you can't quit smoking, you should at least cut down.

My doctor said cutting down on fat in my diet would lower my cholesterol.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>drop out</td>
<td>drop out &amp; drops out</td>
<td>dropping out</td>
<td>dropped out</td>
<td>dropped out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. drop out (of) p.v. When you drop out or drop out of a school, a training course, or other program, you leave before completing it.

The program is very difficult, and about 70 percent of the students drop out.

Linda's father was very disappointed when she dropped out of college.

dropout n. A dropout is someone who has left school, usually high school or college, before graduating.

Many successful people are college dropouts.

get away

1. get away (from) p.v. When you escape from people who are chasing you because they want to hurt you or because you have committed a crime, you get away or get away from them.

When he took the knife out of his pocket, I got away from him fast.

By the time the police arrived, the robbers had already gotten away.

getaway n. When you escape from people who want to capture or hurt you, you make a getaway.

The robbers made their getaway in a blue Ford.

The car used for the getaway was found abandoned in the next town.

2. get away (with) p.v. When you do something that is sneaky or wrong and you are not punished or criticized for it because no one knows or cares about it, you get away with it.

Jake has been cheating on his taxes for years, and he always gets away with it.

He got away with killing his ex-wife even though everyone knew he was guilty.

3. get away (from) p.v. When you get away from people or places, you leave them even though it may be difficult.

I'm tired of this town. I need to get away.

Frank was talking and talking, and I couldn't get away from him.
4. get away p.v. When you get away, you go on vacation.

/ have a lot of work to do, but I'll try to get away for a week or two.

We always try to get away in January and go skiing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hold out</td>
<td>hold out &amp; holds out</td>
<td>holding out</td>
<td>held out</td>
<td>held out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. hold out p.v. When you hold out your hand, you extend it in front of your body so that someone can shake hands with you or put something in your hand. Hold out is similar to put out.

Maybe Mr. Young is mad at me. I held out my hand, but he didn't shake it.
The street was filled with beggars holding their hands out.

2. hold out p.v. When a supply of something is enough for your needs, the supply holds out.

The beer held out until the end of the party, but we didn't have enough wine.
This is all the money I have, so it has to hold out until I get paid again.

3. hold out p.v. When you hold out, you resist an attack, pressure, or temptation or you continue to survive in a dangerous situation.

More than 1,000 enemy soldiers attacked the fort. There were only 98 of us inside, but we held out for two weeks.
I haven't had a cigarette in three days, and I don't know how much longer I can hold out.

holdout n. Someone who resists an attack, pressure, or temptation is a holdout.
The enemy soldiers are in control of the country, but there are some holdouts hiding in the mountains.
There are still a few holdouts who don't have credit cards.

4. hold out (for) p.v. When you hold out or hold out for something, you refuse to compromise in a negotiation and accept anything less than your original demands.

The basketball player is holding out for a million dollars a game.
The union spokesman said the union members would hold out until their demands were met.

holdout n. When you refuse to compromise in a negotiation and accept anything less than your original demands, you are a holdout.

All the players have signed contracts except for two holdouts.

1. make up p.v. When you invent a story to entertain or fool people, you make the story up. When you invent a lie to deceive people, you make the lie up.
My son asked me to make up a story about monsters.
Hank told his boss he was late for work because he had to go to the doctor, but he just made up that excuse.

made-up part.adj. When a story is invented or fictional, it is made-up. There's no truth to any of this — it's just a made-up story.

2. make up (of) p.v. [often passive] When people or things make up a larger thing, they together form that larger thing. When a larger thing is made up of people or things, they together form that larger thing.
   - Children under fifteen make up 50 percent of the population.
   - An airplane is made up of thousands of parts.

3. make... up p.v. When you make up your mind, make up your mind about something, or make up your mind about doing something, you decide which choice to make or which action to take.
   - I like both the blue dress and the red dress. I can't make up my mind.
   - My daughter still hasn't made up her mind about which college to attend.
   - Marsha made her mind up about quitting her job and joining the Navy.

made up part.adj. After you make up your mind or make up your mind to do something, your mind is made up.

Don't waste your time talking to Tom about it — his mind is made up.

4. make... up p.v. When you have an amount of money that is not enough for a certain requirement and you add more money so that it will be enough, you make up the difference between the amount you have and the amount you need.
   - The cashier was supposed to have $755 at the end of her shift, but she had only $735, so she had to make up the shortage with her own money.
   - I didn't have enough saved to pay for college, but my Uncle Fred made up the difference.

5. make... up p.v. When you do something that you were required to do earlier but did not, such as attend a class, take a test, or complete a homework assignment, you make it up.
   - Karen asked the teacher about making up the test that she missed.
   - The teacher told her she should make it up tomorrow after school.

6. make... up p.v. [the noun and adjectives derived from this verb are much more commonly used than the verb itself] When you make yourself up, you put lipstick, eye shadow, and so on, on your face.
   - She made herself up and went to the party.

make-up n. Make-up is cosmetics: lipstick, mascara, and soon. Heather's father thinks she wears too much make-up.
made-up part.adj. After people have put on make-up, they are made-up.

Did you see Lydia? She's really beautiful when she's all made-up.

7. make up (with) p.v. When two people make up or make up with each other, they end an argument and resume friendly relations.

Sally and Jim had a big fight, but they made up the next day. Mr. Baker said he won't make up with his wife until she apologizes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stay out</td>
<td>stay out &amp; stays out</td>
<td>staying out</td>
<td>stayed out</td>
<td>stayed out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. stay out p.v. When you stay out, you do not return to your house.

Do you let your kids stay out past 7:00?

I stayed out late last night, and I'm really exhausted.

2. stay out (of) p.v. When you stay out of a place, you do not go inside it.

Your father's busy cooking dinner, so stay out of the kitchen.

You can't come in here. Stay out!

3. stay out (of) p.v. When you stay out of a situation, such as an argument, fight, battle, or war, you do not get involved in it.

This fight doesn't involve you, so stay out.

Jake has stayed out of trouble since he left prison.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>watch out</th>
<th>watch out &amp; watches out</th>
<th>watching out</th>
<th>watched out</th>
<th>watched out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. watch out (for) p.v. When you watch out or watch out for something, you remain alert for someone or something that is dangerous or important. When you tell people to watch out or watch out for something, you are warning them of possible danger. Watch out is the same as look out.

Watch out when you're crossing a busy street.

Karen said she would meet us here at 12:00, so watch out for her.

Watch out! There's a snake in the grass.

I dropped a glass in the kitchen, so watch out for broken glass.

EXERCISE 23a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Are you telling me the truth, or did you ________ that ________?
2. You're going to a dangerous area. ________ for muggers.
3. I have to ________ on salt in my diet because of my high blood pressure.
4. We had to ________ two trees to make room for the new swimming pool.
5. ________ ________ of the water — someone saw a shark.
6. The soldiers in the fort couldn’t ________ ________ against such a huge and powerful army.
7. The United States is ________ ________ of people from many different races and cultures.
8. It was too hard to work and go to school at the same time, so Todd had to ________ ________ of college.
9. Carmen can pay only half of the money she owes me, but Luis promised to ________ ________ the difference.
10. A group of concerned citizens is demanding that the police ________ ________ on prostitution in their neighborhood.
11. The bank robbers ________ ________ in a white sedan with Florida license plates.
12. When the President walks past you, ________ your hand ________ and maybe he’ll shake it.
13. I really need a vacation. I haven’t ________ ________ in three years.
14. I told my son that if he can’t ________ ________ of trouble, I’m going to send him to military school.
15. The airline pilots are ________ ________ for a 15 percent raise, and they will not accept anything less.
16. The store’s closing in five minutes, so you need to ________ ________ your mind about which pair of shoes you want.
17. After fourteen years he thought he had ________ ________ with the murder, but he was wrong.
18. All Joe does is complain and criticize. I need to ________ ________ from him.
19. Mike didn’t come home until 4:30 in the morning, and his father was furious that he ________ ________ so late.
20. He thinks he’s so smart. I hope someone ________ ________ him ________ to size someday.
21. Be careful about how much you spend — this money has to ________ ________ until payday.
22. Bob and Marsha had a big argument, but they _______ _______ with each other and now everything is okay.

23. The professor warned the students that if they missed the final examination, they could not _______ _______.

EXERCISE 23b — Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.

1. The principal is going to crack down _______ smoking in the bathroom.
2. If you want to lose weight, cut down _______ cake and cookies.
3. He dropped out _______ college before graduation.
4. After Jake robbed the liquor store, he was arrested and sent to jail. He didn't get away _______ robbing the liquor store.
5. The French workers are holding out _______ a 100 percent raise and a two-day workweek.
6. There are a lot of rattlesnakes around here, so watch out _______ them.
7. Timmy's mother told him to stay out _______ the cookie jar.

EXERCISE 23c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The union members are on strike, and some will not go back to work unless they get the 10 percent raise they demanded in the beginning. What are the union members doing?
2. Some union members accepted a 7 percent raise and went back to work, but not the union members in Question 1. What would you call the union members in Question 1?
3. Jim and his sister had a big fight, but they apologized to each other, and now everything is okay. What did Jim and his sister do?
4. Jake stopped going to high school before he graduated. What did Jake do?
5. In Question 4, what is Jake?
6. You considered buying either a Toyota or a Nissan, and then you made your decision. What did you do?
7. My elbow is very sore, so my doctor told me to play less tennis. What did my doctor tell me?
8. Most of the Democrats will vote in favor of the new law, but a few are resisting pressure to vote yes. What are the Democrats who don't want to vote yes doing?

9. In Question 8, what are the Democrats who don't want to vote yes?

10. Mr. and Mrs. Ortega went to a party and didn't come home until 3:00 a.m. What did they do?

11. The explorer's supply of food and water has to last for three months. What does the explorer's supply of food and water have to do for three months?

12. Erik invented a funny story for his daughter. What did Erik do?

13. In Question 12, Erik's funny story wasn't true. How would you describe it?

14. Mr. Flores cheats on his taxes, but so far he hasn't been caught. What has Mr. Flores done so far?

15. There are a log of big trucks on the road, so when you drive, you have to be careful. What do you have to do when you drive?

16. The police are going to start working harder to prevent crime. What are the police going to do?

17. In Question 16, what can you call the plan to work harder to prevent crime?

EXERCISE 23d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

aim at, 19
believe in, 16
break through, 18
burn up, 22
come over, 17
count up, 22
fall apart, 17
get through, 16
go for, 16
grow out of, 17
hold off, 16
put past, 16
stand around, 18
tell apart, 18
think about, 16
wipe up, 22

1. Do you want these baby clothes? My daughter has __________ _______ them.
2. It's always a good idea to __________ __________ installing a new software version until they get all the bugs out.
3. Get a paper towel and __________ the grape juice you spilled.
4. I'm not sure what I will do. I have to __________ it.
5. I have a lot of work to do, so I probably won't __________ until 4:00.
6. The twins look exactly like each other. How do you __________ them?  __________?
7. The walls of this fort are ten feet thick. No one could __________ the idea.
8. We finished our card game, and Sean __________ the points.
9. The new law is __________ reducing air pollution.
10. I need to fix this table. It's __________.
11. Rachel suggested moving to the suburbs, and her husband __________ the idea.
12. That guy's a lunatic. There's nothing I wouldn't __________ him.
13. We __________ the old wood in the fireplace.
14. My niece is thirteen years old, but she still __________ Santa Claus.
15. The sign in the store window said they open at 10:00, but we had to __________ until 10:20 before they opened the doors.
16. Would you like to __________ to my house tonight and have dinner?

24. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used as nouns, 2
As we saw in Section 5, two-word phrasal verbs are sometimes accented on the verb and sometimes on the particle. Two-word nouns, however, are always accented on the verb even if it is the particle of the two-word verb that is accented:

verb: SHOW off noun: SHOW-off verb: slow
DOWN noun: SLOWdown

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come down</td>
<td>coming down</td>
<td>came down</td>
<td>come down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. come down (to) p.v. When someone moves toward you to a lower level position, or from north to south, that person comes down or comes down to where you are. Come up is the opposite of come down.
It's been raining for an hour! It's really **coming down**.

My friend from Canada **comes down** to visit us in New Mexico once in a while.

2. **come down** p.v. When you move to a lower level socially or financially and receive less respect from other people because of this change, you **come down** in life.

   Hank certainly has **come down** in life — he lost his job, house, and family because of his gambling problem.

   Mark used to be so successful, but now he has so many problems. He has really **come down** in life.

**comedown** n. A **comedown** is a move to a lower level socially or financially that causes you to receive less respect from other people.

   A few years ago he was the manager of this restaurant, but now he's only a waiter — what a **comedown**.

3. **come down** (to) p.v. When you lower the price you are asking for something, you **come down** or **come down** to a lower price.

   / won't buy her car unless she **comes down** to $12,000.

   The union won't **come down** a nickel in its salary demands.

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>let up</strong></td>
<td>let up &amp; lets up</td>
<td>letting up</td>
<td>let up</td>
<td>let up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **let up** (on) p.v. When something becomes less strong, less intense, or less severe, it **lets up**.

   The rain finally **let up** yesterday.

   Mike’s parents are very strict with him. He’s only a boy. They should **let up** on him.

**letup** n. A **letup** is a reduction in how strong, severe, or intense something is.

   There was no **letup** in terrorist bombings after the peace treaty was signed.

**print out**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>print out &amp; prints out</th>
<th>printing out</th>
<th>printed out</th>
<th>printed out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **print** ...**out** p.v. When you make a computer write something on paper, you **print** it **out**.

   After I finished writing my letter, I **printed it out** and signed it.

   I **can’t print this out** — my printer is broken.

**printout** n. When you make a computer write something on paper, the paper is a **printout**.

   / put the **printout** of the October sales report on the sales manager’s desk.

**shake up**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>shake up &amp; shakes up</th>
<th>shaking up</th>
<th>shock up</th>
<th>shaken up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **shake... up** p.v. When something upsets, shocks, or frightens you badly, it **shakes you up**.

181
Seeing all those dead bodies sure shook me up.
I was really shaken up when I learned that my uncle had been killed.

shaken up  part.adj.  When something upsets, shocks, or frightens you badly, you are shaken up.

Leave Frank alone. He just got some bad news, and he's a bit shaken up about it.

2. shake ... up  p.v.  When you mix something by shaking it, you shake it up.
You have to shake up Italian dressing before you open the bottle.
Did you shake this can of paint up?

3. shake... up  p.v.  When you make major changes in an organization or business, you shake it up.
The new CEO shook up management at my company, and a lot of people lost their jobs or were transferred.
People are getting a little lazy around here. It's time to shake things up.

shake-up  n.  A major change in an organization or business is a shake-up.
There was a big shake-up at my company, and a lot of people lost their jobs or were transferred.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>show off</td>
<td>show off &amp; shows off</td>
<td>showing off</td>
<td>showed off</td>
<td>shown off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. show... off  p.v.  When you show off, you let people see something you have or something you can do in a very obvious and excessive way.
Sally's boyfriend gave her a huge diamond engagement ring, and she showed it off to all her friends. The boy was showing off by riding his bicycle with no hands when he fell and hurt himself.

show-off  n.  Someone who shows off is a show-off.
Did you hear Alfonso speaking French at the party so everyone could hear?
What a show-off!

slow down  slow down & slows down  slowing down  slowed down  slowed down

1. slow... down  p.v.  When something causes people or things to do something more slowly, it slows them down.
I was driving pretty fast, but I slowed down after I saw the police car. Production at the factory slowed down when half the workers got sick.

slowdown  n.  When people or things do something more slowly, a slowdown occurs.
The snow caused a big slowdown on the highway this morning.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stop over</td>
<td>stop over &amp; stops over</td>
<td>stopping over</td>
<td>stopped over</td>
<td>stopped over</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **stop over** p.v. When you interrupt a journey (usually an airplane journey) for a short stay somewhere, you **stop over**.
   - David **stopped over** in London on his flight from New York to Moscow.
   - Stopping over in Dubai on the way to Bangkok wasn’t any fun — we couldn’t even leave the airport.

2. **stop over** p.v. When you visit someone for a short time, you **stop over**.
   - Would you like to **stop over** after dinner and see our vacation pictures?
   - Can you vacuum the living room, please? The Youngs are **stopping over** tonight, and I want the place to look nice.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>trade in</th>
<th>trade in &amp; trades in</th>
<th>trading in</th>
<th>traded in</th>
<th>traded in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **trade in** p.v. When you give an old car or other piece of expensive equipment to someone you are buying a new car or piece of equipment from in order to get a lower price, you **trade in** the old car or piece of equipment.
   - After the twins were born, Raul **traded in** his pickup truck for a station wagon.
   - We’ll get a good price on our new photocopier if we **trade in** our old one.

2. **trade in** n. An old car or piece of equipment that you **trade in** for a newer one is a **trade-in**.
   - Most of the used cars sold by dealers are **trade-ins**.

**EXERCISE 24a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. You’re driving too fast. Please ___________.
2. ___________ that bottle of salad dressing before you open it.
3. The real estate agent says he thinks the sellers will ___________ a little in their asking price.
4. My new car cost $24,000, but I ___________ my old car ___________ for $15,000.
5. Jim is upstairs. Ask him to ___________ here for a minute, okay?
6. ___________ in London for a few days on your way to India is a good way to get over jet lag.
7. I was pretty ________ by the news, but now I'm okay.
8. Luis ________ his new car ________ to his friends yesterday.
9. The bombing continued for four days before it finally ________.
10. Leticia used to be rich, but she lost all her money gambling, and now she can't even pay her bills. She's really ________ in life.
11. When you finish writing that story, ________ it ________ and give it to me. I want to read it.
12. This company was losing money until the new owners came in and ________ things ________.
13. I have to clean the house because Pat and Mike might ________ ________ tonight.

EXERCISE 24b — Complete the sentences with nouns from this section.

1. I worked for my company for thirty-one years before I got fired in the big ________.
2. I had a four-hour ________ in Los Angeles on my way to Hawaii.
3. Nicole used to have her own company, and now she's driving a taxi. That's quite a ________.
4. The wind blew all night without any ________.
5. New car dealers usually have a lot of ________ for sale at low prices.
6. The snow caused a big ________ on the interstate this morning.
7. After the computer finished with the data, I took the ________ upstairs to the sales department.
8. He's lost a lot of weight, and now he wears really tight pants everyday. What a ________ he is.

EXERCISE 24c — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The rain slowed down. (traffic/it)
   __________________________________________________________
   __________________________________________________________
   __________________________________________________________

2. He printed out. (his letter, it)
   __________________________________________________________
   __________________________________________________________
   __________________________________________________________

3. The bad news has shaken up. (Jim and Nancy, them)
   __________________________________________________________
   __________________________________________________________
   __________________________________________________________

4. I got $5,000 for trading in. (my old car, it)
   __________________________________________________________
   __________________________________________________________
   __________________________________________________________

5. Chelsea's parents showed off. (her perfect report card, it)
   __________________________________________________________
   __________________________________________________________
   __________________________________________________________
EXERCISE 24d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. After the computer finished the calculations, I printed the answers on a piece of paper. What did I do?

2. In Question 1, what would you call the paper with the answers?

3. Todd's friend in Minnesota is going to visit Todd in New Orleans. What is Todd's friend going to do?

4. Ned walks around without a shirt so the girls can see his muscles. What does Ned do?

5. In Question 4, what is Ned?

185
6. When I buy my new car, I'll give the dealer my old car so that I can get a lower price on the new car. What will I do with my old car?

7. In Question 6, what would you call my old car?

8. The new boss fired a lot of employees, hired new employees, and made a lot of changes. What did the new boss do?

9. In Question 8, what would you call what the new boss did?

10. Sandra used to be married to a prince, but now she's divorced and broke. What has Sandra done?

11. In Question 10, what would you call what happened to Sandra?

12. It rained for two weeks straight before it stopped. What did the rain do?

13. In Question 12, what would you call what the rain did?

14. There was a big accident on the highway yesterday morning, and traffic was awful. What did the accident do to the traffic?

15. In Question 14, what would you call the traffic situation?

16. You flew from Denver to Miami, but you had to spend a few hours in Atlanta on the way. What did you do in Atlanta?

17. In Question 16, what would you call my visit to Atlanta?

18. Mike saw a terrible accident this morning while he was driving, and it upset him a lot. What did the accident do to Mike?

19. In Question 18, how would you describe Mike after he saw the accident?

EXERCISE 24e. Review — Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

backup, 11 drop-off, 11 follow-up, 11 tryout, 11 crackdown, 23
dropout, 23 lineup, 18 workout, 11

1. The doctor said I was cured, but he wants me to see him in a year for a __________.
2. Drugs are getting to be a big problem in my son's school. I think it's time for a ________.
3. When I was nineteen, I was a __________ with no future, but then I got smart and finished school.
4. After the accident, the human cannonball was dropped from the circus __________.
5. The ________ for the basketball team will be next Saturday at 10:00 A.M.
6. Janice just got back from the gym, and she's really exhausted from her ________.
7. I use the program on the hard disk, but I have a __________ on a floppy.
8. Business at the restaurant used to be good, but there was a big __________ after that case of food poisoning.

EXERCISE 24f, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

bring over, 19  go beyond, 18  look around, 21  tell on, 15
cool off, 19  hang up, 9  settle down, 21  watch out, 23
count up, 22  hold out, 23  stay out, 23  wipe up, 22
figure on, 18  lift up, 19  step on, 21

1. Young man, if you don't ______________ of trouble at school, I'm going to send you to military school!
2. These suitcases are so heavy I can barely __________ them __________.
3. A good history book doesn't simply tell you what happened, it __________ ________ that and tells you why.
4. Todd got in trouble with his mother after he broke a window and his sister __________ __________ him.
5. If you're going to that bad neighborhood late at night, please be careful and __________ ________ for muggers.
6. That museum is huge. If you want to see everything, you should __________ ________ spending the entire day there.
7. This coffee's way too hot. Can you get me an ice cube so I can ________ it ________?
8. That company wants to hire me, but I'm ________ ________ for more money.

9. My brother is going to visit tonight, and he's ________ his fiancee ________.

10. I've never been to this store before; I want to ________ and see what they have.

11. My husband was very angry when our thirteen-year-old daughter came home at 4:00 in the morning, so I told him to ________ ________ and let me talk to her.

12. We had only twenty minutes to get to the airport, so we told the taxi driver to ________ ________.

13. After the votes were ________, Senator Dolittle was declared the winner.

14. Timmy, get a paper towel and ________ ________ this juice you spilled on the floor.

15. Leticia said good-bye and ________ ________ the telephone.

---

25. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and have to, have got to, and must

Have to, have got to, and must have two important uses in English. One is familiar to most students, the other is not.

But before discussing that, let's pay special attention to have got to. Have to and have got to mean exactly the same thing. Both are commonly used, and both are acceptable standard English. Have to derives from have, and have got to derives from have got. So why the got in have got to? A good question. Got in have got to means nothing and serves no purpose whatever. Have got to is a unique, idiomatic variation of have to. There is no point in trying to understand the grammar of have got to because there isn't any. Like other idioms, it must simply be memorized. Though have to and have got to mean the same thing, their forms are different, especially in questions and negative sentences. In the examples below, the contracted forms are the most common in everyday spoken English:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>statement</th>
<th>question</th>
<th>negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You have to</td>
<td>You have to</td>
<td>You do not have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have come down</td>
<td>have come down</td>
<td>have come down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have got to</td>
<td>You've got to</td>
<td>You have not got to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have got come down</td>
<td>have got come down</td>
<td>have got come down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you got</td>
<td>Have you got</td>
<td>You don't have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to come down</td>
<td>to come down</td>
<td>have come down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You haven't got</td>
<td>You haven't got</td>
<td>You haven't got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to come down</td>
<td>to come down</td>
<td>to come down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Requirement

Have to, have got to, and must are both used to say that something is required, necessary, mandatory — there is no choice in the matter:
You have to make up the test.
You've got to make up the test.
You must make up the test.

Although most students learn this use of must early in their studies, it is actually the least common way to use must. Both have to and have got to are much more commonly used for this purpose.

**Near certainty**
The other important use of have to, have got to, and must is to say that something is 99 percent certain — that based on the facts and based on what we see and know, no other conclusion is possible about something. We are 99 percent certain, and all we need is confirmation to be 100 percent certain:

Janice, you have been working for 12 hours without a break. You have to be tired. (A logical assumption, but until Janice confirms that she is tired, the speaker cannot be 100 percent certain.)

I would never take that book out of this room. It's got to be here somewhere. (A logical assumption, but until the speaker finds the book, he cannot be 100 percent certain that it is in the room.) That man is from Japan. I've never spoken with him, but he must speak Japanese. (A logical assumption, but until the speaker hears the man speaking Japanese, he cannot be 100 percent certain.)

When have to, have got to, and must are used in this way, it is must that is more common than the others. Have to and have got to, when used for this purpose, have greater emphasis and are used for dramatic effect:

Mark has to be the biggest idiot in the entire world.
Where is Lydia? She's got to be here somewhere.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do with</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. do with p.v. [used only in the infinitive form] When you say that one thing has something to do with another, you mean there is a connection between the two.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Don't blame me for what happened; I had nothing to do with it.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm not sure what this part does, but I think it must have something to do with the transmission.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have on</td>
<td>have on &amp; has on</td>
<td>having on</td>
<td>had on</td>
<td>had on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. have... on p.v. When you wear something, such as an item of clothing, perfume, or cosmetics, you have it on.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sally had red pants and a blue shirt on.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I didn't have a raincoat on, and I got all wet.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. **have** on p.v. When you have an electrical device on, you are using it.

   Last summer was so cool that we had the air conditioner on only two or three times.

   What's that sound? Dan must have the radio on.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hurry up</td>
<td>hurry up &amp; hurries up</td>
<td>hurrying up</td>
<td>hurried up</td>
<td>hurried up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **hurry up** p.v. When you hurry up, you do something quickly.

   Nicole has to hurry up if she's going to finish her work before 5:00.

   If we don't hurry up, we're going to miss the beginning of the movie.

2. **hurry... up** p.v. When you hurry something up, you do it more quickly. When you hurry people up, you urge them to do something more quickly. When you say "Hurry up," to people, you are telling them to do something more quickly.

   Everyone was really hungry, so I asked our cook to hurry dinner up.

   There were only five minutes left to finish the test, so the teacher hurried the students up. Hurry up! I'm not going to wait for you all day.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>knock over</th>
<th>knock over &amp; knocks over</th>
<th>knocking over</th>
<th>knocked over</th>
<th>knocked over</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **knock... over** p.v. When you knock people or things over, you use force to make them fall to a horizontal position.

   The force of the explosion knocked me over.

   The children were playing, and they knocked the lamp over.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lighten up</th>
<th>lighten up &amp; lights up</th>
<th>lightening up</th>
<th>lightened up</th>
<th>lightened up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **lighten up** (on) p.v. [informal] When you lighten up or lighten on people, you become less harsh or less strict in your treatment of them.

   You're awfully hard on your daughter. Maybe you ought to lighten up on her.

   You've been criticizing me all day. Will you please lighten up?

2. **lighten... up** p.v. When you lighten up, you change the subject of conversation from something serious to something more cheerful and pleasant.

   Enough talk about business. Let's lighten things up around here. Lighten it up — you've been talking about death and taxes all night.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>plan ahead</th>
<th>plan ahead &amp; plans ahead</th>
<th>planning ahead</th>
<th>planned ahead</th>
<th>planned ahead</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **plan ahead** p.v. When you plan ahead, you plan for a future situation or activity so that you will not have a problem then. Plan ahead is similar to think ahead.

   Janice is a good manager. She always plans ahead in case there's a problem.
Plan ahead — you don’t want any problems when you’re 200 miles from the nearest town.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>settle for</td>
<td>settle for &amp; settles for</td>
<td>settling for</td>
<td>settled for</td>
<td>settled for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. settle for p.v. When you settle for something, you accept it even though it may not be exactly what you want or need.
   - The strikers wanted an 8 percent pay increase, but they settled for 5 percent.
   - Dr. Smith has very high standards. He won’t settle for second best.

think up

1. think... up p.v. When you think up something, such as an idea, solution, or plan, you use your imagination to create it.
   - I have to think up a way to solve this problem.
   - Maria thought up a great way to make some extra money.
   - Stop worrying — I’ll think something up.

EXERCISE 25a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. We’re going to be late if you don’t ________ ________.
2. I told the store manager that I wanted a full refund and that I wouldn’t ________; ________ anything else.
3. Mr. Wolfe ________ a white suit ________ last night.
4. Joe’s been angry all day. I wish he’d ________ ________.
5. The truck hit the light pole and ________ it ________.
6. You have to talk to someone in the shipping department about your missing order. I have nothing to ________ shipping.
7. If you’re going on an important business trip, you should ________ ________ so I that you don’t forget something you’ll need later.
8. Jake is trying to ________ ________ a way to make money without working.
9. Go upstairs and ________ your sister ________ I’m afraid she’s going to be late for school.
10. We’ve been talking politics all night. Let’s ________ things ________, okay?
11. I like to ________ the radio ________ when I go to bed.
EXERCISE 25b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Charles wore a red shirt yesterday. What did Charles do?
2. Sean wants a 15 percent raise, and he won’t accept less. What won’t Sean do?
3. Dr. Wood is thinking about the important meeting she will go to next week so that she will be ready. What is Dr. Wood doing?
4. Jake hit Jerry so hard that Jerry fell to the floor. What did Jake do to Jerry?
5. Ned told Todd to work more quickly. What did Ned tell Todd to do?
6. I got a letter about my income taxes. What was the letter about?
7. Sergeant Jones has been yelling at the soldiers all day. What should Sergeant Jones do?
8. Betty needs a Halloween costume, and she’s using her imagination to create one. What is Betty doing?

EXERCISE 25c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

1. ______________________________________________________
2. ______________________________________________________
3. _____________________________________________________
4. _____________________________________________________
5. _____________________________________________________
6. _____________________________________________________
7. _____________________________________________________
8. _____________________________________________________

EXERCISE 25d, Review — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

burned up, 22    lined up, 18    ripped up, 17    zipped up, 21
 cleared up, 22    made-up, 23    shaken up, 24
 dried out, 15    paid up, 22     warmed up, 19
 heated up, 22    plugged up, 22   worn down, 17
1. It's freezing outside — make sure your coat is __________.  
2. Don't start driving yet; the car's not ______________.  
3. We talked about the problem, and now everything is __________.  
4. I need lotion; my skin is really _______________.  
5. Hank is such a liar. Don't believe any of his __________ excuses.  
6. After I give Bill ten bucks, I won't owe him another penny. I'll be totally __________.  
7. Pat was pretty __________ after the accident.  
8. Bill was furious at his ex-wife, and now all his photos of her are ______________ and in the garbage.  
9. People are __________ for three blocks to buy World Series tickets.  
10. Don't drink that coffee — it's not ______________.  
11. I can't smell or taste anything; my nose is all _______________.  
12. I was really __________ after he took my calculator without asking me and then lost it.  
13. The heels of my old cowboy boots are ______________. I need to get them fixed.

EXERCISE 25e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure to use the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the lesson number given after each one.

- call in, 5
- hand out, 10
- screw on, 12
- stop over, 24
- clear up, 22
- hook up, 9
- show off, 24
- trade in, 24
- come down, 24
- let up, 24
- slow down, 24
- warm up, 19
- go back, 19
- print out, 24
- stick up, 14

1. The car dealer is asking $27,000 for the car I want, but I think he might __________ $24,000.  
2. While you go to the library, I'll go to the grocery store, and we'll __________ at the corner in one hour.  
3. Be sure you __________ the top of that mustard jar __________ tightly.  
4. Erik checks the time every five minutes so that he can __________ his new Rolex watch.
5. Mike wasn't at work today. He __________ sick.
6. When Bill flies to Los Angeles, he always __________ in Bangkok.
7. The car dealer said he'll give me a good deal if I __________ my old car.
8. We __________ the notices all over town. __________ a lot of confusion about the new vacation policy.
9. The memo from the personnel office __________ a lot of confusion about the new vacation policy.
10. This weather is terrible. I wonder if this storm is ever going to __________ __________.
11. Turn the heater on, and the room will __________ right __________.
12. "Nancy was driving too fast, so I told her to __________ __________.
13. The teacher won't __________ the tests until the students are quiet.
14. After you finish writing your report, __________ it __________ and give it to me.
15. Paul's from Colombia, but he hasn't __________ there for seven years.

26. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and the adverb back

The adverb back is sometimes used with phrasal verbs to mean again. The following sentences have the same meaning:

We got together again. We got back together.

Back is always placed directly before the particle. When back is used with separable phrasal verbs, the object must separate the verb and particle, and back must be placed between the object and the particle:

I put the engine back together. I put back together the engine.

Do not confuse the adverb back, which modifies phrasal verbs, with the particle back that is part of some phrasal verbs (and has the same meaning of again).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get together</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get together &amp; gets</td>
<td>getting</td>
<td>got together</td>
<td>gotten/got together</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

get together (with) p.v. When two people get together, they meet and spend time together.
When you get together with someone, you meet and spend time with
that person. When a man and woman resume a relationship after separating, they get back together.

If you're not busy tomorrow night, would you like to get together?
We're going to get together with Bill and Nancy tomorrow.
Judy and Sam had separated, but now they've gotten back together.

**get-together** n. An informal gathering is a get-together.

If you're not busy tomorrow night, would you like to get together?
We're going to get together with Bill and Nancy tomorrow.
Judy and Sam had separated, but now they've gotten back together.

get-together n. An informal gathering is a get-together.

I'm having a little get-together tonight. Would you like to come?

2. **get... together** p.v. When you get things together, you collect them so they are in the same place.

You should get all your tools together so you will have them when you need them.
Linda got all her tax records together to show to her accountant.

3. **get... together** p.v. (informal) When you get yourself together, or get it together, you gain control of your emotions after you have become upset or emotional.

Hey, get yourself together! Everyone is watching you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go over</td>
<td>go over &amp; goes over</td>
<td>going over</td>
<td>went over</td>
<td>gone over</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **go over** (to) p.v. When people move from where you are to a place, thing, or person that is farther away from you, they go over or go over to that place, thing, or person.

I'm busy. Go over there and stop bothering me.
I was hot, so Maria went over to the window and opened it.

2. **go over** (to) p.v. When you go to someone's house for a visit, you go over or go over to that person's house.

Have you gone over to Nicole's house to see her new baby yet?
I went over to Erik's for dinner last night.

3. **go over** p.v. When you carefully read or review important written material, you go over it.

Here's a magazine article I just finished writing. Go over it and tell me what you think.
The actor went over his lines before the audition.

going-over n. When you examine or inspect something carefully, you give it a going-over.

1. I gave his report a good going-over and found a lot of mistakes.

4. **go over** p.v. When you carefully explain something, usually something that is complicated but important, you go over it.
Before the trial Hank and his lawyer went over what Hank was going to say. No one understood the manager's plan after he explained it, so he went back over it.

5. go over p.v. When an idea, suggestion, or performance is accepted and liked by other people, it goes over.
   Senator Dotitle's plan to raise taxes didn't go over with the voters.
   The singer's performance went over well with the critics.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go up</td>
<td>go up &amp; goes up</td>
<td>going up</td>
<td>went up</td>
<td>gone up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. go up (to) p.v. When you move to a higher level or position, or from south to north, you go up or go up to that place. Go down is the opposite of go up.
   Suzie came down from her tree house to eat lunch, but she went back up after she finished.
   I spend the winters in Mexico, and go up to my home in Ohio in the summer.

2. go up (to) p.v. When the cost, rate, quality, quantity, or level of something increases, it goes up. Go down is the opposite of go up.
   The price of gas hasn't gone up in two years.
   In the summer the temperature in Saudi Arabia can go up to 125 degrees.

3. go up (to) p.v. When a schedule or plan ends at a certain time or date, the schedule or plan goes up to that time or date.
   Do you have the new schedule? This one goes up only to the end of April.
   The teacher gave the students a syllabus that went up to the midterm.

4. go up (to) p.v. When something extends to a certain point that is farther north or at a higher elevation, it goes up to that point. Go down is the opposite of go up.
   This trail went up to the base camp at the foot of the mountain.
   Interstate 5 goes up to Seattle.

5. go up (to) p.v. When you approach a person, you go up to that person.
   There's Sarah, Go up and introduce yourself.
   Janice isn't shy — she went right up to the president of the company and asked for a raise.

1. let... in on p.v. When you tell people information that is secret or not widely known, you let that person in on the information.
   General Chambers let me in on the top secret information.
   I'm going to let you in on something not many people know about me.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>open up</strong></td>
<td>open up &amp; opens up</td>
<td>opening up</td>
<td>opened up</td>
<td>opened up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **open ... up** p.v. When you open something up, you reveal what is inside so that people can see it.
   - Sofia opened the box up and looked inside.
   - Mike’s going to open up his computer to try to find the problem.

2. **open ... up** p.v. When you open a room or building up, you unlock or open the doors so that people can enter.
   - The office closes at 12:00 for lunch and opens back up at 1:00.
   - The manager was late and didn’t open up the store until 10:30.

3. **open ... up** p.v. When a new business starts, it opens up or is opened up by someone.
   - / was driving through town, and I noticed that a new book store has opened up on Maple Street.
   - Jimmy wants to open up a restaurant near the new office building.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>put together</strong></td>
<td>put together &amp; puts together</td>
<td>putting together</td>
<td>put together</td>
<td>put together</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **put ... together** p.v. When you assemble the parts of something, you put it together. **Put together** is the opposite of take apart.
   - Sally got a bicycle for her birthday, and her father put it together after dinner.
   - It was easy taking my car’s engine apart, but putting it back together was a lot harder.

2. **put ... together** p.v. When you organize some ideas, plans, or suggestions in order to show them to someone or discuss them with someone, you put them together.
   - Mr. and Mrs. Flores want to redecorate their house, so they asked an interior designer to put some ideas together.
   - I have an interesting idea for a new business, and I’m putting together a proposal.

3. **put ... together** p.v. When you position people or things so that they are close to each other or touching, you put them together.
   - The teacher told Timmy and Mike to put their desks together so they could work on their project.
   - When you plan your dinner party seating arrangement, put Heather and Jimmy together.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>shut off</strong></td>
<td>shut off &amp; shuts off</td>
<td>shutting off</td>
<td>shut off</td>
<td>shut off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **shut ... off** p.v. When you shut off an electrical or mechanical device, you cut the power going to it so that it stops operating. **Turn off** and **switch off** are similar to **shut off**.
Timmy’s mother told him to shut off the TV and go to bed.
I’m freezing. Would you mind shutting the air conditioner off?

**shut off** part.adj. After you shut off an electrical or mechanical device, it is shut off. Turned off and switched off are similar to shut off.

Well, no wonder it’s so cold in here — the heat’s shut off.

**shutoff** n. When you shut off something, or when something shuts off, this action is a shutoff. When you shut off something, you use the shutoff switch, button, valve, and so on.

The electricity shutoff lasted twenty minutes.

In case of emergency, turn this shutoff valve here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>start up</th>
<th>start up &amp; starts up</th>
<th>starting up</th>
<th>started up</th>
<th>started up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **start ... up** p.v. When an electrical or mechanical device starts up or someone starts it up, it begins to operate.

   My car’s engine died at a red light, and it wouldn’t start up again.

   You push this button here to start the computer up.

   **start-up** n. When you start up something, or something starts up, this action is a start-up. When you start up something, you use the start-up switch, button, and so on.

   To start the computer up, push this start-up button.

   If your computer’s hard disk crashes, you can use a floppy as the start-up disk.

2. **start... up** p.v. When you start up a new business or company, you take the steps necessary to begin a new business or company.

   You should have a detailed business plan before starting a business up.

   Jane borrowed the money she needed to start up her business from her uncle.

   **start-up** n. A start-up or start-up business or company is a new business or company.

   Most start-up businesses aren’t successful.

**EXERCISE 26a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Your important papers are all over the house. You should _______ them _______ and keep them in a safe place.
2. It was so cold this morning that it took half an hour to _______ my car _______.
3. This is awfully complicated. Could you _______ it one more time?
4. The police ordered the people in the house to _______ the door _______.

198
5. The sergeant ________ the hill to look for the enemy soldiers.
6. The account executive was asked to ________ some ideas ________ for a new advertising campaign.
7. I'm trying to sleep. Would you please ________ the lights? ________
8. Linda saw her favorite movie star, but she was too shy to ________ him and ask for his autograph.
9. I'll ________ you ________ a little secret.
10. I'm going to ________ to Todd's house to help him with his math homework.
11. This calendar is useless—______ only to August.
12. Thank you for your application. I will ________ it carefully and call you in a few days.
13. This jigsaw puzzle has 1,000 pieces. It'll take forever to ________ it ________.
14. If that big discount store ________ outside of town, all these little shops will go out of business.
15. The level of water in the river always falls during the summer but ________ back ________ the next spring.
16. Sam's idea of giving all the workers a 10 percent pay raise didn't ________ well with management.
17. I know you're upset, but you have to ________ yourself ________.
18. On Saturday nights Mike usually ________ with some friends and plays poker.
19. As soon as we arrived at the party, David ________ to the buffet table and grabbed a plate.
20. Without the combination, there's no way to ________ this safe ________.
21. ________ all your Spanish books ________ on the same shelf.
22. This road ________ to the next town, but that's where it ends.
23. I'll need around $25,000 to ________ ________ my new business.
EXERCISE 26b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. I wish they would open up near me. (a branch office, one)

________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________

2. Lydia put together. (the food processor, it)

________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________

3. Do you know how to shut off? (the photocopier, it)

________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________

4. Push this button to start up. (the generator, it)

________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________

EXERCISE 26c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Frank read my report carefully. What did Frank do to my report?

2. In Question 1, what did Frank give my report?

3. Judy walked toward the king, stopped next to him, and gave him the petition. What did Judy do to the king?

4. Mike told me a secret. What did Mike do?

5. Bill and some friends are going to meet and spend some time together. What are Bill and his friends going to do?
6. In Question 5, what is this activity called?
7. My computer begins to operate from the hard disk. What does my computer do from the hard disk?
8. In Question 7, what would you call the hard disk?
9. The mayor's plan to fight crime in the streets was very successful with the voters. What impression did the mayor's plan have on the voters?
10. The heater stops operating automatically when the temperature reaches a certain point. What does the heater do automatically?
11. In Question 10, what is the temperature that makes the heater stop operating called?
12. You quit your job so that you could begin your own company. Why did you quit your job?
13. In Question 12, what would you call your new company?
14. You assembled all the parts of your model airplane. What did you do to your model airplane?
15. This airplane schedule gives flight times until December 31. What does the airplane schedule do?
16. The supermarket unlocks its doors and lets people in at 7:00 A.M. every day. What does the supermarket do at 7:00 A.M. every day?

**EXERCISE 26d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

do with, 25 have on, 25 look over, 21 settle for, 25
end up, 20 hurry up, 25 pick on, 21 show off, 24
go off, 20 knock over, 25 plan ahead, 25 take out on, 21
go on, 20 lighten up, 25 put on, 1 think up, 25

1. I'm asking $10,000 for my car, but I'll __________ $8,500.
2. That new manager is really hard on the employees. He ought to __________
3. At the supermarket, Tom hit the stack of boxes with his shopping cart and __________ them __________.
4. We had planned to go to France on our vacation, but we ________ ________ going to Spain instead.

5. Will you ________ ________! If we don't leave soon we're going to be late.

6. Mark hates his job, and he comes home every night and ________ it ________ his family.

7. My doctor got the test results from the lab, and she ________ them ________ very carefully.

8. ________ your coat ________. It's cold outside.

9. Don't wait until the last minute to make your vacation airline reservations. You have to ________ ________.

10. The detective didn't believe that the gun had ________ ________ accidentally.

11. I hated my older brother when I was a kid. He always ________ ________ me.

12. How are we going to get $500 in two days? We need to ________ ________ a good plan.

13. I didn't understand everything the computer shop guy said, but it had something to ________ ________ memory.

14. Jim tries to answer every question the teacher asks. He's always ________ ________

15. That meeting was so boring. It seemed like it was going to ________ ________ forever.

16. The police officer must be off duty; he doesn't ________ ________ his uniform ________.

27. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the particle off and the adverb right

The particle off is used in many phrasal verbs to say that something is separated or removed:

The cup handle broke. (The handle is broken, but it is still attached to the cup.) The cup handle broke off. (The handle is no longer attached to the cup.)

Right, discussed in Section 19, is often used with these phrasal verbs to indicate that the action of the verb happened quickly:
He washed the dirt off. (The dirt was removed.) He washed the dirt right off. (The dirt was removed quickly.)

Remember that right can be used in this way only after an object that separates the verb and the particle:

He washed the dirt right off. It was washed right off the dirt.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bite off</td>
<td>bite off</td>
<td>biting off</td>
<td>bit off</td>
<td>bitten off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. bite... off p.v. When you bite off something, you use your teeth to remove a piece. When you bite off more than you can chew, you agree to do something that you do not have the time or the ability to do.

The lion bit off a huge piece of the zebra's flesh.

You can't finish that huge project by tomorrow. I think you've bitten off more than you can chew.

break off

| break off       | break off     | breaking off| broke off | broken off      |

1. break... off p.v. When something breaks off or someone breaks something off, a part or smaller piece is separated from something larger by force.

Jim broke off a piece of chocolate and gave it to his girlfriend.

One of the arms broke off the statue when it fell off the pedestal.

broken off part.adj. After something breaks off, it is broken off.

The handle of the coffee cup is broken off.

1. break... off p.v. When you break off relations or contact with someone, you decide to end relations or contact with that person.

The two countries broke off relations with each other.

I was so angry at my in-laws that I broke off all contact with them.

dry off

| dry off         | dry off       | drying off  | dried off | dried off       |

1. dry... off p.v. When something dries off or you dry something off, water or other liquids that are on it evaporate.

It rained for only a few minutes, so the streets dried off quickly.

Leave your wet clothes outside and let the sun dry them off.

dried off part.adj. After something has dried off, it is dried off.

They can't play baseball because the field isn't dried off.
Infinitive present tense -ing form past tense past participle

knock off knock off & knocks off knocking off knocked off knocked off

1. knock... off p.v. When you **knock** something off, you either accidentally or deliberately use force to make it fall from a place above the ground to the ground below.
   - Susie knocked a glass off the table and broke it.
   - The cat knocked the clock off the shelf.

   - I quit working at 5:00 last night, but Sean didn’t knock off until 8:30.
   - You’ve been working all day. Why don’t you knock off?

3. knock... off p.v. [informal] When you say “Knock it off” to people, you want them to stop doing something that is bothering you.
   - If you don’t knock it off, you’ll be sorry.
   - I’m tired of listening to you criticize me. Knock it off!

4. knock... off p.v. When you **knock** something off, you make something quickly and not very carefully.
   - The artist knocked off a quick sketch and gave it to the waiter.
   - Dan prefers writing novels, but he sometimes knocks off a magazine article to make a few bucks.

5. knock... off p.v. [informal] When you **knock** people off, you kill them.
   - Jake was sent to prison for knocking off his brother-in-law.
   - Mario was the head of a gang of criminals until he was knocked off by a rival.

    tear off tear off & tears off tearing off tore off torn off

1. tear... off p.v. When you use force to remove a piece of something that is flexible — paper, cloth, and so on — you **tear** it off.
   - I tore off a coupon for frozen pizza at the supermarket.
   - Alex always tears the tags off his shirt collars.

    wash off wash off & washes off washing off washed off washed off

1. wash ... off p.v. When you **wash** something off or wash the dirt off something, you use water and soap to remove dirt or unwanted items from a surface.
   - Mike washed off his car.
   - Mike washed the dirt off his car.
washed off part.adj. After you wash something off or wash the dirt off something, it is washed off.

The maid said she had washed the grease off the wall, but the wall didn’t look washed off to me.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wear off</td>
<td>wear off &amp; wears off</td>
<td>wearing off</td>
<td>wore off</td>
<td>worn off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. wear off p.v. When the surface of something is gradually removed by friction or exposure to the elements so that what is beneath the surface is exposed, the surface wears off.

You could see the wood where the paint had worn off.

The gold wears off this cheap jewelry right away.

worn off part.adj. After something has worn off, it is worn off.

These ancient temples used to be very colorful, but now all the paint is worn off.

2. wear off p.v. When the effects of drugs or alcohol gradually go away, they wear off.

The wounded soldier was in great pain after the morphine wore off.

He’s going to have a big headache after the vodka wears off.

3. wear off p.v. When an emotional feeling gradually goes away, it wears off.

After the shock of getting fired wore off, I started to get angry.

When I met Jim I fell in love immediately, but that wore off quickly as I got to know him better.

wipe off

1. wipe off p.v. When you completely remove a liquid from a surface by moving a towel or sponge across it with a sweeping motion, you wipe the surface off. You can either wipe off something that is wet or wipe off the liquid. Wipe up is similar to wipe off; however, you wipe up a liquid, but you wipe off the surface the liquid is on.

Wipe off your face.

Wipe the food off your face.

wiped off part.adj. After something has been wiped off, it is wiped off. That table doesn’t looked wiped off to me. Wipe it off again.

EXERCISE 27a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Raquel _______ a piece of paper _______ and wrote her phone number on it.
2. After I washed the windows, I _______ them _______ with some old newspapers.
3. Jerry has to finish a lot of work before he goes home, so he probably won’t ________ _______ until late.

4. It rained last night, so don’t play outside until the grass ________ ________.

5. Be careful when you feed horses. They can ________ _______ your finger right ________.

6. The doctor said the sedative would ________ _______ after four or five hours.

7. The shop owner was afraid to ________ _______ the gang graffiti ________ his wall.

8. After Jake ________ _______ Hank, he was charged with murder.

9. During the storm, a tree branch ________ _______ and fell on the roof.

10. You two kids have been arguing all day, _______ it _______ right now!

11. I can’t use this old typewriter anymore. The painted letters have ________ _______ the keys.

12. The two sides couldn’t agree on a solution, and the negotiations ________ _______.

13. I’ll try to ________ _______ a few more pages of my book before I go to bed.

14. It was a long time before the shock of his brother’s death ________ _______.

15. Don’t put your glass of wine so close to the edge of the table. Someone might ________ _______ it ________.

EXERCISE 27b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place. Use right with questions 2 and 6.

1. Alex has ________ _______. (the head of the gingerbread man, it)

2. The movers ________ _______. (the cup handle, it)
3. Please dry off. (the dishes, them)

4. Don’t knock off. (the ash tray, it)

5. Can I tear off? (these mattress tags, them)

6. The janitor washed off. (the blood, it)

7. She didn’t wipe off. (the milk, it)

EXERCISE 27c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Try to use right with some of the answers. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I used water to remove the mud from my car. What did I do to my car?

2. Timmy forcibly removed the propellers of my model airplane. What did Timmy do to my model airplane’s propellers?

3. In Question 2, how would you describe the model airplane’s propellers?
4. You put your arm in the water, and the shark removed it with its teeth immediately. What did the shark do to your arm?

5. You could see that the ring wasn’t solid gold because the brass under the gold was visible. What happened to the gold?

6. In Question 5, how would you describe the gold?

7. I accidentally hit the lamp with my arm, and it fell to the floor. What did I do to the lamp?

8. You used a paper towel to remove the glass cleaner from the mirror. What did you do to the mirror?

9. In Question 8, how would you describe the mirror after you removed the glass cleaner?

10. You have to remove the water from the table before you paint it. What do you have to do to the table before you paint it?

11. In Question 10, how would you describe the table after the water is removed?

12. You removed the gift wrapping paper from the gift. What did you do to the gift wrapping paper?

13. In Question 12, after using force to remove the gift wrapping paper, how would you describe the wrapping paper?

**EXERCISE 27d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

- clear up, 22
- go up, 26
- open up, 26
- shut off, 26
- come down, 24
- heat up, 22
- pay up, 22
- start up, 26
- eat up, 22
- let in on, 26
- plug up, 22
- think ahead, 21
- go over, 26
- let up, 24
- put together, 26
- trade in, 24

1. If I don’t come up with $230 by Friday, they’re going to __________ my electricity.

2. The guy from the collection agency demanded that Miguel __________ immediately.
3. It rained for forty days and forty nights before it ________ ________.
4. If you had __________, you would have everything you need now.
5. We had a lot of questions about our school project, but the teacher ________ them ________.

6. Mark said his audition didn't ____________ well, and he doesn't think he'll get the part.
7. Soldiers are trained to take their rifles apart and ________ them back ________.
8. I think $15,000 is a little high for that car. If you ________ ________ a little, I might be interested.
9. The police closed the illegal casino, but it ________ right back ________ a few days later.
10. No one at the party ate the carrot sticks, but they ________ the shrimp right ________.
11. I hate using the stove on really hot summer days; it ________ the whole house ________.
12. The minimum wage hasn't ________ ________ in more than three years.
13. The senator ________ her aides ________ ________ her plan to run for the presidency.
14. I doubt if I'll get much if I ________ this old car ________.
15. The engine ________ right ________ when I turned the key.
16. My daughter put one of her stuffed animals in the toilet and ________ it ________.
28. FOCUS ON: passive phrasal verbs, 2

When separable phrasal verbs are in the passive, they cannot be separated by the object of the verb because the object of the active verb is the subject of the passive sentence — there is no object:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jim called</td>
<td>Mike</td>
<td>back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mike</td>
<td>called</td>
<td>back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Infinitive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beef up</td>
<td>beef up &amp; beefs up</td>
<td>beefing up</td>
<td>beefed up</td>
<td>beefed up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **beef... up** p.v. When you beef up security or some other arrangement to prevent or deal with a problem, you make this arrangement stronger.

   After the terrorist attack, security was beefed up at the embassy.
   
   The hospital decided to beef up its emergency facilities.
   
   The coach is planning to beef the defense up.

   **beefed-up** part.adj. After security or some other arrangement to prevent or deal with a problem has been made stronger, it is beefed-up.

   The ambassador is confident that the beefed-up security will prevent any further terrorist attacks.

2. **break... up** p.v. When you break up a fight, you stop the fight.

   Two students were fighting, and the teacher broke them up.
   
   There was no way I could break up the fight between the two dogs.

3. **break... up** p.v. When a gathering of people separates, it breaks up. When the police tell people who are gathered together in a crowd to separate and leave the area, the police break the gathering up.

   The meeting should break up around 3:00.
   
   The police ordered the gang members to break it up.
   
   The demonstration was broken up by riot police.

4. **break... up** (with) p.v. When two people end a romantic relationship, they break up. When you end a romantic relationship with another person, you break up with that person. When other people cause a couple to break up, they break the couple up.

   I was sad to hear that Jim and Nancy had broken up.
   
   It was Jim's secretary who broke them up.

210
**breakup** n. When two people end a romantic relationships **breakup** occurs. Nancy is very upset about the **breakup**.

4. **break... up** p.v. When something breaks into smaller pieces, it **breaks up**. When you break something into smaller pieces, you **break** it **up**.
   - The meteor **broke** up when it entered Earth's atmosphere.
   - Sally **broke** the cookie up before giving it to her baby.

**breakup** n. When something breaks into smaller pieces, a **breakup** takes place.

The **breakup** of AT&T created several smaller telephone companies.

5. **break... up** p.v. When something **breaks up** the day or some other period of time, it interrupts that time and makes it less boring.
   - The bank guard likes to chat with the tellers once in a while to **break up** the day.
   - My day was **broken up** by a going-away party for one of my coworkers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>call back</td>
<td>call back &amp; calls back</td>
<td>calling back</td>
<td>called backed</td>
<td>called back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **call ...back** p.v. When you **call** someone back, you call a person on the telephone who has called you earlier.
   - Janice left a message asking me to **call** her **back**.
   - Bob was **called back** by the salesman.

2. **call... back** p.v. When you leave a place or walk away from a person and are then asked to return, you are **called back**.
   - I remembered something after she walked away, and I **called her back**.
   - Mike handed his letter of resignation to his boss, but he was **called back** after he left the office.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>call up</th>
<th>call up &amp; calls up</th>
<th>calling up</th>
<th>called up</th>
<th>called up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **call ...up** p.v. When you **call** people up, you call them on the telephone.
   - Nicole **called me up** and asked me to come to her party. Every evening I'm **called up** by charities asking for money.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>carry out</th>
<th>carry out &amp; carries out</th>
<th>carrying out</th>
<th>carried out</th>
<th>carried out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **carry... out** p.v. When you carry out a duty, task, assignment, or order, you do it.
   - Sean will **carry your duties out** while you're on vacation.
   - The boss was furious because his orders hadn't been **carried out**.

2. **carry... out** (of) p.v. When you **carry** something **out** of a place, you hold it in your hands and take it from that place.

211
It took four guys to carry the pool table out. David was so drunk that we had to carry him out of the bar.

**carry out** n. Food that you take from a restaurant and eat in another place is **carry out** or **carryout** food. **Takeout** and **takeout** food are the same as **carry out** and **carryout** food.

We usually take **carryout** food when we go to visit Aunt Kathy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>give away</td>
<td>give away &amp; gives away</td>
<td>giving away</td>
<td>gave away</td>
<td>given away</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **give... away** p.v. When you **give** something **away**, you give it to someone without asking for anything in return because you do not want it or because you want to help the person you are giving it to.

   This old furniture isn't worth very much, so I think I'll just **give it away**.

   He made nearly a billion dollars, but after he retired he **gave** most of his money **away**.

2. **give... away** p.v. When you **give** a secret **away**, you accidentally reveal that secret.

   I haven't seen that movie yet, so don't **give away** the ending.

   You can trust me with the secret. I haven't **given it away**.

3. **give... away** p.v. When you **give** yourself **away**, you accidentally reveal something secret about yourself. When something **gives** you **away**, it accidentally reveals something secret about you.

   Mark tried to keep his affair a secret, but he was **given away** by his credit card bills.

   Toad claimed he didn't care about Sally anymore, but he **gave** himself away when he asked who she had gone to the party with.

**giveaway** n. A giveaway is a statement or action that reveals secret information.

   I knew I was going to be fired from my job when everyone stopped talking to me — that was the **giveaway**.

**mess up**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mess up</th>
<th>mess up &amp; messes up</th>
<th>messing up</th>
<th>messed up</th>
<th>messed up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **mess... up** p.v. [informal] When you **mess up** a place, you make it dirty or disorganized.

   Jim made spaghetti sauce, and he really **messed up** the kitchen.

   You kids can play in the living room, but don't **mess it up**.

   **messed up** part.adj. After you **mess up** a place, it is **messed up**.

   It looks like Timmy was the last one in the bathroom — it's really **messed up**.

2. **mess... up** p.v. [informal] When you **mess up** a situation, you create problems.

   When you **mess up** a plan or arrangement, you interfere with it and prevent it from happening as planned. **Mess up** is similar to **screw up**.

212
Everything was perfect until you messed it up.
Our honeymoon was messed up by the airline strike.

**messed up** part adj. When you interfere with a plan or arrangement and prevent it from happening as planned, it is messed up. Messed up is similar to *screwed up*.

Bob changed my plan, and now it’s totally messed up.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stand up</td>
<td>stand up &amp; stands up</td>
<td>standing up</td>
<td>stood up</td>
<td>stood up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **stand up** p.v. When you stand up, you change from a sitting position to a standing position. Get up is similar to stand up.
   - Everyone stands up when the judge enters the courtroom.
   - When the students are sleepy, the teacher makes them stand up.

2. **stand up** p.v. [informal] When you stand people up, you do not arrive at their house as you have promised or at a social event or meeting where you are expected.
   - Heather had a date with Jim last Saturday night, but she was stood up.
   - The senator was scheduled to speak at our meeting, but he stood us up.

**EXERCISE 28a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. If you **divide** a long airplane flight into two or three shorter flights, it isn’t as boring.
2. My workroom was clean and neat, but my brother did some work and he **screwed** it **up**.
3. It’s going to be a surprise party, so don’t **stand up** it **up**.
4. The neighborhood council asked the police to **step up** their patrols in high crime neighborhoods.
5. I haven’t talked to Sam in a long time. I think I’ll **call** him **up** tonight.
6. The general expects his orders to be **stood up** immediately.
7. In some countries, students always **stand up** when they speak in class.
8. The huge iceberg **melted** when it drifted into warmer water.
10. Janice didn’t come to my house last night as she promised. She **messed** me **up**.
11. Timmy and his friend were fighting, and Timmy’s mother _______ the fight _______.
12. These boxes are really heavy. Can you help me _______ them _______ of the house?
13. After the rally ended, the crowd quickly _______ _______ and went home.
14. I’m too busy to talk on the phone now. Can you _______ me _______ later?
15. Bob claimed to have an excellent education, but he was _______ by his poor grammar.
16. Mark is very upset. His girlfriend just _______ with him.
17. Jim told the Girl Scouts that he didn’t want to buy any cookies, but as they walked away he changed his mind and _______ them _______.
18. Instead of charging for the software program, the company decided to _______ it _______ free.

EXERCISE 28b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The White House beefed up. (security, it)
2. The police are breaking up. (the protest, it)
3. A trained technician ought to carry our. (the experiment, it)
4. The foundation gave away. (the money, it)
5. Susie always messes up. (the bathroom, it)

6. Todd stood up. (Heather, her)

EXERCISE 28c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Make all the phrasal verbs passive.

1. Dr. Wood will do the test of the new drug. What will happen to the test?

2. The statue was smashed by thieves. What happened to the gold statue?

3. The children made the house dirty and disorganized. What happened to the house?

4. In Question 3, how would you describe the house?

5. Mike’s friend promised to come to his house, but he didn’t. What happened to Mike?

6. Karen called Sarah, but Sarah was at school. Sarah didn’t call Karen later. What didn’t happen to Karen?

7. A supermarket chain gave the food to charity and didn’t receive any money for it. What happened to the food?

8. The palace is making security stronger. What is happening to security at the palace?

9. In Question 8, how would you describe the security now?

10. The personnel manager will call all the candidates for the job. What will happen to all the candidates for the job?
EXERCISE 28d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

back up, 11     fix up, 15     rip up, 17     tear down, 8
blow away, 15   hand out, 10   stick up, 14   track down, 13
cut off, 11     hold up, 7     take in, 7     use up, 14
drop off, 11     lay off, 10     take out, 11     wake up, 11

1. The hard disk is ___________ by the computer operator every day.
2. The old buildings are being ___________ to make room for a new office building.
3. There isn't any paper in the copier. Someone ___________ it ___________.
4. Last night I was ___________ by a loud noise.
5. I can't believe I was naive enough to be ___________ by him.
6. The library book I wanted had already been ___________.
7. Something amazing happened yesterday. You are going to be ___________ when I tell you about it.
8. After the old house had been ___________, it looked a lot better.
9. Many employees are really worried that they're going to be ___________.
10. I was talking to my brother on the phone when I was suddenly ___________.
11. My shirt was ___________ when I fell off my bicycle.
12. The entire building is ___________ by these four steel beams.
13. The pamphlets will be ___________ in train stations and airports.
14. The liquor store was ___________ again last night.
15. The film was ___________ at the photo lab.
16. The escaped prisoner was easily ___________ by the FBI agents.
29. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and **might, may, and can**

**Possibility: may and might**
Both *may* and *might* are used to express a medium level of possibility. When *may* and *might* are used to express possibility in the present or future, their meaning is the same, but *may* has a slightly more formal sound. *Might* is slightly more common in everyday American English:

- Nancy **might** drop in tonight. Nancy **may** drop in tonight.

The speaker believes that the possibility that Nancy will **drop in** and the possibility that she will not **drop in** are approximately equal.

**Requests: may and might**
Both *may* and *might* are used to make requests. *May* has a formal sound, and is less common than *might*. *Can* is the most common in American English:

- **Can I drop in** tonight?
- **May I drop in** tonight?
- **Might I drop in** tonight?

**Permission: may and can**
*May* and *can* are also used to give permission. In this case, *may* is much more formal and is much less common than *can*. *Might* is not used for this purpose:

- You **can** drop in after dinner. You **may** drop in after dinner.

| Infinitive | Present Tense | -ing Form | Past Tense | Past Tense
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ask for</td>
<td>ask for &amp; asks for</td>
<td>asking for</td>
<td>asked for</td>
<td>asked for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **ask... for** *p.v.* When you **ask for** something, you tell someone that you want it.
   - We **asked** the waiter **for** some more coffee.
   - My wife **might ask** for more vacation time instead of a raise.

2. **ask for** *p.v.* When you say that people are **asking for** something or **asking for** it, you mean that they are doing or saying something that is likely to result in punishment or a negative consequence.
   - I'm warning you — if you keep doing that, you're **asking for** trouble.
   - You're **asking for** it! Don't say that again.
Infinitive present tense -ing form past tense past participle

| come apart | come apart | coming apart | came apart | come apart |

1. **come apart** p.v. When something **comes** apart, the parts separate because it is old or in bad condition or because the parts were not strongly connected to each other.

   - This toy airplane is such a piece of junk that it **came apart** in my hand.
   - Be careful with this old book. It's **coming apart**.

| drop in | drop in & drops in | dropping in | dropped in | dropped in |

1. **drop in** (on) p.v. When you **drop in** on people, you visit them unexpectedly.

   - If you're ever in my neighborhood **drop in**.
   - Sally **dropped in** on Marsha last night.

| flip out | flip out & flips out | flipping out | flipped out | flipped out |

1. **flip out** p.v. [informal] When you **flip out**, you become very upset or very angry.

   - Bob **flipped out** when the city doubled his property taxes.
   - Keep your hands off Jim's computer — he'll **flip out** if you screw it up.

| look out | look out & looks out | looking out | looked out | looked out |

1. **look out** (for) p.v. When you **look out** or **look out** for something, you remain alert for someone or something that is dangerous or important. When you tell people to **look out**, you are warning them of possible danger. **Look out** is the same as **watch out**.

   - **Look out** for bears when you camp in the mountains.
   - There's a lot of ice on the road, so **look out**.

   **lockout** n. A lockout is someone who **looks out** for someone or something that is dangerous or important.

   - The burglars had **lockouts** on every corner to warn them if the police came.

| luck out | luck out & looks out | lucking out | lucked out | lucked out |

1. **luck out** p.v. [informal] When you **luck out**, something good happens to you or you avoid something bad happening to you.

   - Todd **lucked out** when he found that lottery ticket on the ground; it was a $1 million winner.
   - I missed my flight, and the plane crashed. I guess I **lucked out**.
**make out**

1. **make out** p.v. When you can make something out, you can see it or hear it even though it is difficult to do so.

The audio system is so bad in the bus station that I can never make out what the speakers are saying. I think that might be a mountain goat up there near the top of the mountain. I can just barely make it out with these binoculars.

2. **make out** p.v. [always used with "to be"] When you make people or things out to be a certain way or a certain thing, you describe or consider them to be this way or to be this thing.

Stop complaining — my food isn't as bad as you make it out to be.

The critics made the film out to be a real bore, but I liked it.

3. **make out** (to) p.v. When you write the necessary information on the front of a check, you make the check out. When you write the name of a person, company, or other organization on the check, you make the check out to that person, company, or organization.

How should I make this check out?

There must be a mistake; this check is made out to my brother, not to me.

Nancy made a check out to the IPS for $17,000.

made out part.adj. After the necessary information has been written on the front of a check, the check is made out.

Is the check made out, or is it blank?

4. **make out** (on) p.v. When you make out or make out on something, you do something successfully or survive a situation even though it may be difficult.

Karen had a job interview yesterday. I wonder how she made out.

Even though Jerry has lost his job, we'll make out somehow.

How did you make out on the test yesterday?

**run across**

1. **run across** p.v. When people or things run across a place, room, or building, they move from one side to the other very quickly.

The receiver ran across the field and caught the ball.

It's crazy to run across the street through the traffic instead of waiting for the light.

2. **run across** p.v. When you run across people or things, you see or find them without planning or expecting to. **Come across** is similar to run across.
I don’t go to that supermarket anymore because I may run across my ex-husband. Bob ran across one of his army buddies at the baseball game.

EXERCISE 29a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Can you tell me what this says? I can’t ______ it ______ without my glasses.
2. The store we’re going to is on the right side of the street, so _______ for it.
3. You didn’t fix this very well; it’s already _______ again.
4. Okay, I’ll give you the money. Who should I _______ the check _______ to?
5. I’m going to be in Dan’s neighborhood tomorrow, so I might _______ on him for a quick visit.
6. Ann’s going to _______ _______ when she sees this cigarette burn on her antique table.
7. Sally thinks she _______ _______ okay on her driving test.
8. I wasn’t surprised when I _______ _______ Sam at the beach; he goes there a lot.
9. That’s enough! If you don’t stop bothering me, you’re _______ _______.
10. A police officer stopped me for going forty miles over the limit, and all he did was give me a _______ _______.

EXERCISE 29b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. You got very upset when I wrecked your car. What did you do?
2. Timmy might tell Santa Claus that he wants a new bicycle. What might Timmy do?
3. I unexpectedly met my college roommate at the airport this morning. What did I do at the airport this morning?
4. Tom wrote all the necessary information on the check. What did Tom do?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe the check after Tom wrote all the necessary information on it?

6. Betty isn't expecting me, but I might go to her house this evening to visit her. What might I do to Betty?

7. The pieces of this chair are becoming separated. What is the chair doing?

8. You didn't have your homework ready, but the teacher didn't find out because she forgot to ask you for it. What did you do?

9. I can't read what that sign says because it's so far away. What can't I do?

10. Susie's father told her to be careful about cars when she rides her bicycle in the street. What did Susie's father tell her to do?

EXERCISE 29c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

1._______________________________________________

2.____________________________________________________

3._________________________________________________

4._________________________________________________

5._________________________________________________

6._________________________________________________

7._________________________________________________

8._________________________________________________

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crackdown, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>handover, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start-up, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warm-up, 19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cutoff, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holdout, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stickup, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fixer-upper, 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shutoff, 26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>takeout, 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The company is accepting applications for the position until the ________ date, March 6th.
2. A _________ before exercise is a good idea.
3. We bought a _________, fixed a few things, added a bathroom, and sold it a year later for a nice profit.
4. Mom doesn’t feel like cooking tonight, so we’re getting _________ food.
5. Except for a few _________ hiding in the hills, all the rebels surrendered after the peace treaty.
6. The angry citizens demanded a _________ on crime in their neighborhood.
7. Most business _________ fail in less than three years.
8. If there’s a problem with the machine, the _________ switch is right here.
9. The prime minister demanded the immediate _________ of the hostages.
10. The convenience store _________ was recorded on videotape.

EXERCISE 29e. Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

break up, 28 do with, 25 go up, 26 settle for, 25
call back, 28 dry off, 27 knock off, 27 stand up, 28
call up, 28 give away, 28 lighten up, 25 think up, 25
carry out, 28 go over, 26 mess up, 28 zip up, 21

1. The teacher was too strict with her students, and the principal suggested that she _______.

2. Tom was expecting Nancy to come to his house for dinner, but she _______ him _______.

3. Letting Timi-ny use my computer was a mistake. He _______ it _______, and now it doesn’t work.

4. They’re asking $340,000 for their house, but they might _______ _______ $300,000.

5. I told the school principal that Hank might have something to _______ _______ the fish in the swimming pool.
6. Andrew Carnegie was a very rich man, but he _______ most of his money _______ before he died.

7. I gave Erik my telephone number, and he said he might _______ me _______ tonight.

8. Erik called while I was in the shower, so now I need to _______ him _______.


10. The coach is worried that the rain-soaked football field might not _______ _______ in time for the game.

11. The company is planning to _______ a major reorganization.

12. Don't put the candle there; the cat might _______ it _______ and start a fire.

13. The students didn't understand the lesson, so the teacher _______ _______ it again.

14. It's really cold out there — you might want to _______ your coat _______.

15. The Wilsons aren't sure where they will spend their vacation. They may _______ _______ to Alaska to visit their son.

16. Ned's a dreamer. He's always trying to _______ _______ a way to make money without working.

30. FOCUS ON: participle adjectives formed from phrasal verbs, 2

As we saw in Section 14, the past participles of many phrasal verbs can be used as participle adjectives. The adverb all is sometimes used to emphasize participle adjectives with the meaning of very or completely. But the sentence must be logical — all is used only to emphasize a participle adjective that describes a condition that can be partial, less than complete, and so on. Look at this example with very and two ordinary adjectives:

makes sense: He's very sick. does not make sense: He's very dead.

The first sentence above makes sense because it is possible to be very sick, but the second does not make sense because it is not possible to be very dead.
makes sense: The man is all spaced-out. does not make sense: The man is all locked in.

The first sentence makes sense because it is possible to be slightly spaced-out, but it is not possible to be slightly locked in (a door is either locked or it isn't). When all is used with the meaning of very or completely in a sentence with a plural subject, it is identical in appearance to all's more common meaning of all the people, all the things, and so on.

The men are all spaced-out.

This sentence is ambiguous: it could be understood to mean that every man is spaced-out or that the men are completely spaced-out.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lock in</td>
<td>lock in &amp; locks in</td>
<td>locking in</td>
<td>locked in</td>
<td>locked in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. lock... in p.v. When you lock people in, you lock a door or gate so that they cannot leave a room, building, or other place.

Seven people died because they were locked in the burning building.

It's dangerous to lock children in a car.

locked in part.adj. When people cannot leave a room, building, or other place because the door or gate is locked, they are locked in.

We're locked in — we'll have to break a window.

2. lock... in p.v. When you lock in an interest rate, price, time slot, and so on, you make it definite so that it will not change in the future.

I met with the loan officer at the bank and locked in a mortgage rate.

If you want to use the condo at the beach this weekend, you need to pay a deposit to lock it in.

locked in part.adj. After you make an interest rate, price, time slot, and so on, definite so that it will not change in the future, it is locked in.

The farmer isn't worried about what happens to the price of soybeans because the price of his crop is locked in.

Lock out

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lock out</th>
<th>lock out &amp; locks out</th>
<th>locking out</th>
<th>locked out</th>
<th>locked out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. lock... out (of) p.v. When you lock people out or lock people out of a place, you lock a door or gate so that they cannot enter a room, building, or other place.

The Youngs got home and found that their son had locked them out of their house.

I hide an extra key under the bumper of my car so that I won't get locked out.
locked out part. adj. When people cannot enter a room, building, or other place because the door or gate is locked, they are locked out.

We're locked out; we'll just have to wait outside until someone comes home.

2. lock... out p. v. When a business locks out workers, the workers are prohibited from working by the business management.

Management locked the workers out after they refused to sign the new contract.

When the owners heard talk of a strike, they locked the employees out.

locked out part. adj. After a business locks out workers in order to prohibit them from working, the workers are locked out.

We're locked out. How can we earn a living?

lockout n. When a business locks out workers in order to prohibit them from working, it is a lockout.

The lockout lasted for three months.

Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>punch in</td>
<td>punch in &amp; punches in</td>
<td>punching in</td>
<td>punched in</td>
<td>punched in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. punch... in p. v. When you come to your workplace and put your time card in the time clock to record the time you have arrived, you punch in.

Don't forget to punch in as soon as you get to work.

Mark was late, so I punched him in.

punched in part. adj. When you are punched in, you are at your workplace, on duty, and being paid.

If you're punched in, you shouldn't be sitting down smoking a cigarette. punch out

punch out & punches out punching out punched out punched out

1. punch... out p. v. When you leave your workplace and put your time card in the time clock to record the time you have left, you punch out.

Sally's not at work; she punched out at 5:08. Jim usually forgets, so his boss punches him out.

punched out part. adj. When you are punched out, you are not at your workplace, or if you are there, you are off duty and not being paid.

The manager asked why I wasn't working, and I told him I was punched out.

put out put out & puts out putting out put out put out

1. put... out p. v. When you extinguish a fire or something that is burning, you put it out.
Put that cigarette out immediately.
It was two hours before the fire was put out.

2. put ...out p.v. When you take something from inside a building or storage place and leave it outside for someone to take, use, or deal with, you put it out.
The garbage truck comes early tomorrow morning, so put the trash bags out tonight.
Judy put some clothes out for her daughter to wear the next day.

3. put... out p.v. When you put out your hand, arm, foot, or leg, you extend it in front of your body.
Mike put out his leg and tripped me.
I put my hand out, but she refused to shake it.

4*put... out p.v. When you put yourself out, you try very hard to help someone.
Sofia really put herself out to make her new daughter-in-law feel welcome.
Don't put yourself out. I can make my own dinner.

5. put ...out p.v. When you put people out, you inconvenience them.
Erik really put Bill out when he asked him for a ride to the airport at 3:00 in the morning.
You've done so much to help me. I'm sorry to have put you out.

6. put out p.v. When you are put out by people, you are annoyed by something they have said or done.
I was really put out by having to take a taxi to work because Mike hadn't returned my car.
Dan was put out by Sam's ungrateful attitude.

put out part.adj. When you are annoyed by something that someone has said or done, you are put out.
Maria's put out; the manager thanked everyone who worked on the project except her.

7. put... out p.v. When a book, magazine, newspaper, or musical recording is published or issued, it is put out.
The publisher is planning to put a new magazine out that will appeal to teenage girls.
Frank Sinatra put out several classic recordings in the 1950s.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sort out</td>
<td>sort out &amp; sorts out</td>
<td>sorting out</td>
<td>sorted out</td>
<td>sorted out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. sort... out p.v. When you sort a group of things out, you separate them into smaller groups according to one or more characteristics.
After you take the laundry out of the dryer, you have to sort it out. The mail arrives at the post office all mixed together, and it has to be sorted out before it can be delivered.

**sorted out** part.adj. After you separate things into smaller groups according to one or more characteristics, they are sorted out.

The mail is sorted out and ready to be delivered.

2. sort... out p.v. When you do something to solve a problem or to correct a misunderstanding, you sort it out.

Janice was angry with me about what happened last night, but I called her and we sorted everything out.

Everyone is confused about the new plan. We ought to talk to Mrs. Taylor and sort everything out.

**sorted out** part.adj. After you do something to solve a problem or to correct a misunderstanding, it is sorted out.

Mike and Tom had a big fight, but everything is sorted out now.

---

1. space... out p.v. [informal—used mostly by young people] When you space out or when something spaces you out, something or someone confuses you and causes you to forget what you were saying or doing at that moment.

This place is really weird — it's spacing me out. Sorry, what did you say? I wasn't listening — I spaced out.

**spaced-out** part.adj. When something or someone confuses you and causes you to forget what you were saying or doing at that moment, you are spaced-out.

Half of what Jerry says doesn't make any sense; he's all spaced-out.

---

1. wash up p.v. When you wash up, you wash your hands thoroughly.

Go and wash up — it's time for dinner.

The surgeon washed up before the operation.

2. wash up p.v. When something in a lake, a river, or the sea washes up, it is carried by the water to the land and left there.

The police were called when a dead body washed up on the beach.

Pieces of the sunken boat continued to wash up for weeks.
EXERCISE 30a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I had to break a window when I _______ myself _______ of my car.
2. Judy was _______ by her brother's criticism of the way she's raising her children.
3. The guard _______ the prisoner _______ her jail cell.
4. The Bakers organized a nice party for their daughter's birthday. They really _______ themselves _______.
5. My brown socks are mixed with my black socks. I have to _______ them _______.
6. Joe was late to work, so the manager _______ him _______.
7. The forest fire was _______ by the rain.
8. The restaurant manager told the cook to _______ before handling food.
9. The factory workers finished their shifts and _______.
10. Thanks for helping me move my piano. I'm sorry to _______ you _______.
11. We got a fixed-rate mortgage so we could _______ a low rate.
12. The workers were _______ by management during a labor dispute.
13. I totally _______ and forgot about the cake in the oven.
14. Sally and her brothers had a big argument, but they got everything _______.
15. As I was falling, I _______ my arm _______ to protect my head.
16. Wreckage from the crashed airplane _______ on the coast.
17. Jim _______ bowls of peanuts _______ for his guests.
18. The band hasn't _______ a CD in three years.

EXERCISE 30b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. He _______. (the crazy guy, him)
2. Jim locked out. (his wife, her)

3. Did you punch in? (Rosa, her)

4. Would you punch out? (Linda and Erik, them)

5. They couldn't put out. (the fire, it)

6. The bright lights spaced out. (Janice, her)

EXERCISE 30c — Complete the sentences with participle adjectives from this section.

1. Mark isn't working; he's taking a break. He must be __________. 
2. You can't leave the building because you're __________. 
3. The clothes were all mixed together, but now they're __________. 
4. I forgot my key, and I can't get in my office. I'm __________. 
5. We had a big misunderstanding, but it's all __________ now.
6. Joe went to the store, but when he got there, he couldn't remember what he wanted. He was 

_____________

7. Nancy invited her father-in-law for dinner, and after dinner he told Nancy that his other 

daughter-in-law was a better cook. Nancy was really __________ __________.

8. The manager asked, "If you're _______________, why aren't you working?"

**EXERCISE 30d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. There was a fire in the wastebasket, so I got some water to extinguish it. What did I do?
2. I don't want the children in here while I'm working, so I'm going to push the button on the 
doorknob to lock the door. What am I going to do to the children?

3. In Question 2, how would you describe the children after I lock the door?
4. David forgot what he was going to say. What did David do?

5. In Question 4, how would you describe David when he forgot what he was going to say?
6. Sally told me to use soap and water to get my hands clean before I handle food. What did 
Sally tell me to do?

7. The newspaper is published only once a week. What is done to the newspaper only once 
a week?

8. Lydia put Jim's time card in the time clock when Jim was late for work. What did Lydia do for 
Jim?

9. In Question 8, how would you describe Jim after Lydia put his time card in the time clock?

10. Your books are all mixed together and you ought to separate them into different groups. What 
should you do to your books?

11. In Question 10, how would you describe your books after you separate them into different 
groups?

12. I made the thief stay until the police came by putting him in the closet and using a key to 
prevent him from leaving the closet. What did I do to the thief?
13. In Question 12, how would you describe the thief after I used the key to prevent him from leaving
the closet?

14. It really annoyed Erik when Jane told him that he needed to lose weight. How was Erik affected by
Jane’s remark?

15. In Question 14, how would you describe Erik after Jane told him he needed to lose weight?

16. The employees can’t put their time cards in the time clock and go home before 4:30. What
can’t the employees do?

17. In Question 16, after the employees put their time cards in the time clock, how would you
describe them?

18. Jane didn’t try very hard to make her brother and his family comfortable when they stayed with her.
What didn’t Jane do?

EXERCISE 30e, Review — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives
from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given
after each one.

beefed up, 28  lit up, 13  shut off, 26  worn off, 27
broken off, 27  made out, 29  torn off, 27
closed off, 13  made-up, 23  washed off, 27
dried off, 27  messed up, 28  wiped off, 27

1. The children baked cookies this morning, and they left the kitchen all _______ ________.
2. The security force can handle any terrorist attack.
3. Charles didn’t pay his bill, and now his electricity is _______ ________.
4. I can’t read the sign because the paint is all _______ ________.
5. There aren’t any tags on this mattress. They’re all _______ ________.
6. Those apples aren’t _______ ________, so don’t eat them.
7. You can’t drive down that street; it’s _______ ________.
8. This check isn’t blank; it’s _______ ________.
9. The Christmas tree isn’t _______ ________, now, but when it is it’ll be beautiful.
10. I put the coffee cup with the _______ ________ handle downstairs. I’m going to fix it later.
11. The kitchen counter isn't clean, so don't put those papers on it — they might get grease on them.

12. That was quite a rain we just had. I don't think I'll drive to work until the roads have dried.

13. I didn't believe a word he said. It was just a lot of foolish nonsense.

EXERCISE 30f, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- ask for, 29
- fill out, 14
- make out, 29
- wipe off, 27
- butt in, 14
- have on, 25
- open up, 26
- work out, 11
- carry out, 28
- head into, 17
- stand up, 28
- drop in, 29
- hurry up, 25
- trade in, 24
- drop out, 23
- knock over, 25
- wash off, 27

1. ________ ________ of school was the dumbest thing I ever did.

2. The loan application was rejected because it hadn't been ________ ________ properly.

3. I'm going to ask the car dealer how much I can ________ ________ my car ________ for.

4. My feet are killing me. I've been ________ ________ all day.

5. Did you see what Sally was wearing yesterday? She ________ a green dress and purple shoes ________.

6. Mike ________ the bartender ________ a gin martini, but she made a vodka martini instead.

7. We'll have to ________ ________ if we're going to get to the theater before the movie starts.

8. Don't leave that glass there — the baby might ________ it.

9. Dad's hardware store went out of business after a huge discount store ________ ________ across the street.
10. You won’t be able to ________ that paint ________ with water; you’ll have to use turpentine.

11. It was raining, so I had to ________ the water ________ my glasses after I came inside.

12. Sergeant Jones has always ________ his orders without fail.

13. If you’re ever in my neighborhood, ________; you’re always welcome.

14. Things aren’t ________ at my new job, and I think I’m going to quit soon.

15. Judy left her home in the suburbs and ________ the city.

16. When I met Jim I was surprised at how nice he was. Everyone always ________ him ________ to be a real jerk.

17. I would have been next, but then some jerk ________ ________ line.

31. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs and gerund subjects

As we saw in Section 16, gerunds — verbs in the -ing form that function as nouns — can serve as the objects of many phrasal verbs. But gerunds can also serve as the subject of a sentence:

Eating meat everyday was something we did without.

Voting was immediately done away with by the dictatorship.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>care for</td>
<td>care for</td>
<td>caring for</td>
<td>cared for</td>
<td>cared for</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. care for p.v. When you care for children or people who are old or sick, you provide them with the food or medicine they need or you do things to help them. When you care for machines or buildings, you keep them in good condition.

   The nurses have to care for several very sick patients.

   John has been caring for his eighty-three-year-old mother since her stroke.

2. care for p.v. When you care for people or things, you like them.
Jane doesn't care for coffee; she prefers tea.

I asked Sally to go to the dance, but she said that dancing is not something she cares for.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cut out</td>
<td>cut out &amp; cuts out</td>
<td>cutting out</td>
<td>cut out</td>
<td>cutout</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. cut... out (of) p.v. When you cut something out or cut something out of a piece of paper, cloth, or other material, you use scissors or a knife to remove part of it.

The bank robber had a pillowcase over his head with two holes cut out.

I cut an interesting story out of the newspaper to show to my father.

cutout n. Something that has been cut out of a piece of paper, cloth, or other material is a cutout.

Timmy made some cardboard cutouts shaped like animals.

2. cut... out p.v. When you cut out part of a film, television program, book, magazine, and so on, you remove that part.

The movie was too long, so the director cut a couple of scenes out. Before the book was published, the parts that were critical of the king had to be cut out of Chapter 4.

3. cut... out p.v. When you cut out something that you consume, you stop using it. When you cut out doing something, you stop doing it. When you say “Cut it out” to people, you want them to stop doing or saying something.

Smoking is the first thing you've got to cut out if you want to improve your health.

If you want to lose weight, you’ll have to cut cookies and ice cream out.

It bothers me when you do that, so cut it out!

4. cut out p.v. When a motor suddenly stops working, it cuts out.

I was driving when the motor suddenly cut out.

This plane has only one engine, so if it cuts out, we’re in big trouble.

do away with

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do away with &amp; does away with</th>
<th>doing away with</th>
<th>did away with</th>
<th>done away with</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. do away with p.v. When you do away with something, you eliminate it or prohibit it.

Doing away with smoking is not something that will happen soon.

Some people think the electoral college is obsolete and should be done away with.

2. do away with p.v. When you do away with people, you kill them.

Marvin inherited a fortune after he did away with his older brother.

The woman was accused of doing away with her husband with arsenic.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do without</td>
<td>do without</td>
<td>doing without</td>
<td>did without</td>
<td>done without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do without &amp; does without</td>
<td>doing without</td>
<td>did without</td>
<td>done without</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **do without** p.v. When you do without something, you continue living or working without something that you want or need because it is not possible or available.

   Washing your hair everyday is something you have to do without when you go camping.

2. **looking into**

   look into & looks into | looking into | looked into | looked into

1. **look into** p.v. When you look into something or look into doing something, you investigate it or get more information about it.

   After receiving many complaints about the company, the attorney general decided to look into the matter.

2. **plan on**

   plan on & plans on | planning on | planned on | planned on

1. **plan on** p.v. When you plan on something, you expect it.

   They wanted a large family, but having thirteen children sure wasn’t what they planned on.

   You should plan on at least two years to finish the master’s degree program.

2. **plan on** p.v. When you plan on doing something, you intend to do it.

   What are you planning on doing tonight?

   I plan on fishing and taking a lot of pictures on my vacation.

3. **put off**

   put off & puts off | putting off | put off | put off

1. **put off** p.v. When you put off something or put off doing something, you delay or postpone it. When you put people off, you delay doing something they want you to do.

   Buying a new house will have to be put off until we can afford it.

   The students begged the teacher to put the test off until the next week.

   He pressured me for a decision, but I kept putting him off.

2. **put off** p.v. When people put you off, they do or say something that offends you.

   Everyone was put off by his racist jokes.

   Todd went out to dinner with Nancy last night, and the way she treated the waiter really put him off.
put off part.adj. After people do or say something that offends you, you are put off. What's wrong? You seem a little put off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rule out</td>
<td>rule out &amp; rules out</td>
<td>ruling out</td>
<td>ruled out</td>
<td>ruled out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. rule... out p.v. When you rule out people or things, you eliminate them from a list. When you rule out doing something, you decide that it is something you will not do because you do not want to, because it is impossible, and so on.

The detective interviewed all the suspects and ruled everyone out except the victim's ex-wife.

After the hurricane they ruled out moving to Florida.

With all these medical bills to pay, maybe we should consider ruling out buying a new car.

EXERCISE 31 a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I suggested moving to Minnesota, but my wife _______ _______ moving anywhere cold.
2. My doctor says I should _______ _______ scuba diving until my ear gets better.
3. The health department wants to _______ _______ smoking within twenty years.
4. I saw a funny cartoon in the paper, so I _______ _______ it _______ and sent it to my brother.
5. Some countries have an excellent health care system. No one has to _______ _______ medical treatment.
6. I was a little _______ _______ by his unfriendliness.
7. Let's go to a different restaurant; I don't _______ _______ Chinese food.
8. I'm going to _______ _______ this situation to see what the problem is.
9. After the revolution, all members of the royal family were _______ _______.
10. Several scenes of the film had to be _______ _______ before the censors would approve it.
11. Jim had to quit his job to _______ _______ his sick wife.
12. I had to take a taxi to work yesterday. My car’s motor _______ _______ right in the middle of an intersection.

13. What a surprise! Being transferred to Hawaii is something I never _______ _______.

14. Getting that tooth fixed is not something you should _______ _______.

15. What are you _______ _______ doing with your time after you retire?

**EXERCISE 31 b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. You changed your vacation plans. You’re not going next week; you’re going to go later. What did you do to your vacation?

2. Everyone likes Jim more now that he has stopped acting like such a big shot. What did Jim do?

3. The President said that nothing has been eliminated from the list of things that might be done about the crisis. What did the President say about what might be done about the crisis?

4. Mike's parents don't like his new friend. How do Mike's parents feel about his new friend?

5. A law was passed that prohibits child labor. What does the law do to child labor?

6. There aren't any stores out here in the woods, so if you forgot something, you'll just have to continue without it. What will you have to do if you forgot something?

7. I'm so tired of this car's ugly color; I'm going to investigate having it painted. What am I going to do?

8. If you go to Chicago in January, you can expect to freeze to death. What can you do if you go to Chicago in January?

9. Betty was a little offended by Sam's behavior. How did Betty react to Sam's behavior?

10. In Question 9, how did Sam's behavior make Betty feel?

11. The police suspected that Mr. Mayfield had been killed by a coworker. What did the police suspect about Mr. Mayfield?

12. Dr. Smith removed the entire tumor with a knife. What did he do?

13. My father kept his car in good condition, and it lasted for forty years. What did my father do to his car?
EXERCISE 31 c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to use gerunds as the subjects of some of the sentences.

1. _______________________________________________
2. _______________________________________________
3. _______________________________________________
4. _______________________________________________
5. _______________________________________________
6. _______________________________________________
7. _______________________________________________
8. _______________________________________________

EXERCISE 31 d. Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

ask for, 29  cut down, 23  get away, 23  luck out, 29  drop in, 29  get back at, 17  make out, 29  beef up, 28  flip out, 29  get off, 18  make up, 23  come apart, 29  go about, 17  look out, 29  run across, 29

1. I'm thinking about investing in the stock market, but I'm not sure how to ________ ________ it.
2. The sound on the language lab tapes is so bad that I can't ________ ________ what they're saying.
3. The world is ________ ________ of many different countries.
4. We'll need to buy a new suitcase soon. This old one is ________ ________.
5. That was a terrible thing he did to me — I'll ________ ________ ________ him someday.
6. Hank fell from a fifth-floor window, but he landed in a swimming pool and wasn't hurt at all. He sure ________ ________, didn't he?
7. The hockey coach said that the team's offense is good, but the defense needs to be
8. My dentist said I should ________ on sweets.
9. Frank really ________ when he found that big snake under his bed.
10. Look at this interesting old book I ________ at a used bookstore.
11. The police department is going to ________ on crime.
12. You know what a bad temper Joe has. If you keep teasing him, you're ________ trouble.
13. The accountant tried to embezzle $100,000, but he didn't ________ with it.
15. Jake was arrested and charged with bank robbery, but he ________ because none of the witnesses could identify him.
16. There are a lot of big trucks on this road. You've really got to ________ for them when you're driving.

32. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the particle *out*

The particle *out* is used in many phrasal verbs and has many meanings. Among the most frequent meanings of *out* are to say that something or someone literally moves from the inside to the outside of a place:

- He fell out of a tree.
- Melanie came out of the house.
- We always go out through the back door.
- Would you take the garbage out, please?

that something is done completely or thoroughly:

- I cleaned out the closet.
- The people quickly cleared out.
- She emptied her purse out on the table.
- Please fill this form out.

that an action or activity has ended:

- The fire went out.
- The light bulb burned out.
- Hank dropped out of school.
- Jane chickened out of asking her boss for a raise.
that something or someone is chosen, organized, shared, or distributed:

The manager **handed out** our paychecks.
Tom **picked** a new shirt **out**.
The mailroom clerk **sorted out** the mail.

that something is produced by or released from a source:

His last book **came out** two years ago.
Don't **let** the dog **out**.
That group hasn't **put out** a new CD in a long time.

that something is removed, eliminated, or excluded:

A page was accidentally **left out** of the book when it was printed.
She **cut** a cartoon **out** of the paper.
The negative test result **ruled out** cancer.
His editor **took** several paragraphs **out** of the article.

that something is perceived, sensed, found, or acquired:

I **figured out** the answer.
Did you **find out** when the movie starts?
That sign is too far away to **make out**.
Mike **screwed me out** of a hundred bucks.

that something increases in size, capacity, length, or area:

Paul started to **fill out** after he got married.
After I gained twenty-five pounds I had to **let** my pants **out**.
It's dangerous to **stick your head out** a car window.

that something important or dangerous should be watched for:

Mike is supposed to meet us here, so **watch out** for him.
**Look out**, this is a very busy intersection.

College is hard work, but you've got to **stick it out**.

### Table: Verbs with **out**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clean out</td>
<td>clean out &amp; cleans out</td>
<td>cleaning out</td>
<td>cleaned out</td>
<td>cleaned out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **clean ...out** p.v. When you **clean** something out, you clean the inside completely so that no dirt, dust, trash, and so on, remains inside.

   Mark was fired and told to **clean** his desk **out** and leave.

   We **clean out** our garage every spring.
cleaned out part.adj. After you clean the inside of something completely so that no dirt, dust, or trash, and so on, remains inside, it is **cleaned out**.

Now that the garage is **cleaned out**, there's room for my car.

2. clean ... out (of) p.v. [informal] When people **clean** you **out** or **clean** you **out** of your money, they deceive you or pressure you into giving them all your money or spending all your money for their benefit. When an expense **cleans** you **out**, it requires you to spend all your money.

   A con artist **cleaned** my grandmother **out** of $50,000.

   Having three kids in college at the same time really **cleaned me out**.

3. clean ... out (of) p.v. [informal] If thieves **clean** a place **out** or **clean** a place **out** of something, they take everything that is valuable.

   The thieves **cleaned** the jewelry store **out** of all its diamonds and emeralds.

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clear out</td>
<td>clear out &amp; clears out</td>
<td>clearing out</td>
<td>cleared out</td>
<td>cleared out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. clear...out p.v. When people **clear** out or **clear** out of a place or they are **cleared out** of a place, they leave it.

   After the police threw tear gas, the crowd **cleared right out**.

   **Clear out**! This is private property.

2. clear... out p.v. When you **clear** out a place, you remove things that are unwanted or in the way in order to make more room or to make the place cleaner.

   Look how much more room we have in the attic now that we've **cleared** all that junk **out**. The car dealer had a sale so that he could **clear out** some space for the new cars.

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Come out &amp; comes out</th>
<th>Coming out</th>
<th>Came out</th>
<th>Come out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come out</td>
<td>come out &amp; comes out</td>
<td>coming out</td>
<td>came out</td>
<td>come out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. come out (of) p.v. When people or things leave a place, room, or house that you are not in, they **come out of** it.

   Susie's friend came to the door and asked her to **come out and play**.

   The police held their fire when they saw the gunman **coming out of** the house with his hands in the air.

2. come out (of) p.v. When something **comes out** of a certain place or area, it starts there.

   This speaker must not be connected; no sound is **coming out**.

   The most wonderful aroma **came out of** the kitchen.

3. come out (to) p.v. When people leave a city and **come out** to a place outside the city where you are, they travel to that place.
Would you like to come out and visit our farm?  
Ned loves it in the city; he hasn't come out to the suburbs in a long time.

4. **come out** (of) p.v. When things or people go through an experience or treatment, the condition they are left in by that experience or treatment or the result of that experience or treatment is how they **come out**.

   It was a tough game, but our team came out on top.  
   How did the investigation **come out**?  
   I came out of that awful experience a wiser person.

5. **come out** (with) p.v. When a book, magazine, musical recording, movie, or television show is finished and made available to the public, it **comes out**. When a book, magazine, musical recording, movie, or television show is finished and made available to the public, the company publishing it or the person who created it **comes out** with it.

   The band's new CD **came out** last month, and it's already number one on the charts.  
   Barren's is coming out with a new book on TOEFL soon.

6. **come out** p.v. When information becomes known to the public, it **comes out**.

   If everyone was shocked when it **came out** that the butler had murdered the duke.  
   What really happened when President Kennedy was assassinated may never **come out**.

7. **come out** (of) p.v. When dirt or a stain is removed by cleaning, it **comes out** or **comes out** of what it is in.

   Don't get grape juice on that white blouse — it'll never **come out**.  
   That paint might **come out** of the carpet if you try turpentine.

8. **come out** p.v. When flowers or leaves start to grow, they **come out**.

   We had a very warm winter, and the flowers started coming out in February.  
   Oak tree leaves always **come out** later than the leaves of other trees.

9. **come out** p.v. When clouds move and the sun becomes visible, it **comes out**.

   The rain stopped, the sun **came out**, and there was a beautiful rainbow.  
   Wait till the sun **comes out**, you'll get a better picture.

10. **come out** (for/against) p.v. When people with authority and influence **come out** for or against something, they publicly announce support or opposition to it. When people with authority and influence **come out** against something, they publicly announce opposition to it.

    We were surprised when the mayor came out for legalizing gambling.  
    The senator from North Carolina came out against the tobacco legislation.
Infinitive                              present tense       -ing form     past tense     past participle

empty out                             empty out & empties out emptying out emptied out emptied out

1. empty... out p.v. When you completely remove the contents of a space or container, you empty it out.
   The police officer told me to empty out my pockets.
   After we empty this room out, we can start painting.

emptied out part.adj. After the contents of a container have been completely removed, the container is emptied out.
   Now that the room is emptied out, we can start laying the carpet.

1. empty out p.v. When all the people in a place leave it, the place empties out.
   After the concert is over, it'll be twenty minutes before the auditorium empties out.
   There was trash everywhere after the stadium emptied out.

fall out                              fall out & falls out falling out fell out fallen out

1. fall out (of) p.v. When you fall from or through something that is above ground level to the ground below, you fall out or fall out of it.
   Did he fall out or was he pushed?
   I found a baby bird that had fallen out of its nest.

2. fall out (withIover) p.v. When you fall out with people, you become upset or angry with them. When two people fall out over something, they become upset or angry with each other because of a disagreement about that thing.
   Alfonso fell out with his sister when he criticized her husband.
   Melanie and Sarah started a company, but they fell out over who would be president and who would be vice-president.

falling-out n. When people have a falling-out, they become upset or angry with each other and no longer have friendly relations.
   The manager of the baseball team quit after he had a falling-out with the owner.

go out                                go out & goes out going out went out gone out

1. go out (of) p.v. When people or things leave a place, room, or house that you are in, they go out or go out of it. Come in is the opposite of go out.
   I'm trying to study — go out and play in the backyard.
   Nancy was so sick that she didn't go out of the house for a week.

2. go out (to) p.v. When people leave a city where you are and go out to a place outside the city, they travel to that place.
Last weekend we went out to Jim’s cabin on the lake. This Thanksgiving I’m going to go out to my brother’s house.

3. go out p.v. When something that is burning goes out, it stops burning because it has no more fuel or because something, such as water or lack of oxygen, has caused it to stop burning.
   The campfire went out during the night.
   The forest fire didn’t go out until it started to rain.

4. go out p.v. When an electrical light goes out, it stops producing light because it is no longer receiving power.
   The lights in the barracks go out every night at 10:00.
   When the old tree fell on the power lines, every light in town went out.

5. go out (with) p.v. When two people with a romantic interest in each other go out, they go together to a place of entertainment in order to have fun and spend time together.
   Mike’s nervous — he’s going out with Heather tonight.
   Sally and Jim went out for three years before they got married.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>leave out</th>
<th>leave out &amp; leaves out</th>
<th>leaving out</th>
<th>left out</th>
<th>left out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present tense</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td>out</td>
<td>&amp; leaves out</td>
<td>leaving</td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. leave... out p.v. When you leave people or things out, you accidentally or deliberately do not include them in a group.
   The director left out several parts of the book when she made the film.
   Tell me the entire story from beginning to end. Don’t leave anything out.

left out part.adj. When you feel left out, you feel ignored and unappreciated by others in a group.
   No one talked to Jerry at the party. He just sat in the corner feeling left out.

stick out

1. stick out p.v. When something sticks out, it extends from what it is attached to.
   Be careful walking in the woods, there are a lot of branches sticking out.
   I cut myself on a nail that was sticking out of the wall.

2. stick... out p.v. When you stick something out, you extend it outward.
   Timmy stuck his tongue out when his mother gave him spinach.
   We all stuck our heads out the window to get a better look.

3. stick... out p.v. When you stick out an unpleasant or difficult experience, you continue with it until it is over, rather than quit.

244
I hate this job, but I need the money, so I'll just have to stick it out until I find a better one. College isn't easy, but if you stick it out, you'll be glad you did.

4. **stick out** p.v. When a characteristic or feature of something sticks out, that feature is very noticeable.

   Alan's nearly seven feet tall and has red hair, so he really sticks out in a crowd.

   One thing that really stuck out about him was the strange way he laughed.

**EXERCISE 32a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. Susie _______ ________ of her tree house and broke her arm.
2. The sun finally _______ ________ in the afternoon.
3. I heard some strange voices _______ ________ of the next room.
4. A sharp piece of wood was _______ ________, and I got a splinter from it.
5. When the truth finally _______ ________, you'll all be very surprised.
6. It was a good thing we had those candles when the lights ________ ________.
7. This temporary job will last only two weeks, so even though I'm bored, I guess I can _______ ________.
8. That crook _______ ________ me ________ of everything I owned.
9. David's story didn't make any sense because he _______ ________ the part about the missionaries and the cannibals.
10. Mike, it's starting to rain _______ ________, and close the car windows, please.
11. Take these wastebaskets out to the Dumpster and _______ ________ them ________.
12. It's a sure sign of spring when the tulips start to _______ ________.
13. This wood is green. Even if you can get it to burn, it'll _______ ________ right away.
14. The Bakers said they would love to _______ ________ to visit us here at our ranch some weekend.
15. The soldiers were ordered to _______ ________ the protesters ________ of the plaza.
16. Mike and Bob _______ ________ over who would pay for the window they broke playing baseball.
17. The reporter said that he expected the governor to _______ _______ against the proposed legislation.
18. Jim's going to be storing some of his stuff in the attic, so let's go up and _______ _______ some space for it.
19. Scott _______ of the trial with his reputation badly damaged.
20. After the bomb threat was announced, the theater _______ _______ in about two minutes.
21. Betty has been _______ _______ with Erik since high school.
22. It's not very smart to _______ _______ your arm _______ the window of a moving car.
23. I like it here in the city. When I _______ _______ to David's house in the country I get bored.
24. The talk show host asked the author about his new book which is _______ _______ soon.
25. The burglars _______ the coin shop _______ of its most valuable coins.
26. It's been an hour. Are you ever going to _______ _______ of the bathroom?
27. Don't even bother washing this blouse — the ink will never _______ _______.
28. Mike wants to sell his car, so he's going to _______ _______ and wash it before anyone looks at it.
29. I don't remember much about Ned, but one thing _______ _______ — he always wore black.

EXERCISE 32b — Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.

1. The crooked lawyer cleaned them out _______ a small fortune.
2. Jake came out _______ the bank and surrendered.
3. Would you like to come out _______ my place in the country?
4. Several publishers are coming out _______ books on the subject.
5. The prime minister liked the idea, so we weren't surprised when he came out _______ the plan.
6. As expected, the leader of the opposition came out _______ the plan.
7. Mike fell out _______ his brother _______ who would pay their father's medical bills.
8. Timmy's father told him not to go out _______ the house.
9. We're going out _______ the suburbs next weekend.
10. Heather's going out _______ Tom tonight.
11. Hank fell out _______ a hot air balloon.

EXERCISE 32c — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. My son cleaned out. (the basement, it)

2. I need to clear out. (the storeroom, it)

3. Sarah emptied out. (the boxes, them)

4. The factory left out. (an important part, it)
5. Don't stick out. (your neck, it)

EXERCISE 32d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Some important information is being revealed to the public. What is happening to the information?

2. All the people in the plaza left. What did the people do?

3. All the people in the plaza left. What happened to the plaza?

4. I'm going to take my girlfriend to a nightclub. What am I going to do with her?

5. The soldier was killed in the battle. What didn't the soldier do?

6. We didn't ask Mark to join our club. What did we do to Mark?

7. In Question 6, how does Mark feel because we didn't ask him to join our club?

8. The IRS took all your money. What did they do to you?

9. The music company released a new CD last week. What did they do?

10. Everyone notices Harry because he has very long hair and a long beard. What does Harry do?

11. The Chicago Tribune announced in an editorial that they were for the Republican candidate. What did they do?

12. Bill's angry with Jim, and they're not speaking to each other. What did they do with each other?

13. In Question 12, what did Bill and Jim have?
EXERCISE 32e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

care for, 31
hold out, 23
punch out, 30
sort out, 30
cut out, 31
lock in, 30
put off, 31
space out, 30
do away with, 31
look into, 31
put out, 30
wash up, 30
do without, 31
punch in, 30
rule out, 31
watch out, 23

1. Susie, I told you to stop hitting your sister, so ______ it _______!
2. After I lost my job, I learned to ______ a lot of things I used to think were necessities.
3. Watson made a real mess out of the project, so the boss asked me to ______ it _______.
4. I totally ______ and drove twenty miles past where I was going.
5. Hey, that’s really dangerous, you’d better ______ _______.
6. I’m going to get to work late tomorrow. Can you ______ me _______?
7. I’m really sick of this city. I’m going to fly to San Francisco and ______ _______ the job situation there.
8. Most of the players have signed their contracts, but a few are ______ _______.
9. Water won’t ______ _______ an electrical fire.
10. The manager reminded me to ______ _______ before going home.
11. During Prohibition, the government tried to ______ drinking alcohol.
12. The chances that his horse will win the race are very small, but I wouldn’t ______ it _______ completely.
13. Look how dirty your hands are! Go ______ _______ before you eat dinner.
14. I want to ______ _______ a low interest rate before rates go up again.
15. Thanks for inviting me to the concert, but I don’t ______ rap music.
16. Millions of people ______ _______ doing their taxes until the last minute.
As we saw in Section 17, adverbs are words that modify verbs. Some adverbs are called midsentence adverbs because they are commonly placed in the middle of a sentence. Midsentence adverbs are usually placed before main verbs:

He X goes around. She X helped him out.

after any form of be:

He is X goofing around. She wasn't X helping him out.

and between an auxiliary (helping) verb and the main verb:

He will X goof around.  
She can't X help him out.

In questions, a midsentence adverb is usually placed between the subject and the main verb:

Does he X goof around?  
Is he X goofing around?  
Has she X helped him out?

The following are common midsentence adverbs.

**Adverbs of frequency**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ever</th>
<th>typically</th>
<th>normally</th>
<th>hardly ever</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td>ordinarily</td>
<td>occasionally</td>
<td>almost never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constantly</td>
<td>often</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>almost always</td>
<td>frequently</td>
<td>seldom</td>
<td>not ever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usually</td>
<td>generally</td>
<td>rarely</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Other midsentence adverbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>already</th>
<th>merely</th>
<th>ultimately</th>
<th>probably</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>just</td>
<td>finally</td>
<td>eventually</td>
<td>most likely</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blow up</td>
<td>blow up &amp; blows up</td>
<td>blowing up</td>
<td>blew up</td>
<td>blown up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **blow up** p.v. When something **blows up** or when someone **blows** something **up**, it explodes.
   - Seven people were killed when the building **blew up**.
   - The hijackers ultimately **blew** the plane **up**.

2. **blow up** p.v. When something **blows up** or when someone **blows** something **up**, it becomes much larger because air or something else is being forced into it.
   - It always takes me an hour or more to **blow up** the balloons for a party.
   - Hank **blew up** a beach ball and threw it in the pool.

3. **blow up** p.v. When you make a picture or photograph larger, you **blow** it **up**.
   - I **blew** the photograph **up** and framed it.
   - When you **blow** this photo of the cat **up**, you can make out the license plate number.

   **blowup** n. A **blowup** is a picture or photograph that has been made larger. I made a **blowup** of the photo and framed it.

4. **blow up** (at I over) p.v. [informal] When you **blow up** or **blow up** at someone, you suddenly become very angry. When you **blow up** over something, you suddenly become very angry because of it.
   - Heather **blew up** when she saw her boyfriend dancing with Linda.
   - Dad **blew up** over the increase in our property taxes.

### catch on

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>catch on &amp; catches on</th>
<th>catching on</th>
<th>caught on</th>
<th>caught on</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **catch on** p.v. When a fashion or habit becomes popular and is adopted by many people, it **catches on**. When a product or service becomes popular and is used or bought by many people, it **catches on**.
   - Beta VCRs never **caught on**.
     - If his striped business suits **catch on**, the designer will become famous.

2. **catch on** p.v. When you eventually begin to understand something or begin to learn a skill after practicing and studying, you **catch on**.
   - When Sally studies something, she usually **catches on** right away.
   - Learning to dance the cumbia wasn’t easy, but I eventually **caught on**.

3. **catch on** (to) p.v. When you **catch on** or **catch on** to people, you realize that they are trying to trick or cheat you.
If you keep lying to everyone, they'll eventually catch on.

It took me a while, but I finally caught on to him.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come about</td>
<td>come about</td>
<td>come about</td>
<td>came about</td>
<td>come about</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **come about** p.v. When something comes about, it happens, usually as a result of a series of events and actions.
   - He was the richest man in town, and now he's bankrupt. How did that come about?
   - Several major medical advances have come about in the last fifty years.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fall behind</th>
<th>fall behind &amp; falls behind</th>
<th>falling behind</th>
<th>fell behind</th>
<th>fallen behind</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **fall behind** p.v. When you are in a group that is walking, running, driving, and so on, and they move ahead of you because you are moving more slowly than the others, you fall behind. Keep up is the opposite of fall behind.
   - Alfonso and Tom are walking so fast that I've fallen behind.
   - I was supposed to be following Linda to the party, but I fell behind and got lost.

1. **fall behind** (in) p.v. When you are in a group that is studying, working, and so on, and they learn faster or get more work done because you are learning or working more slowly than the others, you fall behind or fall behind in your work, studies, and so on. When you do not complete work as fast as it was originally planned and expected, you fall behind schedule.
   - Get behind is similar to fall behind. Keep up is the opposite of fall behind.
   - Timmy was sick last semester, and he fell behind in his studies.
   - The sales manager wanted to know why I had fallen behind the rest of the department.
   - The building project will fall behind schedule if the construction workers go on strike.

3. **fall behind** (in) p.v. When you do not make the regular payments you are required to make, you fall behind or fall behind in your payments.
   - When I lost my job, I fell behind in my mortgage payments.
   - Don't fall behind in your payments, or your car will be repossessed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>goof around</th>
<th>goof around &amp; goofs around</th>
<th>goofing around</th>
<th>goofed around</th>
<th>goofed around</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **goof around** p.v. [informal] When you waste time playing or doing silly or unimportant things, you goof around. Fool around is the same as goof around.
   - My brother drives his teachers crazy. He constantly goofs around and creates problems.
   - Stop goofing around and get to work.

252
help out

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>help out</td>
<td>help out &amp; helps out</td>
<td>helping out</td>
<td>helped out</td>
<td>helped out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. help... out (with) p.v. When you help out or help people out, you assist them in doing some work or you lend or give them money or something else that they need.
   - Can you help me out? I need a hundred bucks until payday.
   - We had a lot of work to do, so Maria helped out.

know about

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>know about</th>
<th>know about &amp; knows about</th>
<th>knowing about</th>
<th>knew about</th>
<th>known about</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. know about p.v. When you know about a situation, plan, or other information, you are aware of it.
   - Jim isn’t here. Maybe he doesn’t know about the schedule change.
   - Thanks for telling me, but I already know all about it.

2. know about p.v. When you have studied something and learned it, you know about it.
   - I don’t know much about history. I was a business major.
   - Knowing about art and being an artist are two different things.

pull off

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pull off</th>
<th>pull off &amp; pulls off</th>
<th>pulling off</th>
<th>pulled off</th>
<th>pulled off</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. pull ...off p.v. When you pull something off, you succeed in doing something difficult and possibly sneaky or illegal even though the chances of success are not high.
   - Mike tried to juggle three butcher knives and two bowling balls at the same time, but he couldn’t pull it off.
   - When Jake said he was going to try to rob a Las Vegas casino, no one believed he could pull it off.

2. pull off p.v. When you are driving and you pull off the road, you drive to the side of the road and stop.
   - If I get sleepy while I’m driving, I always pull off the road and take a nap.
   - When I heard that strange noise, I pulled off to the side and checked the engine.

EXERCISE 33a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I need to move some furniture, and it’s too heavy for me. Could you ________ me ________ tonight?
2. Television was invented in the 1920s, but it didn't start to ________ ________ until the 1950s.
3. Math is very difficult for Mike. If he takes the advanced class, he'll most likely ________
4. I didn't think Todd could manage going to school and working at the same time, but he ________ ________
5. When Jim shows his terrible report card to his mother, she'll ________ ________.
6. Nancy's a hard worker. She never ________ ________.
7. The terrorists tried to ________ ________ the embassy.
8. A lot of changes have ________ ________ in the last few years.
9. The truck driver was lost, so he ________ ________ to the side of the road and checked his map.
10. Sam and Dave are so much faster on their bikes than I am that I always ________ ________.
11. Don't ask Ann; she doesn't ________ ________ about it.
12. I used to be able to trick my rich uncle into giving me money, but he's starting to ________ ________ ________ ________ to me.

13. ________ ________ ________ the balloons now; the party's going to start soon.
14. Bob started taking dance lessons, and he ________ ________ right away.
15. If you ________ ________ in your credit card payments, you'll damage your credit rating.
16. I usually ask Bill what he thinks before I buy a stock. He ________ ________ a lot ________ ________ ________ ________ investing.
17. I asked the photo lab to ________ ________ the photo ________ 300 percent.

**EXERCISE 33b** — Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.

1. Todd was fired after he ________ ________ his boss.
2. Todd is usually so easygoing. What did he ________ ________?
3. Karen thinks she's so clever, but I'm starting to ________ ________ her.
4. If you don't start working harder, you're going to fall behind ________ math.
5. Thanks for helping me out ________ my algebra homework.

EXERCISE 33c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The company started to sell chocolate toothpaste, but it never became popular. What didn't chocolate toothpaste do?

2. Sam has a lot of work to do before 5:00, so Lydia is doing some of it for him so that he won't have to work late. What is Lydia doing for Sam?

3. Nobody in the criminal gang thought they could steal an airplane, but they did. What did the gang do?

4. Ali doesn't usually do any work. He usually watches TV and listens to music. What does Ali usually do?

5. They sometimes destroy old buildings by making them explode. What do they sometimes do to old buildings?

6. The teacher frequently gets very angry at his students. What does the teacher frequently do?

7. Janice is aware of the problem because someone told her about it. What can you say about Janice and the problem?

8. The company was supposed to finish the project by September 1, but they didn't finish until November 14. What happened?

9. The professor asked you to explain how this situation happened. What did the professor ask you?

EXERCISE 33d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

come out, 32  fall out, 32  look into, 31  rule out, 31
cut out, 31   give away, 28  plan on, 31  sort out, 30
do without, 31 go around, 20  put off, 31  space out, 30
empty out, 32 go out, 32  put out, 30  stick out, 32
1. Jake was in jail when the crime was committed, so the police were able to ________ him ________ as a suspect.
2. My fiancee's father got sick suddenly, so we had to ________ ________ the wedding until later.
3. I was a little ________ ________ when Melanie disagreed with me.
4. Linda's going to ________ ________ getting her teeth bleached.
5. No one was surprised when the news ________ ________.
6. The family business had to be sold after the family members ________ ________ with each other.
7. I ________ ________ and forgot to put socks on this morning.
8. I felt like an idiot — I had to ________ ________ all day without socks on.
9. You can still eat this apple — just ________ ________ the bad part.
10. When we decided on the Bahamas for our honeymoon, we didn't ________ ________ a hurricane.
11. I was angry with my sister, but we talked and ________ ________ everything ________ ________.
12. Timmy told his mother that he hadn't eaten any cake, but the chocolate frosting on his face ________ ________ him ________ ________.
13. If you're studying a language, you can't ________ ________ a dictionary.
14. Jim's job is very dangerous, but if he ________ ________ for another year, he can retire with a pension.
15. These trash cans are getting full. Could you ________ ________ them ________ ________ please?
16. Put some more wood on the fire — it's starting to ________ ________.
34. FOCUS ON: pronunciation of two-and three-word phrasal verbs, 2

As we saw in Sections 5 and 6, phrasal verbs are sometimes accented on the verb and sometimes accented on the particle. It might seem difficult to know whether to accent the verb or the particle since it depends on whether the phrasal verb is separable or nonseparable, transitive or intransitive, or a two- or three-word phrasal verb; however, it boils down to this: always accent the particle after the verb unless the phrasal verb is a nonseparable, transitive, two-word phrasal verb — then accent the verb. Remember that some verbs can be both transitive and intransitive:

Nonseparable, two-word, intransitive
  stick ROUND
  float ROUND

Nonseparable, two-word, transitive
  STICK to
  STICK for
  STICK around
  FLOAT round

Nonseparable, three-word, transitive
  lead UP to

Separable, two-word, transitive
  take BACK
  do OVER

Separable, three-word, transitive
  put UP to

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do over</td>
<td>do over &amp; does over</td>
<td>doing over</td>
<td>did over</td>
<td>done over</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. do ... over p.v. When you do something over, you do it again in order to improve it or to correct mistakes.
   This is all wrong — it'll have to be done over.
   I got a bad grade on my paper, but the teacher said I could do it over.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>float around</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float around &amp; floats around</td>
<td>floating around</td>
<td>floated around</td>
<td>floated around</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **float around** p.v. [usually continuous] When something is floating around a place, it is there somewhere, though you are not sure exactly where.

   I don't know where the stapler is, but it's floating around here somewhere. The new schedule was floating around the office yesterday.

2. **float around** p.v. When a rumor or some information is floating around, it is being repeated and discussed among a group of people or within a place.

   There's a rumor floating around that the factory's going to be closed. Something about a change of management has been floating around lately. Have you heard anything?

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lead up to</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **lead up to** p.v. When one or more actions, events, or situations lead up to a final action, event, or situation, they precede and cause or partially cause it.

   Several minor battles led up to a full-scale war. The detective said, "Jake didn't shoot Hank for no reason — something led up to it."

2. **lead up to** p.v. When you lead up to something when you are speaking or writing, you gradually move toward an important point by saying or writing information that will support that point.

   In his speech, the President didn't immediately announce that he would run for a second term; he led up to it by recalling the accomplishments of his first term.

   I've been listening to you talk for thirty minutes. What's your point? What are you leading up to?

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>put up to</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **put up to** p.v. When you persuade or pressure people to do something that is illegal, dangerous, foolish, or unwise, you put them up to it.

   I didn't think it was a good idea to demand a raise, but my wife put me up to it.

   When Jake was arrested for shooting Hank, he said Raquel had put him up to it by threatening to tell the police about his other crimes.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stand for</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **stand for** p.v. When abbreviations, acronyms, or symbols represent longer words or groups of words, they stand for them.

   The "DC" in Washington, DC, stands for "District of Columbia."

   *Scuba" stands for "self-contained underwater breathing apparatus."
### 2. stand for p.v. When people or objects support, represent, or are identified with ideas, values, or beliefs, they stand for them.

This flag stands for freedom. He was a great man who stood for equal rights and opportunity for all people.

### 3. stand for p.v. When you will not stand for something that you think is illegal, improper, or unjust, you will not tolerate it or allow it to happen.

Cruelty to animals is one thing I will never stand for.

I told my son I wouldn't stand for that kind of language in this house.

### Infinitive present tense -ing form past tense past participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stick around</th>
<th>sticking around</th>
<th>stuck around</th>
<th>stuck around</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### 1. stick around p.v. [informal] When you stick around, you stay where you are.

Can you stick around? We're going to have lunch in an hour.

Don't go yet — stick around until Sarah gets here; she'd love to see you.

### stick to p.v. When one thing sticks to another, it remains attached to it.

The magnet sticks to the chalkboard because there's metal underneath.

I used the wrong glue, and the tiles didn't stick to the floor.

### stick to p.v. When you are speaking or writing and you stick to a certain subject, you talk or write about that subject only.

The teacher said, "Do this paper over and stick to the point — don't talk about 100 other things that aren't important."

In his news conference, the President stuck to the new tax legislation, but the reporters kept asking about the latest scandal.

### stick to p.v. When you stick to a certain belief, claim, policy, habit, plan, type of work, and so on, you continue as before, without change. Stick with is similar to stick to.

Jake claimed he was innocent of Hank's murder. He stuck to his alibi that he had been at the racetrack when the murder occurred.

After the audition, the director told me I was a terrible actor and that I should stick to singing.

### stick... to p.v. [informal] When you stick it to people, you deliberately try to tease, annoy, or embarrass them with an accusation, provocative statement, or difficult question.

Sam thinks the new manager is an idiot, and he likes to stick it to him.

One woman at the shareholders' meeting really stuck it to the president of the company.

She asked why he deserved a $19 million bonus even though the company had lost money that year and 4,000 workers had been laid off.
Infinitive | present tense | -ing form | past tense | past participle
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
take back | take back & takes back | taking back | took back | taken back

1. **take... back** (to) **p.v.** When you **take** something **back** or **take** something **back** to a place, you take it to where it was before.

   If you’re finished working on the car, don’t leave your tools here; **take** them **back** to the garage.

   Do you usually **take** the shopping carts **back** after you’ve put your groceries in **your car**?

2. **take... back** (to) **p.v.** When you **take** something that you have bought to the place where you bought it and ask to have it repaired, to exchange it for something else, or for the money you paid for it, you **take** it **back** or **take** it **back** to the place where you bought it.

   I have to **take back** these pants that I bought yesterday because the zipper’s already broken.

   That new TV that Nancy bought was a piece of junk; she **took** it **back** to the store and demanded her money back.

3. **take... back** (from) **p.v.** When you **take** something **back** or **take** something **back** from someone else, you accept it from the person you gave, sold, or lent it to.

   The guy at the store said he wouldn’t **take** my answering machine **back** because I had bought it on sale.

   The lady I bought this Persian rug from said she would be happy to **take** it **back** from me if I changed my mind.

4. **take... back** (to) **p.v.** When you **take** something that you have borrowed or **take** back something that you have borrowed to the person or place that you borrowed it from, you return it.

   Lydia borrowed this book from the library six months ago, and she still hasn’t **taken** it **back**.

   I need to **take** Jim’s lawn mower **back** to him.

5. **take... back** (to) **p.v.** When you **take** people **back** or **take** people **back** to a place where they were before, you go with them to that place.

   Our son was home from college for the summer, and we’re **taking** him **back** tomorrow.

   Mike got sick again, so we **took** him **back** to the hospital.

6. **take... back** **p.v.** When you **take** **back** something that you have said, you admit that what you said was untrue, unfair, or rude.

   That’s not true! You **take** that **back** right now!

   I’m sorry, that was very rude of me. I **take** it **back**.

260
7. **take ... back** (to) p.v. When something reminds you of a place where you were in the past or of something you experienced in the past, it **takes you back** or **takes you back** to a time in the past.

Looking through my high school year book sure **takes me back**.

My grandfather found his old uniform in the attic, and he said it **took him back** to when he was stationed in England during the war.

**EXERCISE 34a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. After being embarrassed last night, I’m going to ______________ a policy of minding my own business.
2. Have you seen the manual for this program? It’s ___________ the office somewhere, but I can’t find it.
3. It’s too bad you can’t ___________, I was just about to barbecue some chicken.
4. Look at these old pictures. They sure __________ me ________.
5. In my history class we studied the events that ________ World War II.
6. Rosa tried to return her engagement ring to her fiancé, but he wouldn’t __________ it.
7. The lawyer told his client to __________ the facts when she testifies.
8. The escaped prisoner was __________ to prison.
9. It’s not like Erik to do such a terrible thing. I think someone __________ him __________ it.
10. I hate it when it’s so humid that your clothes __________ your skin.
12. I felt terrible about what I said, and I __________ it immediately.
13. One of the guys at work is a real baseball nut from Chicago, so we love to __________ it him about how bad the Cubs are.
14. I don’t have Linda’s electric drill anymore; I __________ it ________ yesterday.
15. When people see our company’s logo, they know it __________ quality at a fair price.
16. The tailor didn't do what I wanted him to do with this dress. I'm going to _______ it _______ to him.
17. The restaurant manager told the bartender that she would not _______ drinking on the job.
18. Mark did such a bad job painting his house that he had to get a professional house painter to _______ it _______.
19. As soon as the company president mentioned the decrease in sales and the need to reduce labor costs, we knew what he was _______ _______ _______.
20. Don't leave these dirty dishes here; _______ them _______ to the kitchen.
21. Don't pay any attention to that rumor— it's been _______ for three years.

EXERCISE 34b — Review the explanation at the beginning of this section of how two- and three-word phrasal verbs are pronounced. Then, say each sentence in Exercise 34a aloud and circle the verb or particle that is accented.

EXERCISE 34c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Janice said I was a cheapskate, but she later admitted that it wasn't true. What did Janice do?
2. A number of situations and events helped to cause the Civil War. What did those situations and events do?
3. You've rewritten this story four times, and you're still not happy with it. What have you done to the story four times?
4. When I opened the box of cereal, it was full of bugs, so I returned it to the store. What did I do to the box of cereal?
5. Bill has a system for picking good stocks, and he always uses it. What does Bill do with his system?
6. Mr. Tucker's fifteen-year-old daughter wants to get a tattoo, but he absolutely will not allow it. What won't Mr. Tucker do?
7. Visiting his old high school brought back a lot of memories. What did visiting his old high school do to him?
8. Carlos came to my house and stayed for a while. What did Carlos do after he came to my house?

9. People in my office have been reading the latest issue of *Time* magazine and then giving it to someone else. What has the magazine been doing?

10. She asked me what "Ph.D." represents. What did she ask me?

11. I felt ridiculous dressing as a pink dinosaur for my nephew's birthday party, but my brother persuaded me to do it. What did my brother do?

**EXERCISE 34d, Review** — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- bite off, 27
- fall behind, 33
- plan ahead, 25
- shake up, 24
- catch on, 33
- goof around, 33
- pull off, 33
- stop over, 24
- come out, 32
- let in on, 26
- put together, 26
- wear off, 27

1. I asked Sam how his job interview ____________, and he said it went great.

2. I asked my history teacher what led up to the American Revolution, and he said the war ____________ as a result of several factors.

3. After the tranquilizer ____________, the elephant will wake up.

4. The new owners of the company said they planned to ____________ things ____________.

5. When you're an adult, you can't just think about today; you have to ____________.

6. Tonight I'm going to ____________ with some friends and watch the game.

7. Mark has a rich father, so Mark doesn't work; he just ____________ most of the time.

8. The finance minister ____________ a plan to revive the nation's economy.

9. That's a pretty big project. Are you sure you haven't ____________ more than you can chew?

10. The new system at the warehouse was a disaster, and we ____________ in filling orders.

11. I didn't sleep at all last night — I ____________ dancing until dawn, and I'm really beat.
12. People have been talking about picture phones for years, but they've never ________ ________.
13. The boss ________ me ________ the new strategy.
14. If you're not busy, would you like to ________ ________ for a while? We could watch TV or play cards.
15. The crooks tried to steal a 747 by pretending to be pilots, but they couldn't ________ it ________.
16. I finished my letter, but I can't ________ it ________ because I'm out of toner.

35. FOCUS ON: gerund phrasal verbs
In Section 10 we looked at gerunds as the objects of phrasal verbs. Now we will look at phrasal verbs as gerunds themselves. Like ordinary verbs, gerund phrasal verbs can be the subject of a sentence:

- Narrowing down the list will be difficult.

- We discussed narrowing down the list.

- We talked about narrowing down the list.

How and when phrasal verbs can be separated is unaffected by their use as gerunds:

- Narrowing it down will be difficult.
- We discussed narrowing it down.
- We talked about narrowing it down.
1. **fool around** p.v. When you waste time playing or doing silly or unimportant things, you **fool around. Goof around** is the same as **fool around.**  
   My son is lazy. He spends his time **fooling around** instead of looking for a job. My boss said, "I'm not paying you to **fool around** — get to work!"

2. **fool around (with)** p.v. When you **fool around** with something, you do something that may be dangerous or foolish.  
   Fooling around with drugs is pretty stupid.  
   You shouldn't **fool around** with the insides of your computer unless you know what you're doing.

3. **fool around** (with) p.v. [informal] When two people **fool around** or **fool around** with each other, they have sexual relations, even though one or both of them may be married to someone else or even though their families or society may not approve.  
   Sally's father caught her and Jim **fooling around** in the basement.  
   Her husband's been **fooling around** with his secretary, and everyone in town knows it.

---

1. **go by** p.v. When people **go by** a place or thing, they pass near that place or thing. When a thing **goes by** or **goes by** you, it passes near you.  
   We watched the parade **go by.**  
   I **went by** Jim's house to see if his car was in the driveway.

2. **go by** p.v. When you **go by** a place, you go there so that you can do something or get something.  
   Let's **go by** Paul's house to get his tools before we work on your car.  
   You can forget about **going by** the dry cleaner to pick up your stuff — it's closed.

3. **go by** p.v. When a period of time **goes by**, it passes.  
   I can't believe that thirty years have **gone by** since I got out of high school.  
   As time **went by**, Betty moved up in the company until she was the head of the finance department.

4. **go by** p.v. When you **go by** a policy or standard, you use it as a reference or a guide in making decisions and determining your behavior. When you **go by** the book, you follow rules, policies, or laws exactly.  
   **Going by** the book has always been my policy.  
   Jim told me to do one thing, and Tom told me to do another, but since Tom is the boss, I'm going to **go by** what he says.
5. **go by** p.v. When you **go by** a clock, you use it to tell the time.

Don’t **go by** the clock on the wall; it’s fast. **Go by** the clock on the desk.

No wonder I’m always late for work — the clock I’ve been **going by** is ten minutes slow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hold against</td>
<td>hold against &amp; holds against</td>
<td>holding against</td>
<td>held against</td>
<td>held against</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **hold** ...against p.v. When you **hold** things **against** people, you continue to blame them for something and continue to be upset about it.

Ten years ago I got a promotion that Ned thought he deserved, and he’s **held it against** me ever since.

Jane lost her job because of a mistake Bob made, but she doesn’t **hold it against** him.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>leave behind</td>
<td>leave behind &amp; leaves behind</td>
<td>leaving behind</td>
<td>left behind</td>
<td>left behind</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **leave** ...behind p.v. When you **leave** someone or something **behind**, you go to a different place.

The explorers **left** the mountains **behind** and entered the jungle.

The enemy soldiers retreated and **left behind** a city in ruins.

2. **leave** ...behind p.v. When you **leave** something or someone **behind**, you do not take them with you because you forgot or because you cannot or do not want to take them.

We packed too much luggage for our trip, so we had to **leave** some things **behind**.

**Leaving** our children **behind** at a gas station was pretty dumb.

3. **leave** ...behind p.v. When you move, learn, or work faster than others in your group, you leave them **behind**.

**My husband walks so fast that he always leaves me behind.**

If you don’t start working harder, you’re going to be **left behind**.

**Mark was so good at calculus that he soon left the rest of the class behind.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>live with</td>
<td>live with &amp; lives with</td>
<td>living with</td>
<td>lived with</td>
<td>lived with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **live with** p.v. When you **live with** someone, you live at the same address. When you say that one person **lives with** a person of the opposite sex, you mean that they live in the same place but are not married.

**Living with** my in-laws is driving me crazy.

**Mike’s been living with** his girlfriend for five years. Are they ever going to get married?

2. **live with** p.v. When you **live with** a disease or other problem, you endure or put up with it.
Living with this disease is not easy. It can’t change the situation, so I’ll just have to learn to live with it.

3. live with p.v. When you live with shame, guilt, or a painful memory, you continue with your life in spite of the shame, guilt, or painful memory.

Jake committed suicide rather than live with the shame of what he had done.

He said he couldn’t go on living with the knowledge that he had caused the death of 14 innocent people.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make of</td>
<td>make of &amp; makes of</td>
<td>making of</td>
<td>made of</td>
<td>made of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. make of p.v. What you make of something is your understanding or opinion of it.

So what did you make of the prime minister’s speech?

What he said was so strange that I didn’t know what to make of it.

narrow down

1. narrow down p.v. When you narrow down things or people in a list or group, you remove some of them so that the number of things or people is reduced.

All the candidates for the job have excellent qualifications. Narrowing the list down won’t be easy.

The detective narrowed the suspects down to the butler, the cook, and the maid.

trick into

1. trick into p.v. When you trick people into doing something, you persuade them to do something by fooling or deceiving them. Con into is similar to trick into.

The con artist tricked them into giving him their life savings.

I was an idiot to let Hank trick me into selling him my car for so little money.

EXERCISE 35a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The man who was killed in the accident ______ a wife and three children ________.

2. The prosecutor ______ Jake ______ admitting his guilt.

3. I took a job in Japan, and six years ______ ______ before I returned to the United States.

4. Paul’s been ______ ______ his parents since his house burned down.
5. There were fifty contestants at the beginning of the contest, but the judges _______ it _______ to five finalists.
6. Look at this strange letter I received. Read it and tell me what you _______ it.
7. I was my parents' favorite, and my brother still _______ it _______ me.
8. Frank's wife filed for divorce after she learned that he was _______ with her best friend.
9. The train always blows its whistle when it _______.
10. _______ diabetes means carefully monitoring your blood sugar.
11. _______ your friends and family _______ when you emigrate to a new country is very difficult.
12. Todd failed the test because he _______ all evening instead of studying.
13. Sergeant Jones was very strict when he was in the Army. He always _______ the book.
14. Don't let your kids _______ with cigarette lighters; they might start a fire.
15. How can you _______ yourself after the terrible thing you did?
16. Melanie has my biology book, so on the way to school I need to _______ her house to get it.
17. Mike wasn't ready for the advanced algebra class, and he was quickly _______ by the rest of the class.
18. I _______ my wristwatch — not the wall clock — because it's more accurate.

EXERCISE 35b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.
1. Her disease is incurable, so unfortunately she'll just have to learn to endure it. What will she have to do?
2. Jim and I worked on a project together, but Jim told everyone that he did all the work, and I'm still angry about it. How do I feel about what Jim did?
3. Sally and her sister's husband go to a motel sometimes during their lunch hour. What are they doing?

4. My father has a lot of horrible memories from the war. What does he have to do with them?

5. Bill made a list of cities that he might move to, and then he eliminated those that are too cold or have high crime rates. What did Bill do to his list of cities?

6. When the boss isn't in the office, you just play computer games and make personal phone calls. What do you do when the boss isn't in the office?

7. Hank told his sister that he needed money for his wife's doctor bills, but he really wanted money to buy drugs. What did Hank do to his sister?

8. The scientist asked her colleague his opinion of the test results. What did the scientist ask her colleague about the test results?

9. A police car passed me while I was driving. What did the police car do?

10. Susie's parents are going to take a vacation without her. What are Susie's parents going to do to her?

11. The last year passed quickly. What did the last year do?

EXERCISE 35c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to make all the phrasal verbs gerunds and to use them as subjects, objects, or objects of prepositions.

1. __________________________________________________
2. ___________________________________________________
3. ___________________________________________________
4. ___________________________________________________
5. ___________________________________________________
6. ___________________________________________________
7. ___________________________________________________
8. ___________________________________________________
EXERCISE 35d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

break up, 28  flip out, 29  lie around, 20  stand for, 34
come apart, 29  float around, 34  look out, 29  stay up, 20
do over, 34  hang around, 20  mess up, 28  stick around, 34
dead up, 20  lead up to, 34  run across, 29  take back, 34

1. The robber was only three feet away when he fired the gun at me, but the gun jammed and didn't fire. I ________.
2. Nancy said being sick wasn't so bad. She ________ in bed all day watching TV and eating ice cream.
3. I ________ if you drop my new camera in the swimming pool.
4. Dan's daughter was very sick last night, so Dan ________ all night with her.
5. This is outrageous! I will not ________ dishonesty in my company.
6. I told Mark that I would never speak to him again if he didn't ________ the nasty things he said.
7. If you're looking for Hank, go to the bar on the corner. That's where he ________.
8. A number of minor events will ________ the main event.
9. I had a very busy day planned, but I got a flat tire and that ________ everything.
10. My boss is a jerk! I worked for three days on this, and just because he found one mistake he made me ________ it ________.
11. Sam has been very depressed since he ________ with his girlfriend.
12. Have you seen the dictionary? It's ________ the office somewhere, but I can't find it.
13. Don't stand on that chair — it's ________
14. Do you really have to leave now? Why don't you ________ for a while.
15. Bill was talking about moving to Florida or Hawaii, but I’m not sure where he finally ________

16. Someone told me that Sarah is in town, but I haven’t ________ her yet.

36. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the particle **down**

The particle *down* is used in many phrasal verbs and has many meanings. *Down* can be used to say that something literally moves from a higher position to a lower position or from north to south:

- Bob went down the ladder.
- His friends came down from Canada.
- Sit down; dinner is ready.

that something decreases in size, intensity, quantity, or quality:

- Her fever has gone down to 100 degrees.
- The doctor gave her a sedative to calm her down.
- We’ve narrowed the list down to three choices.

that something or someone is fought, defeated, or overpowered:

- Hank backed down when he saw my shotgun.
- The police cracked down on street crime.

that something falls to the ground:

- The boy was running and fell down.
- The warehouse burned down.
- Open the door or I’ll break it down!

or that a process or activity is ending or has ended:

- My car broke down on the highway.

- The FBI tracked down the spy.

- The campaign is winding down.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>back down</td>
<td>back down &amp; backs down</td>
<td>backing down</td>
<td>backed down</td>
<td>backed down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **backdown** p.v. When one side in a disagreement stops making threats and lets the other have what it wants or do what it wants, the side that stops making threats **backs down**.
The dictator didn't back down after the United Nations Security Council voted in favor of sending in troops. The police officer tried to force me to pay him a bribe, but when I said I would report him to the chief of police, he backed down.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>calm down</td>
<td>calmed down</td>
<td>calming down</td>
<td>calmed down</td>
<td>calmed down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **calm ... down p.v.** When you calm down, you become less active, nervous, or upset. When you calm other people down, you do something to make them less active, nervous, or upset. Settle down is similar to calm down.

   - I was very nervous about the test, but I calmed down when I saw how easy it was.
   - Mike tried to calm his sister down after she had a fight with her husband.

2. **calm ... down p.v.** When a confused or violent situation becomes less confused or violent, it calms down. When you calm a confused or violent situation down, you make it less confused or violent and more calm. Settle down is similar to calm down.

   - The neighborhood where the riot occurred calmed down after the army started patrolling the streets.

   - A conference between the two sides was organized to try to calm the situation down.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fall down</th>
<th>fall down &amp; falls down</th>
<th>falling down</th>
<th>fell down</th>
<th>fallen down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **fall down p.v.** When people or things fall to the ground from a higher position, they fall down.

   - I slipped on some ice on the sidewalk and fell down.
   - All the dishes on that shelf will fall down if there's another earthquake.

2. **go down (to) p.v.** When you move to a lower level or position or from north to south, you go down or go down to that place. Go up is the opposite of go down.

   - Toronto is too cold, so we usually go down to Mexico in the winter.
   - Going down the mountain was a lot easier than going up.

   - The temperature went down to zero last night.
   - The crime rate in New York City has gone down.

3. **go down (to) p.v.** When something extends to a certain point that is farther south or at a lower elevation, it goes down to that point. Go up is the opposite of go down.

   - How far south does this road go down?
   - Does this road go down to the south side of town?

   - After dinner we went down to the basement and played ping pong.

272
4. **go down** p.v. When something **goes down** in a certain way, people react to or perceive it in this way.
   - The new no smoking policy didn't **go down** very well with the smokers in the office.
   - The judge's decision **went down** well with the prosecutor.

5. **go down** p.v. When a computer or computer network stops working because of a problem or because it has been disconnected, it **goes down**.
   - I couldn't withdraw any money at the bank because its computers had **gone down**.
   - If your computer terminal **goes down**, you can use the one in the next office.

6. **go down** p.v. When the sun goes below the horizon, it **goes down**.
   - After the sun **goes down**, it'll get a little cooler.
   - The sun **went down** at 8:34 last night.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lay down</td>
<td>lay down &amp; lays down</td>
<td>laying down</td>
<td>laid down</td>
<td>laid down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **lay... down** (on) p.v. When you **lay** something **down**, you put it on a horizontal surface. **Put down** is similar to **lay down**.
   - Marsha **laid** the tray **down**.
   - The police ordered Jake to **lay down** his gun and surrender.

2. **lay down** p.v. When you **lay down** a new law, policy, rule, and so on, you create and announce it.
   - The IRS **laid down** several new tax regulations.
   - Congress decided against **laying down** any new campaign financing laws.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>put down</th>
<th>put down &amp; puts down</th>
<th>putting down</th>
<th>put down</th>
<th>put down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **put ...down** p.v. When you **put** something **down**, you put something in your hand or something that you are carrying on a horizontal surface.
   - The suitcase was so heavy that I had to **put it down** and rest for a minute.
   - Susie, **put** that knife **down**. It's dangerous!

2. **put... down** p.v. When you **put** people **down**, you criticize them.
   - Jim hates his stepfather and **puts him down** constantly. I'm not inviting Sam to any more parties. I hate the way he **puts everyone down**.

**put-down** n. A **put-down** is an insult or critical remark.

- At the party Sam asked Nancy if she had made her dress from an old curtain.
- What a **put-down**!

3. **put... down** (on) p.v. When you **put money down** or **put money down** on something, you pay a portion of the cost of something you want to buy to be sure that it will still be available to you when you are able to pay the rest of the cost.
The real estate agent asked me how much money I want to put down on the house. I told her that I could put as much as $15,000 down.

4. put... down (on/for) p.v. When you add something to a list or other written material, you put it down or put it down on the list. When you add people to a list in order to assign something to them, you put them down or put them down for that assignment.

   Melanie’s collecting money for charity, so I told her to put me down for $50.
   I’m making a list of volunteers to help reelect Senator Dolittle. Can I put your name down on the list?

5. put... down (on) p.v. When an airplane puts down or a pilot puts an airplane down, the airplane lands.

   After the engine quit, the pilot looked for a place to put down.
   Fortunately, the pilot was able to put the plane down on a frozen lake.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>run down</td>
<td>run down &amp; runs down</td>
<td>running down</td>
<td>ran down</td>
<td>run down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. run down (to) p.v. When you move quickly to a lower level or place, you run down or run down to that place.

   Mike was running down the stairs when he fell and broke his leg.
   I saw someone trying to steal my car, and I ran down to the street to try to stop him.

2. run ... down p.v. When vehicles or people driving vehicles hit and injure or kill someone, they run that person down.

   The man was run down and killed by a speeding taxi.
   Ali was arrested after he ran three people down.

3. run down p.v. When you discuss or review items on a list from the first to the last, you run down the list.

   Let’s run down the Christmas list and decide what to give everyone.
   The teacher ran down the list of students and marked the ones who are failing.

rundown n. A rundown is a discussion or review of items on a list.

   The consultant gave the manager a rundown of the problems she had found.

4. run down p.v. When batteries or machines run down or are run down by someone, they gradually lose power or energy.

   Don’t leave the car lights on for too long when the car isn’t running or the battery will run down.
   What time is it? My watch ran down last night.

rundown part.adj. A person or thing that is rundown is exhausted, without power or energy.
Maybe I need to go to the doctor; I feel so rundown all the time.

rundown part.adj. A rundown building or neighborhood is in poor condition because it has not been maintained.

I went back to my old neighborhood, and I was shocked to see how rundown it had become.

Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sit down</td>
<td>sit down &amp; sits down</td>
<td>sitting down</td>
<td>sat down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. sit down p.v. When you sit down, you change from a standing position to a sitting position.
   The teacher told his students to sit down and open their books.
   I'm exhausted; I haven't sat down all day.

2. sit... down p.v. When you sit people down, you order them to sit, usually so that you can have a serious discussion.
   When I found marijuana in my daughter's purse, I sat her down and had a serious talk with her.
   The detective sat Hank down and began to interrogate him.

EXERCISE 36a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Heather thinks she's so high-class. She ___________ other people all the time.

2. The situation ___________ after the cease-fire was declared.

3. The sun comes up around 6:00, and it ___________ around 8:00.

4. Here's the list of candidates for the promotion. Let's ___________ the list and decide.

5. The old water tower ___________ during the storm.

6. You must be exhausted. Why don't you ___________ and take it easy?

7. I saw a tow truck looking for illegally parked cars, so I ___________ to my car and moved it.

8. My office is on the ninetieth floor, so sometimes it takes me fifteen minutes to ___________ to the lobby.

9. It's hard to write sympathy notes. I never know what to ___________.

275
10. The company tried to reduce benefits, but they __________ when the union threatened to go on strike.

11. The Appalachian Trail starts in Maine and __________ all the way __________ to Georgia.

12. Don’t __________ the baby __________ there — she might fall.

13. I was furious about what Dan said, and I __________ him __________ and told him exactly what I thought about it.

14. If you __________ $100,000 __________ on that house, you won’t need a very large mortgage.

15. What are you so worried about? Just __________ — everything’s going to be all right.

16. The union’s proposal to reduce the workweek to four days didn’t __________ __________ well with the company.

17. The Food and Drug Administration is expected to __________ __________ a new set of regulations regarding seafood inspection.

18. The price of computers has __________ __________ dramatically in the last few years.

19. Those boxes are too heavy for you. __________ __________ and let me carry them for you.

20. A pedestrian was __________ __________ by a truck on Lincoln Avenue.

21. The stock exchange had to stop trading when its computers __________ __________.

22. __________ a jet __________ on an aircraft carrier at night is very difficult.

23. Someone left this flashlight on all night, and the batteries have __________ __________.

**EXERCISE 36b** — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The jockey calmed down. (the horse, it)
2. The mechanic laid down. (her tools, them)

3. I put down. (my books, them)

4. The taxi ran down. (the traffic cop, him)

EXERCISE 36c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The car dealer reviewed the list of the car’s options with me. What did the car dealer do?

2. In Question 1, what did the car dealer give me?

3. The king visited the area where the two tribes were fighting, and the fighting stopped. What did the king do to the area?

4. The houses in this part of town are in very bad condition. How can you describe this part of town?

5. Management's plan got a good reaction from the workers. What impression did the plan make on the workers?

6. Frank told Nancy that she was low-class. What did Frank do to Nancy?

7. In Question 6, what was Frank's comment?

8. Sam sat in a chair. What did Sam do?
9. The company’s management stopped threatening to fire the workers and agreed to raise their wages. What did the company do?

10. The dentist’s secretary wrote my name in her appointment book. What did the secretary do?

11. The soldiers stopped fighting and put their rifles on the ground. What did the soldiers do with their rifles?

12. You slipped and landed on the ground. What did you do?

EXERCISE 36d. Review — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- burned up, 22
- cleaned out, 32
- emptied out, 32
- left out, 32
- locked in, 30
- punched in, 30
- punched out, 30
- put out, 30
- put up, 22
- plugged up, 22
- spaced out, 30
- sorted out, 30
- torn off, 27
- shaken up, 24
- paid up, 22

1. David's totally ___________ today. He has even forgotten his girlfriend's name.
2. I like this coat, but I don't know what size it is because the tag's ___________.
3. I don't know why that guy from the collection agency called me — all my bills are ___________.
4. Nicole hasn't ___________ yet. Either she's late for work or she forgot.
5. Mark borrowed Bob's car and had an accident, and Mark's really ___________ about it.
6. The manager wondered why I wasn't working, but after I told her I was ___________, she said it was okay.
7. Take this medicine. It's great for ___________ noses.
8. Do you have a key? I'm ___________ and can't get out.
9. Do you have a key? I'm ___________ and can't get in.
10. Jane's really ___________. She just found out that her brother was murdered.
11. Jim's socks are mixed with his brother's socks. They're not ___________.
12. No one wants to sit with me in the school lunchroom, and it makes me feel __________ ________.
13. My mother was really __________ ________ when Aunt Kathy said our house wasn’t very clean.
14. Why isn’t the basement __________ ________ yet? I told you I’m tired of looking at this junk!
15. There’s nothing in the room. It’s all __________ ________.

EXERCISE 36e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

blow up, 33内科 come about, 33内科 make of, 35内科 pull off, 33内科
care for, 31内科 do without, 31内科 make out, 29内科 put off, 31内科
catch on, 33内科 go out, 32内科 narrow down, 35内科 stick to, 34内科
clean out, 32内科 lock out, 30内科 plan on, 31内科 wash up, 30内科

1. Several bodies from the crashed plane __________ ________ the day after the crash.
2. After mother had a stroke, we had to hire nurses to __________ ________ her.
3. My father was seventy-two years old when he got his first computer, but he __________ ________ right away, and now he uses it all the time.
4. The President had a lot of big plans when he took office, but few of them ever __________ ________.
5. Mark wasn’t successful as a singer. He should have __________ ________ songwriting — that’s what he does best.
6. How did you __________ ________ on your final exam?
7. I had to crawl in through the window after my daughter closed the door and __________ me ________ of the house.
8. This situation is very strange. I don’t know what to __________ ________ it.
9. I have to finish my project tonight, and I haven’t even started it. I __________ it ________ until the last minute.
10. No one thought Frank could run a mile in less than four minutes, but he __________ it ________.
11. I really depend on my laptop computer when I travel on business. I don’t know how I ever
_______ _______ it.

12. George and Linda __________ ________ for three years before they got married.

13. Several people were killed when the bomb __________ ________.

14. Bob and Marsha aren’t_________ ________ spending more than $250,000 for their
new house.

15. My divorce settlement cost me a lot of money. It almost _______ me ________.

16. The FBI started with a list of six suspects, but they ________ it _________ to two.

37. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs used as nouns, 3

When phrasal verbs are used as nouns, the verb is usually in the infinitive form; however, a small number use a different form of the verb.

For example, left over and grow up use the past participle:

- We ate leftovers the day after Thanksgiving.
- The grown-ups sat at one table, and the children sat at another.

talk to and go over use the -ing form:

- Mr. Young gave his son a good talking-to.
- Before I buy this car, I’m going to give it a good going-over.

and grown-up uses the past participle:

- Only grown-ups are allowed to drive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>brush off</td>
<td>brush off &amp; brushes off</td>
<td>brushing off</td>
<td>brushed off</td>
<td>brushed off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. brush ... off p.v. When you brush people off, you ignore them or refuse to listen to them because you are not interested in or do not like what they are saying.

- My boss just brushes me off when I try to tell her how to increase our profits.
- The reporters tried to ask him some questions, but he brushed them off.

2. brush-off n. When you give people the brush-off, you ignore them or refuse to listen to them because you are not interested in or do not like what they are saying.

- The boss just gave me the brush-off when I tried to give him some advice.

When you brush off a critical remark or problem, you ignore it
and continue as before without letting it affect you.

I told Dr. Smith that he had made a mistake, but he brushed it off.

My father's cholesterol is very high, but he just brushes it off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come on</td>
<td>come on</td>
<td>come on</td>
<td>come on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present tense</td>
<td>-ing form</td>
<td>past tense</td>
<td>past participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come on &amp; comes on</td>
<td>coming on</td>
<td>came on</td>
<td>come on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **come on** p.v. When an electrical device or machine **comes on**, it begins to operate, usually automatically. **Go off** is the opposite of **come on**.
   - It was so cold that the heat **came on** last night.
   - When you open the refrigerator door, the light **comes on** automatically.

2. **come on** p.v. When a television or radio program **comes on**, it begins.
   - Do you know when the news will **come on**?
   - The late movie **comes on** at 1:00 A.M.

3. **come on** p.v. When you want to encourage people to do something or when you want them to do something quickly, you **say "Come on!"**
   - Believe me, you're going to love this garlic ice cream. **Come on**, try it!
   - **Come on!** I can't wait all day.

4. **come on** p.v. [informal] When you think that people have done or said something improper or unreasonable, you **say "Come on."**
   - Tom didn't study for one minute, and you're telling me he got 100 on the test? Oh, **come on**.
   - Hey, **come on!** I told you not to do that again.

5. **come on** p.v. [always continuous] When you begin to feel a headache or an illness developing, you feel the headache or illness **coming on**.
   - I might be sick tomorrow; I feel something **coming on**.
   - I feel a headache **coming on**. Do you have any aspirin?

6. **come on** p.v. When you **come on** a certain way, you speak or deal with people in that way.
   - Paul needs to learn to be more of a gentleman. He **comes on** too strong, and women don't like that.
   - Bob **comes on** kind of arrogant, but he's actually a nice guy.

7. **come on** (to) p.v. [informal] When you **come on** to people, you approach them and try to interest them in romance or sex.
   - Toad **came on** to Judy at the party, and she told him to get lost.
   - I can't stand that guy Ned. He's always **coming on** to me.

**come-on** n. [informal] A provocative comment or action intended to interest a person in romance or sex is a **come-on**.
Todd uses the same come-on with all the girls, and it never works.

come-on n. A discount or special offer designed to get people to buy something is a come-on.

The bank is offering a free VCR as a come-on if you open an account with them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cover up</td>
<td>cover up &amp; covers up</td>
<td>covering up</td>
<td>covered up</td>
<td>covered up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **cover...** up p.v. When you cover something completely, you **cover it up**.

I covered the cake up so no bugs would land on it.

covered up part.adj. After something has been completely covered, it is covered up. Is the meat covered up? I don't want flies to land on it.

2. **cover...** up p.v. When you **cover up** a crime, you do something to try to prevent other people from learning of it.

There's no point in trying to cover up the crime. Too many people already know about it.

The mayor was accused of covering up his ties to organized crime.

cover-up n. Something you do in order to prevent a crime from becoming known is a cover-up.

The mayor denied being part of a cover-up and claimed he was innocent.

hang out

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hang out</th>
<th>hang out &amp; hangs out</th>
<th>hanging out</th>
<th>hung out</th>
<th>hung out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **hang out** p.v. [informal] When you **hang out** at a place, you spend time there without any important purpose. **Hang around** is similar to hang out.

Doesn't Nancy have a job? It seems as if she hangs out at the beach every day.

I don't have anywhere to go. Do you mind if I hang out here for a while?

hangout n. [informal] A hangout is a place where you spend time without any important purpose.

The police closed the bar, saying it was a hangout for crooks and gang members.

leave over left over

1. **leave over** p.v. [always passive] When something is left over, it remains after people have used or taken as much of it as they need or want.

I guess I made too much food; look how much is left over.

I paid all my bills and had only $17 left over.
leftover part.adj. Something that is left over remains after people have used or taken as much of it as they need or want.

You can have this leftover pasta for lunch tomorrow.

leftovers n. [always plural] Food items that remain uneaten after people have finished eating are leftovers.

Leftovers again? When are we going to have something different for dinner?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Let down</td>
<td>let down &amp; lets down</td>
<td>letting down</td>
<td>let down</td>
<td>let down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. let ... down p.v. When you promise people you will do something and then fail to do it, you let them down.

My son promised to stop using drugs, but he let me down.

I really need you to help me move tomorrow. Please don’t let me down.

let down part.adj. When people promise you they will do something and then fail to do it, you feel let down. When you are disappointed because you cannot have something you want to have, because you cannot do something you want to do, or because something is less exciting than you expected it to be, you feel let down.

You broke your promise to me that you would quit smoking. I feel very let down.

letdown n. When you say that something is a letdown, you are disappointed because you cannot have or cannot do something you want to or because something is less exciting than you expected it to be.

I had tickets for the fifth game of the World Series, but my team lost in four games. What a letdown.

After the way everyone talked about how great the movie was, I thought it was something of a letdown.

payoff pay off & pays off paying off paid off paid off

1. pay ... off p.v. When you pay off money that you owe or pay off the person you owe the money to, you pay all the money that you owe.

I wasn’t happy with the people we hired to paint our house. I paid them off and told them not to return.

It took ten years, but I finally paid off my school loan.

paid off part.adj. After you pay all the money that you owe to someone or to a lending institution, the debt or loan is paid off.

I made my last payment yesterday, and now my car loan is paid off.

2. pay ... off p.v. When you pay people money so that they will do something illegal or allow you to do something illegal, you pay them off.
The politician tried to cover up the crime by paying off the witnesses. Don't expect the police in this city to do anything about gambling — they're being paid off.

payoff n. A payoff is money paid to someone to do something illegal or to allow you to do something illegal.

The chief of police was videotaped accepting a payoff.

3. pay off p.v. When something you do pays off, it is successful and is worth the effort you made.

The restaurant changed its menu, and it really paid off. Business increased by 30 percent.

payoff n. A benefit you gain because of an effort you make is a payoff.

The payoff is knowing that she has helped other people.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. talk to p.v. When you talk to people, you have a conversation with them.

Are you talking to me?

I don't like Bob. He talks to me like I'm some kind of idiot.

talking-to n. A talking-to is a serious discussion in which you scold or lecture someone.

EXERCISE 37a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I forgot to ______ the chicken ______ after we finished dinner, and the cat ate it.
2. A patient died after Dr. Smith gave her the wrong medicine, and the hospital tried to ______ it ______.
3. I don't care what Nancy thinks of me. If she criticizes me, I'll just ______ her ______.
4. I worked for nine years to get my Ph.D., and now I can't find a job in my field. All that work sure didn't ______ ______.
5. set the thermostat so that the air conditioner________if it gets over eighty degrees. 6.
You can trust Erik to keep his promises. He won’t________you_________. 7.
I didn’t like that car salesman we talked to last night. He________too strong. 8.
I called Heather last night, but I didn’t________her; she was in the shower. 9.
in bars isn’t my idea of fun. 10. I tried to apologize to Jane, but she just__________me______and continued walking. 11.
I want to________my mortgage_________early, so I’m making two payments every month. 12.
Look at TV Guide to see when the show__________. 13. Karen sure isn’t shy. Did you see how she was___________to my brother at the party? 14.
After Thanksgiving so much turkey will be___________that we’ll be eating it for two weeks. 15.
I hope I’m not getting sick. I feel a cold_________. 16. The contractor was accused of__________city officials in exchange for contracts.

EXERCISE 37b — Complete the sentences with nouns from this section.

1. You need to finish school. The___________won’t come for years, but it’s worth it.
2. I didn’t have time to make anything for dinner, so we’re having__________tonight.
3. This place isn’t as beautiful as it looked in the pictures. What a__________.
4. Judy isn’t interested in anything I say; she always gives me the__________.
5. The senator was convicted of taking a__________.
6. The low interest rate the credit card company offers if you switch to their card is just a
   ___________. After six months they increase it to 18 percent.
7. The politician was accused of being part of a__________.

285
EXERCISE 37c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Ned spends a lot of time at Joe’s Diner relaxing and talking to his friends. What does Ned do at Joe’s Diner?

2. In Question 1, what is Joe’s Diner to Ned?

3. Mark said something that I thought was ridiculous, and I told him to be serious and reasonable. What did I say to Mark?

4. You had $400, but after you went shopping, you had $100 remaining. What did you have?

5. My favorite TV show begins at 9:00. What does my favorite show do at 9:00?

6. Dan promised his daughter that he would take her to the circus, but he couldn’t get off work that day. What did Dan do to his daughter?

7. Maria is going to pay her last car loan payment. What is she going to do to her car loan?

8. In Question 7, how would you describe Maria’s car loan after she makes the last payment?

9. Nicole spoke with her brother about his drinking problem. What did she do to her brother?

10. In Question 9, what did Nicole give to her brother?

11. The heat in our house starts to operate when the temperature gets below sixty degrees. What does the heat in our house do?

12. For lunch you ate the spaghetti that your family didn’t eat the night before. What did you eat for lunch?

13. The restaurant owner gave the health inspector $200 to ignore the rats in the kitchen. What did the restaurant owner do to the health inspector?

14. In Question 13, what was the $200 that the restaurant owner gave the health inspector?
15. The head of the health department tried to keep the payoffs in his department a secret. What did the head of the health department do to the payoffs?

16. In Question 15, what would you call the head of the health department’s attempt to keep the payoffs in his department a secret?

17. Linda complained to the city about the garbage in the streets, but the woman she talked to wasn’t interested and told her to write to the mayor. What did the woman Linda talked to do?

18. In Question 17, what did the woman that Linda talked to give her?

19. Timmy’s friend wanted him to walk faster, and he told Timmy to hurry. What did Timmy’s friend say to Timmy?

20. Joe told me again and again how good his favorite restaurant is, but when I went there, I didn’t think it was that good. What was my visit to the restaurant?

21. In Question 20, how did I feel after my visit to Joe’s favorite restaurant?

**EXERCISE 37d, Review** — Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- blowup, 33
- get-together, 26
- grown-up, 10
- put-down, 36
- breakup, 28
- giveaway, 28
- lockout, 30
- rundown, 36
- cutout, 31
- going-over, 26
- lockout, 29

1. The movie critic told the director that watching his new movie was worse than going to the dentist.

   That was quite a ___________.

2. The ___________ of the huge company created several smaller companies.

3. We’re having a little ___________ tonight. Would you like to come?

4. Only _________ are allowed to drink alcohol.

5. The ___________ ended after the workers agreed to a 10 percent pay increase.

6. I heard a big _________ in Nancy’s office. I wonder what the problem was.

7. The drug dealers had a _________ on every corner.
8. Timmy told his mother that he hadn't eaten any cookies, but he had chocolate all over his face, so she knew he was lying. The chocolate on his face was the __________.

9. Before you spend $13,000 on a used car, I suggest that you give it a thorough _______.

10. Carlos made paper __________ shaped like dinosaurs.

11. The police chief gave the mayor a _______ of the previous month's crime statistics.

EXERCISE 37e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- calm down, 36
- catch on, 33
- do away with, 31
- empty out, 32
- fall down, 36
- fool around, 35
- go by, 35
- go down, 36
- hold against, 35
- leave behind, 35
- make of, 35
- narrow down, 35
- pull off, 33
- put down, 36
- sit down, 36

1. My best friend, Heather, really likes Mike, but Mike asked me to go to the dance with him. I hope Heather doesn't _______ it _______.

2. The real estate agent has shown us several houses, but we've _______ it _______ to three that we really like.

3. Mike took the wastebaskets outside and _______ them _______.

4. Before we go to the beach, let's _______ _______ Tom's house and see if he wants to come with us.

5. Maria's a fast learner. She had never played chess before, but she _______ _______ right away.

6. No one thought I could get 100 on the test, but I _______ it _______.

7. Nothing like that ever happened before. I didn't know what to _______ _______ it.

8. You can really screw up your computer with that program, so don't _______ _______ with it unless you know what you're doing.

9. Pets aren't allowed where we're moving, so we're going to have to _______ our dog _______.

10. Polio has been almost completely _______ _______.

288
11. ________ ________ that jerk for fifteen years was horrible.
12. Joe was so upset after the accident that it was twenty minutes before he ________ ________
enough
to tell the police officer what happened.
13. Be careful on that icy sidewalk — you don't want to ________ ________ and break your neck.
14. In the summer the sun doesn't ________ ________ until 9:00 in the evening.
15. I'm going to ________ ________ $4,000 ________ on my new car and finance the rest.
16. I've been standing all day. I need to ________ ________.

38. FOCUS ON: the verb *keep* and adverbs and adverbials showing degrees of variability

**Phrasal verbs with keep**

Several phrasal verbs are based on the verb *keep*, and it is important to understand that the essential meaning of *keep* in these phrasal verbs is *no change*. As you study these verbs, remember than in each meaning of each verb something is not changing, something is continuing in the same direction or in the same manner, or something is staying in the same place or in the same condition.

**Adverbs and adverbials showing degrees of variability**

A variety of adverbs and adverbial groups of words that together function as adverbs are used to modify phrasal verbs that relate to something variable, such as distance, time, cost, speed, temperature, amount, or quantity.

Adverbs and adverbials allow the speaker to be more precise about what is being measured — to say whether it was a little or a lot or to be precise about exactly how much. But the verb must be something that is variable. In cannot be something either/or, such as shut off, for example (a TV is either on or off — it cannot be in between). Adverbs and adverbials are used to strengthen the meaning of the verb:

- He fell asleep on the train and went **well** beyond his stop.
- She fell **way** behind in her work when she was sick.
- Keep **far** away from the fire.

**to weaken the meaning of the verb:**

- I went **a bit** over my budget.
- Keep **slightly** to the right on that road.
- He fell **a little** behind.
- The meeting may run **somewhat** over.
or to be exact:

We planned two weeks ahead.

Go three floors up.

Sometimes, in informal English, way is repeated for extra emphasis:

What Jim said went way, way, way beyond impolite — it was outrageous.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>keep at</th>
<th>keep away</th>
<th>keep down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>present tense</td>
<td>-ing form</td>
<td>past tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep at</td>
<td>keep at &amp; keeps at</td>
<td>keeping at</td>
<td>kept at</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **keep at** p.v. When you **keep at** it, you continue with an activity even though it may be difficult. When you say "**Keep at it**" to people, you encourage them to finish with an activity that is difficult.

   I know this work is difficult, but you have to **keep at** it.

   **Keep at** it, you’re almost finished.

2. **keep away** (from) p.v. When you **keep away** or **keep away** from people, you do not come close to them or associate with them. When you **keep away** or **keep away** from things, you do not touch them, come close to them, or use them. When you **keep away** or **keep away** from places, you do not come close to them or go to them.

   Mark was very sick yesterday, so everyone **kept away** from him.

   We’re going to eat dinner in a few minutes, so **keep away** from those cookies.

   That’s a bad neighborhood, so **keep away** from it,

2. **keep... away** (from) p.v. When you **keep** people or things **away** or **keep** them **away** from something or someone else, you do not allow them to come close to or associate with someone or come close to or touch something.

   That dog is dangerous, so **keep it away**.

   Paul has an alcohol problem, so **keep him away** from the bar at the party tomorrow.

3. **keep... down** p.v. When you **keep** the cost, quantity, or amount of something **down**, you keep it at a low level.

   The company tried to **keep** its prices **down**.

   They wanted a small wedding, but they have such large families that it was hard to **keep** the number of guests **down**.

4. **keep... down** p.v. When you **keep** the volume of noise, music, or conversation **down**, you keep it at a low level. When people are being noisy and you want them to be quieter, you tell them to **keep it down**.
Will you please keep it down; I'm trying to study.

You kids can watch TV, but keep the volume down — your mother is taking a nap.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>keep from</td>
<td>keep from &amp; keeps from</td>
<td>keeping from</td>
<td>kept from</td>
<td>kept from</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **keep from** p.v. When you keep from doing something, you do not do it even though it is hard not to.
   - I was so angry that I don't know how I kept from punching that guy in the nose.
   - The movie was so sad that I couldn't keep from crying.

2. **keep... from** p.v. When you keep people from doing something, you stop them from doing it.
   - Jim's girlfriend's parents don't like him, and they try to keep him from seeing her.
   - When I was young, my poor health kept me from doing a lot of things the other kids did.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>keep off</th>
<th>keep off &amp; keeps off</th>
<th>keeping off</th>
<th>kept off</th>
<th>kept off</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **keep off** p.v. When you keep off something, you do not walk or stand on it. When you keep other people or things off something, you do not allow them to walk or stand on it.
   - The sign says "Keep off the grass." You should keep your kids off the streets and in school.

2. **keep... off** p.v. When you keep off drugs, cigarettes, or other addictive substances, you do not use them. When you keep people off drugs, cigarettes, or other addictive substances, you prevent them from using them.
   - Since getting out of jail, Hank has been able to keep off drugs.
   - Ned is a nice guy as long as you can keep him off booze.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>keep on</th>
<th>keep on &amp; keeps on</th>
<th>keeping on</th>
<th>kept on</th>
<th>kept on</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **keep on** p.v. When you keep on doing something, you continue doing it.
   - I told her to be quiet, but she just kept right on talking.
   - Don't stop — keep on going.

2. **keep... on** p.v. When you keep people on at their place of employment, you continue to employ them.
   - The company decided against laying all the workers off and will instead keep a few on to maintain equipment until business improves.
   - Everyone on the hotel staff was fired after the hotel went out of business, except for two guys who were kept on to clean and paint the building.
### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>keep to</td>
<td>keep to &amp; keeps to</td>
<td>keeping to</td>
<td>kept to</td>
<td>kept to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **keep... to** p.v. When you keep information to yourself, you do not tell anyone.
   - This is a secret, so keep it to yourself.
   - I wish she would keep her racist comments to herself; I don’t want to hear them.

2. **keep... to** p.v. When you keep something to a certain cost, quantity, or amount, you do not let the cost, quantity, or amount go higher than that level.
   - Here’s my credit card, but keep your spending to a minimum — don’t go crazy with it.
   - The room doesn’t hold a great many people, so we have to keep the number of guests to 200.

3. **keep to** p.v. When you keep to the right or left, you continue moving to the right or left.
   - When you pass a big red barn on the highway, keep to the right; the exit is right after the barn.
   - Faster cars are supposed to keep to the left.

### keep up

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>keep up</th>
<th>keep up &amp; keeps up</th>
<th>keeping up</th>
<th>kept up</th>
<th>kept up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **keep... up** p.v. When you keep an activity up, you continue doing it.
   - Leopards can run extremely fast, but they can’t keep it up longer than a minute or two.
   - I told you to stop doing that. If you keep it up, I’m going to get angry.

2. **keep up** (with) p.v. When you are in a group that is studying, working, and so on, and you are able to learn or work at the same rate as the others, you keep up or keep up with the group. Fall behind is the opposite of keep up.
   - Lydia missed several days of school last month, and now she’s having a hard time keeping up with the rest of the class.
   - The assembly line was going so fast that no one could keep up.

3. **keep up** (with) p.v. When you keep up or keep up with people or things that are moving, you are able to move at the same rate. Fall behind is the opposite of keep up.
   - Bob walks so fast that it’s hard to keep up with him.
   - The wounded soldiers couldn’t keep up with the rest of the army.

4. **keep up** (with) p.v. When you can understand and respond to a situation that is changing, you are able to keep up with the situation.
   - Computer technology is changing so fast. How can anyone keep up with it?
   - Jane always has some new idea. I can’t keep up with her.
5. *keep... up* p.v. When people or things *keep you up*, they prevent you from going to bed, or if you are in bed, they prevent you from falling asleep.

   - Ned just would not leave last night; he *kept me up* until 2:00 in the morning.
   - That noisy party across the alley *kept me up* all night.

**EXERCISE 38a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The student's excuse for not doing his homework was so ridiculous that his teacher couldn't ________ ________ laughing.
2. What I'm going to tell you is highly confidential, so ________ ________ yourself.
3. The baby's crying ________ Judy ________ half the night.
4. Don't quit now — you're almost finished. ________ ________ it.
5. The company increased its profits by ________ costs ________.
6. I've tried to quit smoking a hundred times, but I just can't ________ ________ cigarettes longer than a day.
7. Slower traffic should ________ ________ the right.
8. Now that I live in New York, I can't ________ ________ with local news in my hometown.
9. Sally is really angry at your brother, so it would be a good idea to ________ him ________ from her.
10. My algebra class is too difficult for me. I can't ________ ________.
11. You're going to have to walk faster than that if you want to ________ ________ with us.
12. Please ________ your dog ________ our lawn.
13. If you don't ________ ________ your exercise program, you're going to gain all the weight back.
14. Could you ________ ________ the music ________? Your mother's trying to sleep.
15. Parents try to ________ ________ their children ________ making mistakes, but sometimes it isn't easy.
16. If you ________ ________ eating so much butter and so many eggs, you're going to have a heart attack.
17. The new owner said the company was losing too much money to _______ all the workers _______ and that some would have to be laid off.
18. Look at the prices on this menu! Let’s try to _______ it _______ a hundred bucks, okay?
19. I don’t want to talk to you ever again, so _______ _______ from me!

**EXERCISE 38b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. My father asked me to speak more quietly. What did my father ask me to do?
2. I told the travel agent that we have only $4,000 to spend on our vacation, so she has to make sure the cost doesn’t go over that. What did I ask the travel agent to do?
3. My geometry class is so boring that I can’t stop myself from falling asleep. What can’t I do in my geometry class?
4. My teacher told me that calculus is difficult but that I have to continue trying to understand it. What did my teacher tell me?
5. The political situation in Washington changes every day, and it’s hard to understand what is happening. What is it hard to do?
6. Sarah and I were running. I quit after three miles, but she continued running. What did Sarah do?
7. You’ve got to remain at a great distance from this area because it is radioactive. What have you got to do about the radioactive area?
8. Heather thinks Mike isn’t telling her everything. What does Heather think about Mike?
9. Janice got excellent grades in her first year of college. I hope she can continue to do well. What do I hope Janice can do?
10. I asked my husband not to let the children near my computer. What did I ask my husband?
11. The economist said it’s important not to let inflation go higher. What did the economist say?
12. Bill hasn’t used drugs for five years. What has Bill done?
13. My son is eighteen, so I can't stop him if he wants to join the Army. What can't I do to my son?

14. Sarah's having a little trouble in school. It's hard for her to stay at the same level as the other students. What is hard for Sarah?

**EXERCISE 38c** — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

1. ____________________________
2. ____________________________
3. ____________________________
4. ____________________________
5. ____________________________
6. ____________________________
7. ____________________________
8. ____________________________

**EXERCISE 38d, Review** — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verbs</th>
<th>section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>back down</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brush off</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calm down</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come about</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come on</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go down</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go around</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang out</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know about</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay down</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave over</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run down</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit down</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk to</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Raul is constantly criticizing me, but I usually just _______ him _______.
2. I can barely hear this radio. The batteries must be _______ _______.
3. When the electricians went on strike, the entire construction project _______ _______ schedule.
4. Jake's claim that he accidentally shot Tony six times didn't _______ _______ well with the jury.
5. The dictator _______ _______ after three aircraft carriers started sailing toward his country.
6. I need to check the furnace. The temperature got below sixty degrees last night, but the heat didn't ______ _______.

7. A big, old tree ___________ last night and smashed a hole in our roof.
8. ______ _______ — there's nothing to get upset about.
9. Several major changes in society ___________ as a result of the industrial revolution.
10. Are you going to do any work at all today or will you just ______ ________?
11. Don't waste your time asking Erik; he doesn't ______ anything _______ it.
12. Timmy's mother ______ him ______ and talked to him about his bad grades.
13. How much money was ______ after you finished paying for everything?
14. You can _______ those papers _______ over there.
15. I don't have anything to do today. I'm just going to ______ ______ here and relax.
16. I'm so mad at her. I'll never ______ _______ her again!

39. FOCUS ON: passive phrasal verbs, 3
As we saw in Section 13, the passive is formed with be and the past participle of the verb. A number of modal auxiliary verbs and similar constructions are commonly used with be:

The meat will be chopped up by the cook.
Mark would never be picked up at the airport by a limo.
This mess can be straightened out only by me.
Such a huge country couldn't be taken over easily.
Her name should be crossed off the list.
The gas tank ought to be filled up before you return the car.
The concert might be sold out.
Your paychecks may not be picked up until after 5:00.
The enemy must be wiped out.
I have to be picked up on time.
The fruit has to be chopped up with a clean knife.
This screwup had better be straightened out soon or you will be fired!
This stuff was supposed to be taken over to Nancy's house yesterday.
Recall from Section 28 that phrasal verbs in the passive cannot be separated by an object because in a passive sentence there is no object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chop up</td>
<td>chop up &amp; chops up</td>
<td>chopping up</td>
<td>chopped up</td>
<td>chopped up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. chop... up p.v. When you chop something up, you cut it into small pieces with a knife or other sharp instrument.

   - Does this meat have to be chopped up?
   - Chop it up into pieces about half an inch in size.

chopped up part.adj. After something has been cut into small pieces with a knife or other sharp instrument, it is chopped up.

   - Mix the chopped-up onions and celery with the mayonnaise.

2. cross off
   cross off & crosses off | crossing off | crossed off | crossed off |

1. cross... off p.v. When you cross something off a list, you draw a line through it to remove it from the list.

   - Why was my name crossed off the invitation list?
   - Crossing it off was a mistake.

crossed off part.adj. After a line has been drawn through something on a list to remove it from the list, it is crossed off.

   - Here's the grocery list, but don't get this crossed-off stuff—I already got it.

3. fill up
   fill up & fills up | filling up | filled up | filled up |

1. fill ...up p.v. When you fill something up, you fill it completely.

   - My radiator must be leaking; it has to be filled up with water every day.
   - We always fill the tank up when we're in Indiana because gas is cheaper there.

filled up part.adj. After something has been completely filled up, it is filled up.

   - These water containers don't weigh very much. Are you sure they're completely filled up?

2. fill... up (on) p.v. When you fill up or fill up on something, you eat so much that you are no longer hungry and cannot eat any more.

   - Don't fill up on salad—you won't have any room for dinner.
   - I filled up on candy and was really sick about an hour later.

3. fill up p.v. When a room or other area fills up, people enter it until it is full.

297
The dance floor filled up quickly when the band began to play.
The hotels in Rio de Janeiro always fill up at carnival time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pick up</td>
<td>pick up &amp; picks up</td>
<td>picking up</td>
<td>picked up</td>
<td>picked up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. pick... up p.v. When you pick something up, you lift it with your hand.  
   All this trash has to be picked up.  
   Sam picked up his briefcase and left his office.

2. pick... up p.v. When you go to a place to get something that was created, prepared, or left for you and is now ready, you pick it up.  
   The garbage is supposed to be picked up before 9:00 AM.  
   The travel agent said I could pick the tickets up tomorrow.

   pickup n. Something that is to be picked up or the process of picking it up is a pickup.

   The restaurant uses the back door for pickups and deliveries.

3. pick... up p.v. When you pick people up, you stop your vehicle and give them a ride away from that place.  
   You'll be picked up at the airport by the hotel van.  
   Picking up hitchhikers is dangerous.

   pickup n. Someone who is to be picked up or the process of picking someone up is a pickup.

   The taxi driver went to 2122 N. dark Street for a pickup.

4. pick... up p.v. When you pick something up in a store, you quickly go into a store to buy something you need.  
   I need to pick up some milk on the way home.  
   Could you pick a loaf of bread up on your way over?

5. pick... up p.v. When you pickup a skill, you learn it easily. When you pick up a habit, you acquire the habit.  
   Children can pick up a new language very quickly. My son is picking some bad habits up from his friends.

6. pick... up p.v. When you resume doing something at the point where you stopped doing it earlier, you pick up at that point.  
   The teacher started the class by picking up where she had left off the previous week.  
   When you return to work after a long vacation, it's hard to know where to pick up.

7. pick... up p.v. When you pick up a radio or television station or a certain frequency on a receiver, you are able to tune it to that station or frequency.
When the weather is right, you can pick radio stations up that are hundreds of miles away. General Johnston’s radio transmission was picked up by the enemy.

8. pick... up p.v. When the police or other authorities arrest people, they pick them up.
   The border patrol picks up several people every day trying to bring drugs into the country.
   Charles was picked up for driving under the influence of alcohol.

9. pick... up p.v. When you get something by chance without looking for it, you pick it up.
   I picked up a few stock tips from a guy I met on the plane.
   Marsha picked up some interesting books at a used bookstore.

10. pick... up p.v. When you pick up the check or the tab (a tab is a list of money that someone owes) in a restaurant or other place, you pay it.
    Tom’s a real cheapskate, he never picks up the check.
    Heather’s father picked up the tab for the entire wedding.

11. pick up p.v. When the speed, level, or condition of something increases or improves, it picks up.
    Business is slow this time of year, but it should pick up in December.
    The song starts out slowly, but then it picks up.

pickup n. An improvement in the speed, level, or condition of something is a pickup. If a motor vehicle is able to accelerate quickly, it has pickup.
    The company’s profits increased after a pickup in sales.
    I need to take my truck to the mechanic. It doesn’t have any pickup.

12. pick... up p.v. When you pick up a place that is messy, you organize or tidy it.
    Timmy’s mother told him he couldn’t play outside until he picked up his room.
    Let’s pick this place up — it’s a mess.

13. pick... up p.v. [informal] When you pick up members of the opposite sex, you approach and successfully interest them in a sexual or romantic encounter.
    Hank tried to pick up Frank’s sister at the party last night, but she wasn’t interested.
    Pat picked up someone, and they went to a cheap motel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sell out</td>
<td>sell out &amp; sells out</td>
<td>selling out</td>
<td>sold out</td>
<td>sold out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. sell out (of) [often passive] p.v. When a store sells out of something or is sold out of something, it sells all of it.
The toy store **sold out** of antigravity boots in two days. I wanted to buy that new computer game, but every store I went to was **sold out** of it.

**sold out** part.adj. After all of something for sale in a store has been sold, the item is **sold out**.

I saw the most beautiful shoes at the mall, but my size was all **sold out**.

**sold out** part.adj. After all the tickets to a concert, play, or other public performance have been sold, the event is **sold out**.

You'll never get a ticket for the Superbowl — it's been **sold out** for weeks.

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>straighten out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>straighten out &amp; straightens out</td>
<td>straightening out</td>
<td>straightened out</td>
<td>straightened out</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **straighten ... out** p.v. When something is bent, crooked, or curved and you make it straight, you **straighten it out**.

   My elbow is so swollen that I can't **straighten** my arm out.

   As the city grew, many of the winding streets were **straightened out**.

2. **straighten ... out** p.v. When you **straighten out** a confused situation or misunderstanding, you take steps to make it understandable and satisfactory to everyone involved. **Sort out** is similar to **straighten out**.

   My hotel had me booked for the wrong days in the wrong room, but the manager **straightened out** everything.

   Save your questions for the meeting. Everything will be **straightened out** then.

**straightened out** part.adj. After a confused situation or misunderstanding has been made understandable and satisfactory to everyone involved, it is **straightened out**. **Sorted out** is similar to **straightened out**.

Erik was upset with Dan, but they had a talk and now everything is **straightened out**.

3. **straighten ... out** p.v. When you **straighten out** people who are acting foolishly, you do or say something that causes them to act more responsibly. When you **straighten out** people who are confused, you help them to understand.

   I told my son that if he gets in trouble one more time, I'm going to send him to military school. That really **straightened him out**.

   I'm totally confused about what I'm supposed to do. Can you **straighten me out**?

### Take over

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Take over</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take over &amp; takes over</td>
<td>taking over</td>
<td>took over</td>
<td>taken over</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **take... over (to)** p.v. When you take something from one place to another, you **take it over** or **take it over** to a person or place.

   Jane's at home sick, so I'm going to **take** some chicken soup **over**.

   After I finished my report, I **took it over** to the finance department.
2. **take... over** p.v. When people, groups, or countries take control of a place by force, they **take it over**.

After the government troops fled, the country was **taken over** by the rebels.

The hijackers **took over** the plane and ordered the pilot to fly to Havana.

**takeover** n. A **takeover** is an action to take control of a country, city, building, or other place by force.

If the situation doesn’t stabilize soon, there’s a real chance of a military **takeover**.

3. **take over** (from/as) p.v. When people are elected, appointed, or hired to take control of a country, state, city, business, school, building, and so on, and to replace the people in control, they **take over**, **take over** as something, or **take over** from someone.

Carlos Ortega will be **taking over** as sales manager next year.

Ortega **took over** from Margaret Cummings, who had been the sales manager for 14 years.

**takeover** n. When people who are elected, appointed, or hired take control of a country, state, city, business, school, building, and so on, and replace the people in control, a **takeover** occurs.

After the **takeover**, the new president made a lot of changes.

4. **take over** (for) p.v. When you start to do a job or some work that other people are doing in order to allow them to take a break or because the previous shift has ended and a new shift has begun, you **take over**. When you assume an obligation or accept responsibility from someone, you **take it over**.

We work from 4:00 P.M. to midnight, and then the graveyard shift **takes over**.

When Linda was sick she couldn’t care for her children, so her sister **took over** for her until she was well again.

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>wipe out</strong></td>
<td>wipe out &amp; wipes out</td>
<td>wiping out</td>
<td>wiped out</td>
<td>wiped out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **wipe... out** p.v. When you remove dirt or liquid from the inside of a container with a cloth, sponge, or paper towel, you **wipe it out**.

Wipe the microwave **out** — it’s got spaghetti sauce inside it.

I **wiped out** the inside of the glasses so they wouldn’t dry with spots.

2. **wipe... out** p.v. When you are trying to kill people, weeds, insects, and so on, and you kill all of them, you **wipe them out**.

An entire regiment was **wiped out** in the battle.

The general said he would **wipe out** the rebels.

**wipeout** n. A situation in which all people, weeds, insects, and so on, are killed is a **wipeout**.

The battle was a complete **wipeout**. Not a single soldier survived.
EXERCISE 39a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Your pictures are ready and can be ________ ________ between 10:00 A.M. and 6:00 P.M.
2. I didn't get the book I wanted because the store was ________ ________ of them.
3. There's a lot of confusion about the new policy. We need to have a meeting to ________ everything ________.
4. The vice-president ________ ________ after the president died.
5. Susie, your room is very messy. Come in here and ________ it ________ right now!
6. Mr. Nelson asked me to ________ ________ for Lydia while she's on vacation.
7. Sales of air conditioners always ________ ________ in the spring.
8. If we get a bigger antenna, we might be able to ________ a lot more stations ________.
9. It took me an hour to ________ everything for the beef stew.
10. The soldiers were ordered to ________ ________ the rebels.
11. Sally called and asked me to ________ ________ a few things on the way home.
12. A country this small could be ________ ________ in a few days.
13. I wish I hadn't ________ ________ on bread. Now I can't finish my dinner.
14. I'm going to play golf with Charles next week. He's really good, so maybe I can ________ ________ a few ways to improve my game.
15. The theater ________ ________ ten minutes before the start of the opera.
16. My car's frame was so badly damaged in the accident that there was no way it could be ________ ________.
17. You don't need to take any money to the restaurant. Karen said she would ________ ________ the check.
18. Don't just clean the outsides of the desks — ________ the insides ________ too.
19. I'll be arriving at 3:40 A.M. Would ________ me ________ that early be a problem?
20. Hank's giving orders like he's the president of the company. Someone needs to ________ ________ him ________.
21. Smoking is a bad habit that I ________ ________ in the Navy.
22. Let’s ________ these canteens before we begin our hike.
23. This couch is really heavy. Can you help me ________ it ________?
24. After you get your paycheck, you can ________ it ________ to the cashier to cash it.
25. Can you believe what Hank did? He tried to ________ ________ the boss’s daughter at the company picnic.
26. I finished page 47 yesterday, so I’ll ________ ________ on page 48 today.
27. You can ________ my name ________ the list; I’ve changed my mind.

EXERCISE 39b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Have you chopped up? (the onions, them)

2. You can cross off. (Linda’s name, her)

3. Fill up with water, (the aquarium, it)

4. I need to pick up at the train station, (my parents, them)
5. Can you straighten out? (this mess, it)

6. The rebels took over. (the royal palace, it)

7. They wiped out. (the palace guard, them)

**EXERCISE 39c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. The construction business always improves in the spring. What does the construction business always do?

2. Pirates might take control of the ship. What might happen to the ship?

3. In Question 2, if pirates took control of the ship, what would this action be called?

4. There was a misunderstanding at work, but Nicole explained everything to the people involved, and now they understand. What did she do?

5. In Question 4, how would you describe the misunderstanding now?

6. Frank was supposed to go to the factory so he could give Ned a ride home. What was supposed to happen to Ned?

7. All the people in the town will be killed when the enemy captures it. What will happen to all the people in the town?
8. Someone ought to draw a line through Karen's name on the list. What ought to be done to Karen's name?

9. In Question 8, how would you describe Karen's name after someone draws a line through it?

10. Sarah went to the store to buy a CD, but they had all been sold. What did the store do?

11. In Question 10, how would you describe the CDs?

12. Tom tried to buy a ticket for the concert, but all the tickets had been sold. Why couldn't Tom buy a ticket for the concert?

13. You cut some bacon into very small pieces before you put it on your salad. What was done to the bacon?

14. The laundry closes at 6:00, so Jane has to go there before 6:00 to get her dress. What has to be done to the dress?

15. The copilot flew the plane so that the pilot could eat dinner. What did the copilot do?

16. Todd often asks me to stop at the store and buy a newspaper. What does Todd often ask me to do?

17. I'll tell Susie not to make the water in the bathtub rise all the way to the top. What will I tell Susie?

18. I stopped writing my book at page 94 and later started writing again on page 95. What did I do?

EXERCISE 39d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bite off, 27</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come out, 32</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave out, 32</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pull over, 19</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow up, 33</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut down, 23</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look over, 21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>settle down, 21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break off, 27</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand over, 19</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make up, 23</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slow down, 24</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring back, 19</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knock off, 27</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick on, 21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear down, 17</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. David's mother told him she'd like some grandchildren, but he's having too much fun as a bachelor and isn't interested in ________________.
2. I didn't finish my work because I was training a new employee, and explaining everything really
me.
3. Bob's doctor told him he was doing too much weight lifting and that he should _______ _______.
4. The movie wasn't the same as the novel. Several characters were _______ _______.
5. When I caught my sixteen-year-old daughter smoking cigarettes, I really _______ _______.
6. I didn't say you could use my car. _______ _______ those keys right now!
7. There must be something wrong with my camera — none of the pictures I took _______.
8. Can I borrow your food processor? I promise I'll _______ it _______ tomorrow.
9. We've been working since 7:00 A.M. Let's _______ _______ and finish tomorrow.
10. Everything on the menu looks delicious. I just can't _______ _______ my mind.
11. If you don't stop _______ _______ me, I'm going to tell Mommy.
12. I told Mark not to pet the lion, but he didn't listen, and his hand was _______ _______.
13. He realized he was lost, so he _______ _______ his car _______ and looked at a map.
14. My son asked me for a motorcycle for his birthday, but I told him no, so he's trying to _______ _______ me
   _______ by asking me again and again and again.
15. I gave my job application to the human resources director, and he said he'd _______ _______ 
   and give me a call.
16. Do you have any glue? One of the arms has _______ _______ this ceramic doll.
40. FOCUS ON: gerund phrasal verbs vs. phrasal verbs followed by the -ing form

We have seen in previous sections that phrasal verbs are sometimes followed by the -ing form. We have also seen that transitive phrasal verbs sometimes take gerund objects. At a glance, there seems to be no difference between these two constructions:

Jim went away singing.

Jim stuck with singing.

But because a gerund is a verb functioning as a noun, it can be replaced with an ordinary nongerund noun. However, this is not true of the -ing form:

Jim went away it.

Jim stuck with it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blow off</td>
<td>blow off &amp; blows off</td>
<td>blowing off</td>
<td>blew off</td>
<td>blown off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. blow... off p.v. [informal] When you do not do something that you are supposed to do because you do not want to or because you do not think it is important, you blow it off.

I was supposed to report for jury duty Monday morning, but I blew it off.

Bob had a hangover, so he blew off helping Marsha fix her car.

2. bring up p.v. When people bring something from a higher level or position or from south to north to where you are, they bring it up or bring it up to where you are.

Would you please go downstairs and bring the package that was just delivered?

The rescue workers brought morphine up to the injured mountain climber.

2. bring ... up p.v. When you introduce a new topic into a conversation, you bring it up.

Last night during dinner, Dad brought up the idea of saving money by staying home instead of taking a vacation this year.

You and your big mouth! We were having a great time until you brought that up.

3. bring up (to) p.v. When you bring up children, you care for them as they grow to adulthood.

When you bring up children to believe something or to behave in a certain way, you try to teach this belief or behavior to them.
Tom was born in Canada, but he was brought up in the United States.

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burst out</td>
<td>burst out &amp; bursts out</td>
<td>bursting out</td>
<td>burst out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **burst out** p.v. When you burst out laughing or crying, you begin laughing or crying loudly and suddenly.
   - Heather burst out laughing when I fell into the swimming pool.
   - When Sam heard the news, he burst out crying.

2. **come back** (to from) p.v. When people return to a place where you are, they come back or come back to that place or come back from the place where they were before.
   - Todd went to Florida thinking it would be hot and sunny, but he came back talking about how cold and rainy it was.
   - I'm never coming back to this awful place again.

3. **comeback** p.v. When people, organizations, companies, or athletes overcome difficulties and become successful again, they come back.
   - My home team came back from last place and won the championship.
   - Senator Dolittle lost in 1988, but he came back to win in 1994.

   **comeback** n. When people, organizations, companies, or sports teams overcome difficulties and become successful again, they make a comeback.
   - The Bulls were down by 34 points but won the game with an 18-point lead — what a comeback!

4. **come back** p.v. When a condition, problem, situation, or activity returns or greatly increases, it comes back.
   - I need to see the doctor. The pain in my shoulder has come back.
   - There isn't much chance that double-digit inflation will come back any time soon.

   **comeback** n. When a condition, problem, situation, or activity returns or greatly increases, it makes a comeback.
   - Health officials are concerned that tuberculosis is making a comeback.

5. **come back** p.v. When a fashion or fad comes back, it becomes popular again.
   - Miniskirts are coming back this year.
   - Western movies and TV shows go out of style and then come back every few years.
**comeback** n. When a fashion or fad becomes popular again, it makes a comeback. I saved all my wide neckties because I knew they’d make a comeback someday.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get off on</td>
<td>get off on &amp; gets off on</td>
<td>getting off</td>
<td>got off</td>
<td>gotten off on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **get off on** p.v. [informal] When you get off on something or get off on doing something, you find it enjoyable and exciting.
   Sally loves winter sports, and she especially gets off on snowboarding.
   Mountain climbing is what I get off on.

2. **go away** p.v. When you leave a place or leave a person, you go away.
   Go away! I’m trying to study.
   Mark went away not realizing he had left his briefcase behind.

3. **go away** (for) p.v. When you travel for a period of time, you go away for this time.
   We always go away for a few weeks in the winter.
   Lydia is going to go away for a while.

4. **go away** (to) p.v. When you leave your home and live temporarily at another place, such as a school, you go away to that place.
   Jane didn’t go away to school; she went to a school near her home.
   Some young people are nervous about going away to school, but others look forward to it.

5. **go away** p.v. When a condition, problem, situation, or activity disappears or greatly decreases, it goes away.
   I have a pain in my back that never goes away.
   If the rain doesn’t go away, we’ll have to call off the game.

6. **run around** p.v. When you run around a place, you run to various parts of it.
   The cat ran around the room chasing the mouse.

   The children were running around the museum, and the guard told them to stop.

7. **run around** p.v. When you run around doing something, you go to various places trying urgently to accomplish something that is important to you.
   The woman was running around the store looking for her lost child.
   We ran around the house trying to rescue whatever we could from the rising floodwater.
runaround n. When people are not honest with you or helpful to you, they give you the runaround.

Why didn’t you just tell me the truth instead of giving me the runaround?

Infinitive | present tense | -ing form | past tense | past participle
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
stick with | stick with & sticks with | sticking with | stuck with | stuck with

1. **stick with** p.v. When you stick with a habit, plan, or type of work, you continue as before, without change. **Stick to** is similar to stick with.

   I don’t like computers. I’ll stick with writing letters by hand.

   Todd thought about a career change but decided to stick with teaching.

2. **stick with** p.v. When you stick with something that you use, you continue to use it.

   My wife wants me to switch to decaffeinated coffee, but I’m going to stick with regular.

   My mother has stuck with Ivory soap for forty years.

3. **stick with** p.v. When you stick with people, you remain with them or remain loyal to them.

   It’ll be very crowded at the festival, so stick with me so you don’t get lost.

   That other guy running for senator has some good ideas, but I’m going to stick with Senator Dolittle.

4. **stick with** p.v. When you stick people with something, you force them to take something or deal with something undesirable or unpleasant.

   I’m sorry to stick you with all this work, but you’re the only one who can do it.

   The shoes I bought don’t fit, but the store where I bought them doesn’t accept returns, so I guess I’m stuck with them.

**EXERCISE 40a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I didn’t know anyone at the party except Leticia, so I __________ her.
2. All Timmy’s friends are __________ for the summer, so he won’t have anyone to play with.
3. I have a job interview at 8:30 Monday morning, but that’s too early for me, so maybe I’ll just __________ it __________.
4. Miguel was surprised how much he enjoyed watching figure skating. He really __________ it __________.
5. Linda ________ from the party talking about what a good time she had.
6. Susie’s birthday party exhausted me. The kids were ________ yelling and screaming for hours.
7. I gave my grandfather a computer, but he said he’d rather ________ his old typewriter.
8. My grandmother was ________ on a farm, but she moved to the city when she got married.
9. Dan ________ buying a motorboat, but his wife said it was a crazy idea.
10. I know running is great exercise, but I’m going to ________ swimming.
11. I hope high-heel shoes never ________, they’re so uncomfortable.
12. My grandmother was ________ on a farm, but she moved to the city when she got married.
13. Betty smelled smoke, and she ________ the house frantically looking for the source.
14. I asked the mechanic why the sound keeps ________ and coming back.
15. Bob’s joke was pretty funny. Everyone ________ laughing.
16. Why does the boss ________ me ________ making coffee every morning? Why can’t someone else do it?
17. I saved my father a lot of money by not ________ to school.
18. After his defeat, the former champion said he would ________.
19. Frank came to my door with flowers and an apology, but I told him to ________.
20. Whenever my brother in Florida visits me here in Minnesota, he ________ some oranges.

EXERCISE 40b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. They’re not following the original plan. What aren’t they doing?
2. I took some aspirin, and my headache was gone for a while, but now I have a headache again. What did my headache do?
3. You started to cry suddenly and loudly. What did you do?
4. Hank was supposed to meet with his parole officer in the morning, but he didn’t go because he wanted to sleep late. What did Hank do to his meeting with his parole officer?
5. The hotel desk clerk didn’t tell me he had canceled my reservation by mistake. Instead he invented a lot of crazy excuses that he knew weren’t true. What did the hotel desk clerk do?
6. Todd’s sister was very upset, and he asked what the problem was, but she told him to leave her alone. What did Todd’s sister ask him to do?
7. Skiing is what Heather likes more than anything. How does Heather feel about skiing?
8. Everyone in the factory was busy, so when the delivery truck came, David was forced to unload it by himself. What happened to David?
9. Nancy began talking about joining the Peace Corps. What did Nancy do?
10. The number of people with malaria decreased, but now the number is increasing every year. What is malaria doing?
11. Poverty is a problem that never decreases or disappears. What doesn’t poverty do?
12. You went on a business trip three weeks ago, and you haven’t returned yet. What haven’t you done yet?
13. Ned had to call his broker immediately, so he ran to various places looking for a telephone. What did Ned do?
14. It would be nice to leave this city for a week or two. What would be nice?
15. When I was young, my parents taught me to believe in the golden rule. What did my parents do?

**EXERCISE 40c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section. Try to use either gerunds or the -ing form.**

1. ________________________________
2. _____________________________________________.
3.______________________________________________.
4. _____________________________________________.

EXERCISE 40d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

back down, 36    go down, 36    lead up to, 34    stick around, 34
do over, 34      go out, 32     make of, 35     stick to, 34
fool around, 35  hold against, 35 put up to, 34    take back, 34
go by, 35        lay down, 36    run down, 36    trick into, 35

1. At school, Luis got into a lot of trouble for something I did, and now he ______ it ______ me.
2. If I could ______ it ______ again, I’d do it differently.
3. The price of gas is expected to ______ to $1 a gallon within a month.
4. The light suddenly ______, and I couldn’t see a thing.
5. Do you have to go already? Can’t you ______ for a few minutes?
6. We don’t want to forget anything, so let’s ______ the list one more time to be sure.
7. The announcement was a real surprise. I’m not sure what to ______.
8. This book I bought is missing some pages. Can you ______ it ______ to the bookstore for me tomorrow?
9. Crime was getting out of control, so a new sheriff was elected who promised to ______ the law.
10. That gun is loaded, so I wouldn’t ______ with it if I were you.
11. After I threatened to go to the police and tell them everything, he ______ and stopped making threats.
12. My brother always thought I would be a failure, so now that I’m rich, I love to ______ it ______ him by complaining about how hard it is to keep a thirty-room house clean.
13. My son is a good boy. If he was shoplifting, I'm sure someone ________ him.

14. In my history class we studied the various things that ________ ________ ________ the current situation.

15. The month we spent in Italy was a lot of fun, but it seemed to ________ ________ so quickly.

16. My brother-in-law is so sneaky. He tried to ________ me ________ telling him the combination to my safe.

41. FOCUS ON: two-word phrasal verbs with the particle in that require into when used with an object

We have seen in Sections 9 and 23 that some two-word phrasal verbs require a second particle when they are transitive, which makes them three-word phrasal verbs. Many phrasal verbs with the particle in have a meaning that relates to entering or penetrating. When what is being entered or penetrated is named, these verbs become transitive; however, this is not done by adding a second particle but by changing in to into. Another way to look at it is to consider intro two particles, in and to, written as one word:

The thief broke in.
The thieves broke into the jewelry store.

But this is true only for meanings of the phrasal verb that relate to entering or penetrating, not for all meanings. Some meanings with in have no into version (and are included in this section), and some meanings with into have no in version (and are not included in this section). Moreover, sometimes into is optional, and the verb can be used transitively with either in or into.

We see also in this section that there is often a phrasal verb with an opposite meaning with in and into corresponding to out and out of:

I sneaked in.
I sneaked out.
I sneaked into the house.
I sneaked out of the house.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break in</td>
<td>break &amp; breaks in</td>
<td>breaking in</td>
<td>broke in</td>
<td>broken in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **break in** p.v. When you **break in** or **break into** a place, you enter illegally using force or deception.

   A thief **broke in** and stole my TV.
   
   When I saw the smashed glass in the street, I knew my car had been **broken into**.

2. **break in** n. A **break-in** is an illegal entry into a place using force or deception. The police investigated a **break-in** at the liquor store.

3. **broken in** p.v. When you **broken in** a new mechanical device or a car, you use it slowly and carefully until you are sure it ready for heavier use. When you **break in** a pair of shoes, you wear them only occasionally and for a short time until they are comfortable. When you **break in** people at a new job, you train and supervise them and give them less than the normal amount of work until they are ready for something more difficult.

   I don't want to wear these boots on the expedition. I haven't **broken in** them yet.
   
   We're **breaking in** a new secretary, so things have been a bit confused at our office lately.

4. **broken in** part.adj. After you **break in** a new mechanical device or a car, a pair of shoes, or people at a new job, they are **broken in**.

   I don't want to wear those shoes to the dance. They're not **broken in** yet.

---

**check in**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>check in &amp; checks in</th>
<th>checking in</th>
<th>checked in</th>
<th>checked in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **check in** p.v. When you arrive at a hotel and arrange for a room, you **check in** or **check into** the hotel.

   After I arrive in Denver, I'll go straight to my hotel and **check in**.
   
   Jim **checked into** the hotel while I called home to check on the kids.

2. **check in** n. The counter at an airport where you give your ticket to an agent and receive a boarding pass is the **check-in** counter. The process of **checking in** is **check-in**.

   Before your flight you have to go to the **check-in** counter.

3. **check in** p.v. When you give your luggage to an airline agent so that it will be carried in the baggage compartment rather than the passenger compartment, you **check it in**.
That bag is too big for carry-on — you’ll have to check it in.

checked in part.adj. Luggage that has been checked in or passengers that have checked in are checked in.

Now that we’re checked in, we can wait in the boarding lounge.

4. check in (with) p.v. When you visit or call people briefly and regularly because you want to get or receive important information from them or to make sure that a situation you are both interested in is satisfactory, you check in or check in with them.

After surgery, you’ll need to check in once in a while to make sure the bone is healing properly.

If Hank doesn’t check in with his parole officer every week, the police will arrest him.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Check out</td>
<td>check out &amp; checks out</td>
<td>checking out</td>
<td>checked out</td>
<td>checked out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. check out (of) p.v. When you pay your bill, return your key, and leave a hotel, you check out or check out of the hotel.

There’s always a long line of people waiting to check out at that time of the morning.

Mrs. Garcia checked out of her hotel and took a taxi to the airport.

Okay, we’re checked out; now let’s get a taxi and go to the airport.

checked out part.adj. After you have paid your bill, returned your key, and left a hotel, you are checked out.

checkout n. The time before which you must check out of a hotel in order to avoid paying for another day is the checkout time.

We can sleep late tomorrow; checkout time isn’t until 1:00 P.M.

1. check... out p.v. When you check a place or thing out, you inspect it carefully or learn more about it.

That new Mexican restaurant is great — you should check it out.

Hey George, check out that car Toad is driving. When did he buy it?

3. check ... out p.v. When you check people out, you investigate them in order to learn more about them. If you say that people check out, you mean that the information they have given you about themselves, such as their education and work experience, has been investigated and found to be accurate.

Applicants for child care jobs should be thoroughly checked out.

Before you give that guy money to invest, you should check him out.

Frank didn’t get the job he wanted with the CIA. Some things on his resume didn’t check out.

4. check out p.v. When you check out at a store, you bring the items you want to buy to the cashier and pay for them.
The store's closing in a few minutes. We'd better check out. Look at this line. It's going to take forever to check out.

Checkout n. The checkout or the checkout counter is where you pay for items in a store. You get the bathroom stuff, I'll get the groceries, and we'll meet at the checkout counter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go in</td>
<td>go in &amp; goes in</td>
<td>going in</td>
<td>went in</td>
<td>gone in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **go in** p.v. When you **go in** or **go into** a place, building, room, and so on, you enter it.
   - It's getting too dark to play tennis. Let's **go in**.
   - Frank went into the kitchen to get a cup of coffee.

2. **go in** p.v. When something **goes in** or **goes into** a place, container, enclosure, and so on, it belongs there, fits there, or can be put there.
   - That dish **goes in** the cabinet next to the stove.
   - All those clothes will never **go in** this small suitcase.

3. **go in** p.v. When soldiers enter combat or an area where combat is likely, they **go in**.
   - The National Guard was ordered to **go in** and stop the riot.
   - The marine shouted, "We're going in!" as he jumped from the landing craft.

Let in

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Let in</th>
<th>let in &amp; lets in</th>
<th>letting in</th>
<th>let in</th>
<th>let in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **let...in** p.v. When you **let** people or things **in** or **let** people or things **into** a place, building, room, and so on, you allow them to enter by giving them permission to enter or by opening a door, gate, and so on.
   - When the guests arrived, the butler opened the door to **let them in**.
   - The guard wouldn't **let me in** the stadium because I had forgotten my ticket.

2. **let...in** p.v. When an opening, such as a window, door, hole, crack, and so on, allows something to enter, it **lets** it **in**.
   - That small window doesn't **let in** enough light to read by.
   - The hole in the screen is **letting the mosquitoes in** to the house.

Plug in

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plug in</th>
<th>plug in &amp; plugs in</th>
<th>plugging in</th>
<th>plugged in</th>
<th>plugged in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **plug...in** p.v. When you connect an electrical device to an electrical outlet, you **plug it in** or **plug it into** the outlet. When you connect any cord or cable to a socket designed to receive it, you **plug it in** or **plug it into** the socket.
I plugged my 110-volt TV into a 220-volt outlet and ruined it.
This phone isn't broken; you just forgot to plug the phone cord in.

plugged in part. adj. When an electrical device is connected to an electrical outlet, it is plugged in.

Be careful with that iron — it’s plugged in.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sneak in</td>
<td>sneaks in</td>
<td>sneaking in</td>
<td>sneaked in</td>
<td>sneaked in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. sneak into p.v. When you enter a place without anyone seeing or hearing you, you sneak in or sneak into the place.
   When I was a kid I used to sneak into the movie theater through the emergency exit.

2. sneak out (of) p.v. When you leave a place without anyone seeing or hearing you, you sneak out or sneak out of the place.
   Susie’s father told her to stay upstairs in her room, but she sneaked out through the window.

   The principal caught me sneaking out of my chemistry class.

EXERCISE 41 a Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Close the door! You’re _______ the bugs _______.
2. One of the students _______ _______ and stole the answers for the final exam.
3. My grandfather always _______ _______ a new car by not driving it over 50 miles per hour until it had gone 1,000 miles.
4. Mark told me he bought a large-screen TV. Let’s go to his house and _______ it _______.
5. My laptop computer is in this bag, so I think it would be better to keep it with me on the flight than to _______ it _______.
6. These speakers _______ _______ sockets in the back of the stereo.
7. Are you sure this is the right key for this lock? It won’t _______ _______.
8. When I’m away on a business trip, I always _______ _______ with my office every morning.
9. I was late for class, so I waited until the teacher wasn't looking and _______ _______.
10. The soldiers were ordered to _______ _______ and capture the enemy position.
11. I don't trust that guy my daughter wants to marry. I'm going to _______ him _______.
12. Dinner is being served. Let's _______ _______ the dining room.
13. There's a crack in the basement wall that's _______ _______ water.
14. At the supermarket you can _______ _______ in the express line only if you have fewer than 15 items.
15. We'll _______ _______ the Grand Hotel on Wednesday.
16. After a week at the hotel, we'll _______ _______ and go home.
17. Any burglar who tries to _______ _______ my house is going to get a big surprise — I've got three big dogs that aren't very friendly.
18. I _______ _______ only 15 minutes before my flight time, and I almost missed the plane.

EXERCISE 41 b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Janice entered the house quietly so that no one would hear her. What did Janice do?
2. Lydia unlocked the door so that her brother could enter the house. What did Lydia do?
3. Ms. Cummings paid her hotel bill and left. What did Ms. Cummings do?
4. In Question 3, Ms. Cummings had to leave the hotel before noon so that she would not have to pay for another day. What is noon at the hotel?
5. The window of Nancy's house was broken, and her jewelry, TV, and computer were gone. What happened to Nancy's house?
6. In Question 5, what happened at Nancy's house?
7. When I arrive at the airport, I'll give my ticket to the agent, and she'll give me a boarding pass. What will I do at the airport?
8. In Question 7, where will I go in the airport?

9. The room is full of cigarette smoke, and Karen doesn't want to enter it. What doesn't Karen want to do?

10. I saw an interesting house with a "for sale" sign on Pine Street as I was driving home. Tomorrow I'll stop and learn more about it. What will I do to the house tomorrow?

11. When Erik flies to Colorado to go skiing, he always gives his skis to the airline agent so that they will be put in the baggage compartment. What does Erik always do with his skis?

12. In Question 11, how would you describe Erik's skis after he gives them to the airline agent?

13. You opened the window quietly, when no one was looking, and left your house. What did you do?

14. Mr. Baker hasn't arrived at his hotel and arranged for a room yet. What hasn't Mr. Baker done yet?

15. Hank bought a new CD player and connected the plug to the outlet. What did Hank do?

16. In Question 15, how would you describe Hank's new CD player?

17. Before Ned was hired for his job in a nursing home, the human resources manager at the nursing home called his previous employer and asked questions about Ned. What was done to Ned?

18. My feet are killing me. It wasn't very smart to wear new hiking boots that aren't soft and comfortable. Why are my feet killing me?

EXERCISE 41 c — Write seven original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

1. __________________________________________________

2. __________________________________________________

3. __________________________________________________

4. __________________________________________________

5. __________________________________________________

6. __________________________________________________

7. __________________________________________________
EXERCISE 41 d. Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

1. I hope you like spaghetti, because so much was _______ _______ after the party that we’re going to be eating it for a week.
2. My son has promised me a hundred times that he’ll stay out of trouble and work harder in school, but he always _______ _______.
3. I want to watch the news. It’s going to _______ _______ as soon as this game is over.
4. Even though you don’t like your brother, you shouldn’t _______ _______ in front of his children.
5. Today _______ _______ cold and rainy, but now the sun is out, and it’s a lot warmer.
6. I can’t drive because of my broken leg, but Carmen said she’d _______ _______ if I need anything.
7. I’ve got an appointment to get my teeth cleaned tomorrow at 4:00, but if you want to go to the beach, I can _______ _______ my appointment _______.
8. The company was considering eight cities for the new factory, but they’ve _______ _______ to three.
9. A lot of the employees are confused about the new contract. We should ask management to have a meeting so that we can _______ _______ everything _______.
10. Lydia is going to _______ _______ for Judy during her maternity leave.
11. Her husband said he wasn’t going to stop smoking and that she would just have to learn to _______ _______ it.
12. The commercial on TV said that if you _______ _______ your car’s gas tank _______ with their gas, you’d get better mileage and a cleaner engine.

blow off, 40    help out, 33    start out, 20
come on, 37    leave over, 37    straighten out, 39
fill up, 39    let down, 37    take over, 39
get off on, 40    live with, 35    talk to, 37
go away, 40    narrow down, 35
hang out, 37    put down, 36

321
13. We’re planning to ________ ________ for a few weeks. Would you mind watering our plants until we return?

14. David put a pool table and a pinball machine in his basement. It’s a great place to ________ ________ and relax.

15. Can you believe how rude that guy was to me? Nobody has ever ________ ________ me like that before.

16. Bob is very kind and generous. He ________ ________ helping other people.

42. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with get, 1

Many phrasal verbs are based on the verb get, and it is important to understand that the meaning of get in these verbs is not the same as the nonphrasal form of get, meaning receive. Instead, get has a meaning similar to become or change to:

I got up at 6:00. (I was not up before, and then I became up — I changed from not being up to being up.)

Many phrasal verbs with get that relate to a change in physical location might seem identical in meaning to a variety of phrasal verbs using come, go, and other verbs that describe physical movement, such as walk, run, move, and so on, and often they can be used with little difference in meaning:

I came back last night. I got back last night.

But there is a difference: get emphasizes the change in location; come, go, and so on, emphasize the movement from one location to another.

It is very common to use the adverbs right and back with get phrasal verbs. To review the adverb right, see Sections 19 and 22. To review the adverb back, review Section 26 (and do not confuse the adverb back with the particle back).

Note that two forms of the past participle of get are shown: gotten and got. Gotten is more common in American English, but got is occasionally used. Both are correct.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get back</td>
<td>get back &amp; gets back</td>
<td>getting back</td>
<td>got back</td>
<td>gotten/got back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. *get back* (to) p.v. When you return to a level or place where you were before, you **get back** or **get back** to that place.
We left three weeks ago, and we didn't get back until yesterday. Where are you going? Get right back here!
Mark lost a lot of weight when he was sick, and it took him a long time to get back to his old weight.

2. get back (to) p.v. When you get something back or get something back to a person or place, you return it to that person or place.

   Jim uses his mother's car in the morning, but she needs it to go to work at 4:30, so he has to get it back before then.

   I have to get these books back to the library — they're overdue.

3. get... back (from) p.v. When you get something back or get something back from someone or someplace, you have something that you had before.

   I couldn't believe I got my stolen car back.

   Jim borrowed a book from me three years ago, and I still haven't gotten it back from him.

4. get back (from) p.v. When you get back or get back from something that is very hot or dangerous or that you should not be near, you move away from it so that there is more distance between you and it.

   Get back from the edge of the cliff! You might fall.

As the President came closer, the police told the crowd to get back.

Infinitive present tense -ing form past tense past participle
get get behind & gets behind getting behind got behind gotten got behind

1. get behind (in) p.v. When you are in a group that is studying or working, and so on, and they learn faster or get more work done because you are learning or working more slowly than the others, you get behind or get behind in your studies or work. When you do not complete work as fast as originally planned and expected, you get behind schedule. Keep up is the opposite of get behind. Fall behind is similar to get behind.

   Linda had some problems last semester, and she got behind in her studies.

   With all the bad weather we've been having, the construction project has gotten way behind schedule.

get by
got by & gets by getting by got by gotten got by

1. get by p.v. When you get by or get by something, you pass something or someone while you are walking or driving even though it may be difficult because there is not enough room.

   Can you move all that junk in the hallway please? It's hard for people to get by.

   There was an accident on the highway, and no one could get by.

2. get by (on) p.v. When you get by or get by on a certain amount of money, you continue with your work or continue with your life even though it may be difficult.
Don’t worry about me; I’ll get by somehow.
It’s not easy getting by on $250 a week.

3. get by p.v. When something, such as a mistake or a problem, gets by you, you do not notice it.
   I’ve got a great editor; no mistakes get by her.
   I checked this report twice. How did all these misspellings get by me?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get down</td>
<td>get down &amp; gets down</td>
<td>getting down</td>
<td>got down</td>
<td>gotten/got down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. get down (to) p.v. When you move to a lower level or place or from north to south, you get down or get to that level or place. Get up is the opposite of get down. Go down is similar to get down.
   You’re going to fall out of that tree and break your neck. Get down right now!
   The first thing I did after I got down to Miami was go to the beach.

2. get... down (from) p.v. When you get things or people down, you move them from a higher level or place to a lower one.
   Why do you always put the dishes on the top shelf? I can’t get them down.
   The fire fighters got the people down from the roof of the burning building.

3. get down p.v. When you bend your body and lower your head to avoid danger or to prevent people from seeing you, you get down.
   When the enemy soldiers started shooting, the sergeant ordered his men to get down.
   Get down! If the police catch us here we’ll be in a lot of trouble.

4. get... down p.v. When things or people get you down, they make you sad or depressed.
   Don’t let your troubles get you down. Everything will be all right.
   Jim’s marriage problems are really getting him down.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get in</td>
<td>get in &amp; gets in</td>
<td>getting in</td>
<td>got in</td>
<td>gotten/got in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. get into p.v. When you get in or get into a place, building, room, car, boat, and so on, you enter it.
   Get in the car! We’re going now.
   We’d better get into the school — the bell’s going to ring soon.

2. get... into p.v. When you get in or get into a place, building, club, restaurant, meeting, and so on, you obtain permission to enter. When you get other people in or get other people into a building, club, restaurant, meeting, and so on, you arrange for them to enter.
   We’ll never get into that club; we don’t know the right people.
   I didn’t have an invitation to the party, but Nancy got me in.
3. get... into p.v. When you get something in or get something into a place, building, room, container, enclosure, and so on, you get the object inside even though it is difficult.

   The shoes are too small — I can't get my feet in.
    How did they get that elephant into its cage?

4. get... into p.v. When you get in trouble or get into a difficult situation or a mess (a mess is a confused or difficult situation), you become involved in it. When you get people in trouble or get them into a difficult situation or a mess, you cause them to become involved in it.

   Susie got in a lot of trouble at school today.
    I don't see any solution to this problem. How did I ever get into this mess?

5. get in into p.v. When you get in or get into a place, you arrive. When the vehicle you are in gets in or gets into a place, it arrives. Come in is similar to get in.

   I'm exhausted. I got in really late last night.
    I'll be waiting for you at the station when your train gets into the station.

6. get... in p.v. When a store gets something in, it receives a delivery of something that it will offer for sale.

   Karen asked the sales clerk when the store was going to get some summer dresses in.
    I wanted to buy that new book, but the bookstore hasn't gotten it in yet.

7. get... in p.v. When you get an activity in, you find the time for it or make the time for it.

   Dinner isn't until 7:30, so we've got time to get a tennis game in.
    Whenever I go to San Francisco on business, I try to get a baseball game in.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>1st person singular</th>
<th>1st person plural</th>
<th>3rd person singular</th>
<th>3rd person plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get out</td>
<td>get out &amp; gets out</td>
<td>getting out</td>
<td>got out</td>
<td>gotten (got out)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. get out (of) p.v. When you get out or get out of a place, building, room, car, boat, and so on, you leave or escape from it.

   When Bob heard his car's engine making a strange noise, he got out and looked under the hood.

   We smelled gas and got out of the building just seconds before it exploded.

2. get out (to) p.v. When you go to a place that is west of where you are or to a place outside a large city, you get out or get out to that place.

   I love it here in the city. I almost never get out to the suburbs anymore.
    I told my friend in New York, "If you ever get out to California, please visit me."

3. get... out (of) p.v. When you get people out or get them out of a place, you take them out or you arrange for them to leave.
The soldiers were surrounded, so they called for a helicopter to **get them out**.

After Hank was arrested, his lawyer **got him out** of jail.

4. **get... out** (of) **p.v.** When you **get out** or **get out** of a dangerous, awkward, or difficult situation, you avoid it. When you **get people out** of a dangerous, awkward, or difficult situation, you help them to avoid it.

   Erik made a date with two girls for the same night. How is he going to **get out** of this mess?

   You **got me into** this mess — you **get me out**.

5. **get... out** (of) **p.v.** When you **get something out** or **get something out** of a container or place, you remove it.

   Mother's coming for dinner tonight, so let's **get the good china out**.

   The videotape is jammed; I can't **get it out** of the VCR.

6. **get... out** (of) **p.v.** When you **get dirt or a stain out** or **get dirt or a stain out** of a material, you remove it by cleaning.

   This detergent's ad claims it'll **get dirt out** even in cold water.

   Do you think **bleach** will **get this wine stain out** of my white blouse?

7. **get out** **p.v.** When information **gets out**, it becomes known to people who are not supposed to know it.

   Be careful — we'll be in a lot of trouble if this information **gets out**.

   There was a huge scandal after the news **got out**.

8. **get out** (of) **p.v.** When you leave your house and do things that are relaxing and fun, you **get out** or **get out** of the house.

   You work too hard; you should **get out** more.

   Ned doesn't **get out** of the house much; he prefers to stay home and play computer games.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>get over</strong></td>
<td>get over &amp; gets over</td>
<td>getting over</td>
<td>got over</td>
<td>gotten/got over</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **get over** (to) **p.v.** When you **get over** to a place, you go there. When you tell people to **get over here**, you want them to come where you are.

   Francisco called and he said he needs you to help him with something, so **get over** to his house right way.

   Susie, **get over here** and clean up this mess immediately!

2. **get over** **p.v.** When you **get over** a problem, illness, or emotionally painful experience, you stop letting it affect you and continue with your life.

   I've got a bad cold. I've been sick for a week, and I still haven't **gotten over** it.

   You can't feel sorry for yourself forever — you've got to **get over** it and get on with your life.
3. **get over** p.v. When something happens that surprises you or makes you angry, and you cannot stop thinking about it, you cannot **get over** it.

   I can’t **get over** seeing my ex-wife with her new husband.

   The coach couldn’t **get over** losing the state championship 47 to 0.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get up</td>
<td>get up &amp; gets up</td>
<td>getting up</td>
<td>got up</td>
<td>gotten got up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **get up** (to) p.v. When you move to a higher level or place, or from south to north, you **get up** or **get up** to that level or place. **Get down** is the opposite of **get up**. **Go up** is similar to **get up**.

   Tom, your brother is in the basement. Please go tell him to **get right up** here and start doing his homework.

   I haven’t **gotten up** to my brother’s house in Canada for a long time.

2. **get... up** p.v. When you **get up** or someone **gets you up**, you rise from your bed. When you **get people up**, you cause them to rise from their beds.

   I don’t usually **get up** until 11:00 on weekends.

   I make breakfast; **getting the children up** and ready for school in the morning is Bill’s job.

3. **get up** p.v. When you change from a sitting or lying position to a standing position, you **get up**. **Stand up** is similar to **get up**.

   The teacher told the sleeping students to **get up**.

   After he hit me, I **got right up** and hit him back.

EXERCISE 42a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. That bomb might explode. Maybe we should ____________ a little.
2. As soon as the car stopped, I __________ right ____ and went inside the house.
3. I’ll lose my job if this information ____________, so don’t tell anyone.
4. __________ Jim’s death took me a long time.
5. Now the police are outside. Look at all the trouble you’ve __________ me ____!
6. I thought these pants were ruined after I got ink on them, but this detergent _______ the ink right __________.

7. I was working in my office on the third floor, and my boss called from his office on the sixth floor and told me to __________ _______ there immediately.
8. Work, work, work — that's all you do. You need to ________ more often.
9. It's 4:10. If we hurry, we might ______ a round of golf ______ before it gets dark.
10. I was trying to leave work a little early, but my boss said, "You can't go home until 5:00. ______
    back ______ here!"
11. Would you like to go shopping at Wal-Mart tomorrow? They just ______ some new
    stuff ______.
12. The game is sold out, but I know someone who might be able to ______ us ______.
13. What time did your plane ______ last night?
14. Hank is in a lot of trouble. If he ______ of it, it'll be a miracle.
15. Nicole does her work very carefully and never makes mistakes. Nothing ______ her.
16. Your sister's upstairs sleeping. Go tell her to ______ right ______ here and eat breakfast.
17. Look, there's a bear! ______ — it might see us.
18. My husband spent his whole paycheck on beer and lottery tickets. I don't know how we're going to ______ this month.
19. I wish I hadn't ______ late. I missed the bus, and now I have to walk to school.
20. This is a very difficult class. If you don't study hard, you'll ______.
21. The teacher said, "Your midterm score wasn't very good, but I'm sure if you study hard, you'll do a
    lot better on the final. Don't let it ______ you."
22. Excuse me, could you move? I can't ______.
23. Mike usually leaves around 8:00 in the morning and ______ around 5:30.
24. My cat has been in that tree for three days. Can you help me ______ her ______?
25. It's amazing. I can't ______ how great Tom looks. I'll bet he's lost forty pounds.
26. If you lose your receipt, ______ your money ______ for something you bought is usually
    impossible.
27. Timmy's mother said, "Who said you could leave the table? _______ back _______ here and finish your vegetables!"

28. Our neighbor called and said, "Your dog is in my garden. _______ it _______!"

29. The situation in that country is very dangerous, so Washington is making plans to _______ its embassy staff _______.

30. David was so sick he couldn't even _______ _______ of bed.

31. It isn't easy to _______ this big car _______ that small garage.

**EXERCISE 42b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. My father came into my bedroom, shook my shoulder, and told me that breakfast was almost ready. What did my father do?

2. I live in New Orleans, and it's difficult to find the time to travel to Minnesota to visit my sister. What is difficult?

3. After you were arrested for drunken driving, you were in a lot of trouble. What did you do?

4. You need to return to your home very quickly. What do you need to do?

5. After Judy pays her bills, she just barely has enough money to survive until the end of the month. What can Judy just barely do?

6. If Heather doesn't work harder in her math class, she will not be able to stay at the same level as the other students. What will happen to Heather if she doesn't work harder?

7. It's been five years, but Frank is still sad about his brother's death. What hasn't Frank done yet?

8. I was trapped in my car after an accident, but a rescue worker removed me from my car. What did the rescue worker do?

9. Alex is removing his toy train from the closet. What is Alex doing to his toy train?

10. Carlos is standing on a table so that he can get the toy airplane that he threw on top of the refrigerator. What is Carlos doing?

11. The sofa was too big, and the movers couldn't bring it inside our new house. What couldn't the movers do?
12. There is a huge truck in front of us, and we can't pass it. What can't we do?

13. Lydia left the building when she heard the fire alarm. What did Lydia do?

14. After getting out of her car, Janice entered it again. What did Janice do?

15. Erik's bicycle was stolen, but now he has it again. What did Erik do?

16. The pilot had mechanical problems with her airplane, but the controllers on the ground helped her land. What did the controllers do to the pilot?

17. Bill called and asked me to come to his house very quickly. What did Bill ask me to do?

EXERCISE 42c, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- brush off, 37
- float around, 34
- punch in, 30
- sneak out, 41
- call back, 28
- go in\into, 41
- punch out, 30
- start up, 26
- call up, 28
- leave behind, 35
- run around, 40
- clear out, 32
- pick up, 39
- sell out, 39
- cross off, 39
- plug in\nto, 41
- sneak in\nto, 41

1. There's nothing to eat for dinner tonight. Can you _______ some takeout food _______ when you come home from work tonight?

2. My brother wants to store some of his stuff in my attic, so tonight I'm going to _______ some of the junk up there _______ to make more room.

3. If you want to get a ticket for the Superbowl, you'll need to hurry — they're _______ _______ fast.

4. When I go on vacation, I want to relax at the beach and _______ my worries _______.

5. Ned is worried. There's a rumor _______ _______ that someone is going to get fired.

6. I can't find the toy my daughter wants for her birthday anywhere. I've been _______ _______ all day looking for it.

7. I'm going to be late for work. Would you mind _______ me _______?

8. Dan must still be here in the office somewhere. He hasn't _______ _______ yet.

9. I haven't talked to Nancy in a long time. I think I'll _______ her _______ tonight.
10. Nancy was in the shower when I called, but her brother said she’d ______ me right ______.
11. Are you sure this is the right key? It won’t ______ the lock.
12. Margaret Cummings decided to leave her job with a big company and ______ her own company.
13. ______ the theater was easy. One of our friends went inside and opened the fire exit for the rest of us.
14. My father won’t let me go to the dance, so I’m going to ______ after he goes to bed.
15. None of the bad things people say about Charles bother him. He just ______ it ______.
16. I made a list of people to invite to my wedding, but after I heard all those nasty things Sarah said about my fiance, I ______ her name ______ the list.
17. Well, I think I’ve fixed the vacuum cleaner. Let’s ______ it ______ and see if it works now.

43. FOCUS ON: modals and present perfect phrasal verbs
Remember that the present perfect is formed with have or the contraction ‘ve and the past participle. The only difference is that has is not used for the third person singular:

He has run up a big bill. He would have run up a big bill.

The meanings of the modal and semimodal auxiliaries are unchanged in the present perfect, except for may and might.

Past speculation and you do not know what happened: might have or may have
When discussing something that was possible in the past and you do not know what happened, either might have or may have can be used:
I wonder where Jim is. He might have stopped off at the bar. I wonder where
Jim is. He may have stopped off at the bar.

Because you do not know whether Jim stopped off at the bar, either might have or may
have can be used.

Past speculation and you know what happened: only might have
When discussing something that was possible in the past and you know what happened, only might have can be used:

Climbing that tree was stupid. You might have fallen out. Climbing that
tree was stupid. You may have fallen out.

Because I know that the person I am talking to did not fall out of the tree, only might have
can be used.

Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blow out</td>
<td>blowout &amp; blows out</td>
<td>blowing out</td>
<td>blew out</td>
<td>blown out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. blow... out p.v. When a flame blows out or is blown out by a strong wind, it stops
burning. When you blow out a flame, you use your breath to make the flame stop
burning.

Don't open the window — the candles will blow out.
I couldn't light my cigarette, the wind kept blowing the match out.
The stove isn't working. Maybe the pilot light has blown out.

2. blow ...out (of) p.v. When something is moved outward away from where it was by an
explosion or a very strong wind, it is blown out or blown out of where it was before.
The force of the explosion blew all the windows out.
Look, there's a dead bird. The wind might have blown it out of its nest.

blowout n. When a tire bursts and suddenly loses its air while you are driving, you have a
blowout.

Maria had a blowout while she was driving, lost control of her car, and hit a tree.

3. blow... out p.v. When a piece of electrical equipment or a fuse blows out, it fails
because too much electricity is passing through it.

Don't be surprised if the fuse blows out — you have seven lights, your computer, and your TV all plugged into
one outlet.

When lightning hit our house, it blew all the telephones out.

332
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>give out</td>
<td>give out &amp; gives out</td>
<td>giving out</td>
<td>gave out</td>
<td>given out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **give ...out** (to) *p.v.* When you distribute something to other people, you *give it out* or *give it out to them*. **Hand out** is similar to *give out*.

   They *gave out* free hats to the first 5,000 fans to enter the stadium.

   The aid workers would have *given more food out* to the famine victims, but they didn’t have enough.

2. **give out** *(on)* *p.v.* When a mechanical or electrical device stops working, it *gives out* or *gives out on you*. When a supply of something is completely used, it *gives out* or *gives out on you*.

   The explorers *lost their way* in the desert and died after their water *gave out*.

   I bought a Chevrolet in 1964 and drove it more than 300,000 miles before it finally *gave out on me*.

| gross out | gross out & grosses out | grossing out | grossed out | grossed out |

1. **gross ...out** *(informal)* *p.v.* When something *grosses* you *out*, it upsets you or makes you sick because you think it is disgusting.

   You had to dissect a cadaver in your biology class? Yuk, that would’ve really *grossed me out*.

   Alex *hates changing his little brother’s diapers* — it *grosses him out*.

   **grossed out** *part.adj.* When something upsets you or makes you sick because you think it is disgusting, you are *grossed out*.

   I was eating an apple, and I found half a worm in it. I was so *grossed out* that I *almost threw up, head toward* head toward & heads toward, heading toward, headed toward.

1. **head toward** *p.v.* When you *head toward* a certain location, you move toward it. When you say that you are *headed toward* or are *heading toward* a certain location, you mean that you are planning to go there or that you are going there but have interrupted your journey and will resume it. **Head for** is the same as *head toward*.

   The escaped convicts must have *headed toward* Mexico.

   I’m *heading toward* Portland. Where are you going?

| run up | run up & runs up | running up | ran up | run up |

1. **run up** *(to)* *p.v.* When you run to a higher level or place, you *run up* or *run up to that place*.

   Run up and answer the phone if it rings, okay?

   If I’d heard the baby crying, I would have *run up* to his bedroom.
2. run ... up p.v. When you accumulate a number of debts, resulting in a total debt of a certain amount, you run up a bill for that amount.

Giving my son a credit card was a mistake — he ran up a $2,500 bill in only one month.

Calling your family every week from Australia must have run a big phone bill up.

run-up n. A large, sudden increase in the price, value, or cost of something is a run-up.

Bill was lucky to buy 500 shares of the stock just before the big run-up.

3. run up (to) p.v. When you run toward people, you run up or run up to them.

The prince didn’t have any bodyguards. Anyone could have run up and attacked him.

After the explosion, a man covered with blood ran up to me and asked for help.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shut up</td>
<td>shut up &amp; shuts up</td>
<td>shutting up</td>
<td>shut up</td>
<td>shut up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. shut up (about) p.v. [informal] When people stop talking, they shut up or shut up about something they are talking about. When you are angry and want people to stop talking, you tell them to shut up.

Marvin talks and talks and talks — he never shuts up.

I said I was sorry about crashing your car. Now will you please shut up about it!

---

1. shut... up p.v. [informal] When people or things cause you to stop talking, they shut you up.

Toad was making jokes about his wife at the party until she gave him a look that shut him right up.

I can’t hear the TV — can you shut those kids up?

---

1. stop off [after] p.v. When you stop off at a place or stop off in an area on the way to another place, you stop there briefly before continuing your journey.

I would have stopped off at Sally’s house this morning, but I was late for work.

Stopping off in Cairo on our way to India would be fun.

---

1. try on p.v. When you try on an item of clothing before deciding whether you will buy it or borrow it from someone in order to see if it fits or to see if you like it, you try it on.

She must have tried on twenty pairs of shoes before making up her mind.

Would you like to borrow this dress for the dance tonight? Here, try it on.
EXERCISE 43a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I got into Atlanta last night, and tomorrow I'm going to _______ _______ Miami.
2. I should've _______ this sweater _______ before I bought it. It's too small, and now I have to return it.
3. Nicole figured out why all the lights were off: a fuse _______ _______.
4. Sam couldn't have finished the marathon; his strength completely _______ _______.
5. It's a good thing Linda has health insurance; she has _______ _______ a huge bill at the hospital.
6. When the gas exploded, all the doors and windows _______ _______.
7. Marsha's always bragging about how smart she is and teasing me about my bad grades, but when I got 100 on the algebra test and she got 52, it really _______ her _______.
8. We're not flying directly to Japan; we're going to _______ _______ in Hawaii for a few days.
9. Hank's bad breath _______ _______ everyone _______.
10. _______! I'm tired of listening to your constant criticism.
11. I was so excited to see Karen after so many years that I _______ _______ to her and gave her a big hug.
12. This gas stove isn't working. I think the pilot light may have _______ _______ when you opened the window.
13. Job applications were _______ _______ to everyone standing in line.
14. When I saw smoke coming from the third floor window, I _______ _______ to look for the fire.

EXERCISE 43b — Complete the sentences with the correct second particles.

1. The flight attendant was _______ _______ the hole in the airplane's fuselage.
2. Free samples will be _______ _______ every customer who walks through the door.
3. His diseased heart finally _______ _______ him.
335
4. I was so angry that when I saw him I ran up _______ him and hit him.
5. George and Tom might have stopped off _______ New York.
6. Maybe they stopped off _______ Jim's house in the suburbs.

EXERCISE 43c Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The wind blew out. (the candle, it)

2. They gave out. (information, it)

3. She ran up. (a $4,000 bill, it)

4. Can I try on? (these pants, these)

5. The smell grossed out. (everyone, them)
EXERCISE 43d — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Rosa bought a coat, but it's too small. What should Rosa have done?
2. Your car's transmission finally stopped working after several days of problems. What did your car's transmission do?
3. The price of gold increased a lot very quickly. What would you call this increase in the price of gold?
4. Todd didn't know that the taco he ate at Miguel's house was made with cow brains. When Miguel told Todd what he had eaten, what must that have done to Todd?
5. In Question 4, how must Todd have been?
6. The children ran toward Betty very quickly. What did the children do?
7. The truck driver wouldn't have traveled toward Detroit. What wouldn't the truck driver have done?
8. Janice used her breath to stop the kerosene lamp from burning. What did Janice do?
9. Stopping Marvin from talking is nearly impossible. What is impossible?
10. Sally asked her brother how he could have accumulated such a large credit card bill. What did Sally ask her brother?
11. David stayed fora couple of nights in Denver before continuing to Las Vegas. What did David do?
12. My tire burst while I was driving. What did I have?

EXERCISE 43e, Review — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

broken in, 41  crossed off, 39  plugged in, 41
checked in, 41  filled up, 39  put off, 31
checked out, 41  leftover, 37  rundown, 36
chopped up, 39  let down, 37  sold out, 39
covered up, 37  paid off, 37  straightened out, 39
1. If you’re hungry, there’s some ________ pizza in the refrigerator.
2. This meat isn’t ________ enough; the pieces are too big.
3. That food isn’t ________; flies are going to land on it.
4. Someday John wants to move from this ________ neighborhood to a better one.
5. My feet really hurt because these shoes aren’t ________ yet.
6. My car loan is ________; I made my final payment last month.
7. After forty-five years with the company, I thought they would give me more than this cheap pen
   at my retirement party. I feel ________.
8. There aren’t eight names on the list; there are only five — three are ________.
9. We’re ________ now; we can take our luggage up to our hotel room.
10. We can get a taxi for the airport now; we’re ________.
11. The game isn’t ________; there are plenty of tickets left.
12. No wonder this radio doesn’t work — it’s not ________.
13. The tank isn’t ________ yet; there’s room for another gallon or two.
14. Is everything ________, or do I need to explain it again?
15. Why are you so ________? Did I say something that offended you?

EXERCISE 43f, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from
previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check
their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

burst out, 40  go into, 41  keep from, 38  keep up, 38
come back, 40  keep at, 38  keep off, 38  sneak in into, 41
get back, 42  keep away, 38  keep on, 38  sneak out of, 41
get behind, 42  keep down, 38  keep to, 38  wipe out, 39

1. Susie ________ the kitchen and took a cookie when her mother wasn’t looking.
2. When I was a teenager, I used to ________ of the house and meet my friends after
   my parents went to bed.
3. I just shampooed the carpet in the living room, so ________ ________ it.
4. I need to see my physical therapist. That pain I used to have in my knee is ________ ________.
5. Do you have a bigger envelope? This letter won’t ________ ________ this small one.
6. Betty asked the bus driver to stop, but he didn’t hear her and ________ right ________ going.
7. Maria leaves for work at 7:00 in the morning, and she doesn’t usually ________ ________ to her house until after 8:00 in the evening.
8. Jim has ________ way ________ in his studies because he’s been in the hospital for several weeks.
9. Marvin was acting like such an idiot when he was angry that I couldn’t ________ ________ laughing.
10. Don’t give up now—________ ________ it!
11. It was hard to ________ my magazine article ________ only 2,000 words — there was so much I wanted to say.
12. Mike ________ ________ crying when his wife told him she wanted a divorce.
13. I try to take notes in my history class, but the teacher talks so fast that I can’t ________ ________.
14. The enemy soldiers were almost completely ________ ________ in the attack.
15. That dog of yours is dangerous, so please ________ it ________ from my children.
16. The candy company has ________ the cost of its products ________ despite the rise in the cost of sugar.
44. FOCUS ON: participle adjectives and passive phrasal verbs with the verb get

It is important to understand two different but related uses of get in forming the passive voice.

**get + adjectives: get = become**

It is very common in English to use get followed by an adjective. This is not the passive. In this case get is similar to become:

- She got sick yesterday.
- She became sick yesterday.

**get + past participles: a form of the passive**

It is also very common to use get in place of be to form the passive voice. The construction is the same; get is followed by the past participle:

- Judy got kicked out of school.
- Judy was kicked out of school.

There is a difference, however, between the passive formed with be and the passive formed with get. When the passive is formed with get, there is often (but not always) a suggestion that the subject of the sentence was somehow responsible or partially responsible for what happened:

- Judy got kicked out of school.

A person hearing the sentence above might think that perhaps Judy did something wrong that resulted in her getting kicked out of school. Sometimes, to leave no doubt that the subject is responsible for what happened, a reflexive pronoun is used:

- Judy got herself kicked out of school. **get + participle**

**adjectives: adjective or passive?**

As we have seen, in English the past participles of many verbs are used as adjectives. When get is followed by a past participle, it is not always clear whether the sentence is passive or whether the past participle is functioning as an adjective.
In the examples above, we can see that the past participle is clearly functioning as an adjective since *get* can be replaced with *become*, but notice that the sentence can also pass the by test (discussed in Section 13), which indicates that it is passive:

*I got mixed up by all the confusing road signs last week.*

Again, we see how closely related adjectives and past participles are in English and how it is not always easy to distinguish between the two. Fortunately, it is not usually very important. What is important is to be comfortable using past participles as adjectives, and the key to doing so is not to understand the difference between true adjectives derived from past participles and past participles with an adjectival function but instead to understand that there often is no difference.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>beat up</strong></td>
<td>beat up &amp; beats up</td>
<td>beating up</td>
<td>beat up</td>
<td>beaten up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **beat... up** p.v. [informal] When you beat people up, you hit them or kick them repeatedly.
   - The muggers stole my money and then beat me up.
   - Timmy got beaten up at school today.

   **beat-up** part.adj. When something is in bad condition because of heavy use, it is beat-up.
   - My car is an old, beat-up piece of junk.

2. **carry away** (with) p.v. [always passive] When you get carried away or carried away with something, you do more than is necessary or proper because you enjoy it or because you think it is important.
   - I was going to make a dozen cupcakes for dessert tonight, but I got carried away and ended up making forty.
   - You should always start a new exercise program slowly. If you get carried away with it, you might hurt yourself.
David drank too much and got himself kicked out of the bar.

Bob’s in our car pool, but he’s always arguing with the other guys about something, so we’re going to kick him out.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lock up</td>
<td>lock up &amp; locks up</td>
<td>locking up</td>
<td>locked up</td>
<td>locked up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **lock... up** p.v. When you lock all the doors and windows of a building, you lock it up.
   - The manager always locks up before he goes home.
   - We locked our house up before we went on vacation.

2. **lock... up** p.v. When you lock people up, you put them in prison.
   - The police locked Hank up after they caught him shoplifting.

   **locked up** part.adj. After all the doors and windows of a building have been locked, it is locked up.
   - You can’t get in the house — it’s locked up.

   **locked up** part.adj. Someone who has been put in prison is locked up.
   - Being locked up in jail was a terrible experience.

   **lockup** n. A prison or other place where people are locked up is a lockup.
   - Omar was put in the lockup after he was arrested for drunken driving.

3. **mix... up** p.v. When you mix something up that has two or more ingredients, you stir it so that the ingredients will be thoroughly combined.
   - Put in the eggs, butter, sugar, flour, and water and then mix it up well.
   - An electric mixer will mix up the ingredients better than a hand mixer.

4. **mix... up** p.v. When you mix two things up, you confuse them with each other.
   - Jerry and his twin brother look exactly the same, and everyone mixes them up.
   - Newborn babies sometimes get mixed up in the hospital.

   **mixed up** part.adj. When you are confused about something that you want to understand, or when you have emotional or behavioral problems, you are mixed up.
   - Can you help me with my calculus homework? I’m really mixed up.
   - Jimmy is a mixed-up kid who gets in trouble with the police a lot.

   **mix-up** n. A mistake, misunderstanding, or confused situation is a mix-up.

   Waiter, I think there’s been a mix-up. I asked you for a chicken salad sandwich, but you brought me a tuna salad sandwich.
Infinitive present tense -ing form past tense past participle

**piss off** piss off & pisses off pissing off pissed off pissed off

1. **piss... off** *p.v. [informal and offensive to some people]* When you make people angry, you **piss** them off.

   You'd better stop that! You're **pissing** me off.

   Don't make a lot of noise when Mark is trying to study; it **pisses** him off.

**pissed off** *part.adj.* When you are angry, you are **pissed off**.

   Melonie got really **pissed off** at Heather for borrowing her necklace without asking and then losing it.

**rip off** rip off & rips off ripping off ripped off ripped off

1. **rip ...off** *p.v. [informal]* When you **rip** people off, you steal something from them, cheat them, or charge them more money for something than it is worth.

   Don't do business with Marvin; he **rips** everyone off. Hank got **ripped off** by the drug dealer.

**rip-off** *n.* When someone steals something from you, cheats you, or charges too much for something, this is a **rip-off**.

   I paid nine dollars to see that awful movie? What a **rip-off**! **stress out**

**stress out** stress out & stresses out stressing out stressed out stressed out

1. **stress... out** *p.v. [informal]* When people or things **stress** you out, they make you worried, nervous, or tense.

   Having that new manager around watching me all the time is **stressing** me out.

   Sally's sister has to take care of quadruplets all day without any help. That must **stress** her out.

**stressed out** *part.adj.* When you are worried, nervous, or tense, you are **stressed out**.

   I had to make a speech at work today, and I was so **stressed out** afterward that I took the rest of the day off.

**EXERCISE** 44a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The prison guard put Jake in a cell and __________ him _________.

2. Tom asked the barber to just cut his hair a little bit, but when he looked in the mirror, he could see that the barber was getting ______ _____ and cutting his hair too short.
3. Erik promised me that he would come to my house to help me move some stuff this morning, but he still hasn’t shown up. He’s always doing things like that, and it really________ me.

4. If Janice doesn’t pass her chemistry test tomorrow, she won’t graduate with the rest of her lass, and worrying about it so much is really ________ her ________.

5. I got ________ ________ of school after I got caught cheating on the test.
6. The robbers ________ the shop owner so badly that she had to be hospitalized.
7. Add a cup of water and four eggs to the cake mix and ________ it ________ well.
8. The night manager forgot to ________ ________ when she left the restaurant.
9. The jewelry store ________ me ________ I paid $5,000 for a diamond ring made of glass.
10. The teacher has two students with the same name, and she always ________ them

EXERCISE 44b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The thugs beat up. (the woman, her)

2. The hotel manager kicked out. (the rock group, them)

3. The cops are going to lock up. (the crook, her)
4. Mixing up is easy. (the twins, them)

5. Getting a tattoo must have pissed off. (your father, him)

6. The contractor was accused of ripping off. (homeowners, them)

7. All these problems are stressing out. (the staff, them)

EXERCISE 44c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Tom paid a mechanic to replace his car’s generator with a new one, but the mechanic put a used generator in and still charged Tom for a new one. What did the mechanic do to Tom?

2. In Question 1, what would you call what the mechanic did to Tom?

3. If they don’t stop making so much noise, the manager is going to tell them to leave. What is the manager going to do?

4. You locked all the doors and windows in your house. What did you do?

5. In Question 4, how would you describe your house after you locked all the doors and windows?

6. Many cars look the same these days, and it’s hard to tell them apart. If it is hard to tell them apart, what is it easy to do?
7. Scratching my brother’s new car really made him angry. What did scratching my brother’s new car do to my brother?

8. In Question 7, how would you describe my brother?

9. Linda is very confused about how to use her computer. How would you describe Linda?

10. Driving in all this traffic is making you nervous and tense. What is driving in all this traffic doing to you?

11. In Question 10, how would you describe yourself?

12. I let Charles use my skis, and when he returned them, they were in very bad condition. How were my skis when Charles returned them?

13. Sam’s father was sent to prison for bank robbery. What happened to Sam’s father?

14. In Question 13, how would you describe Sam’s father?

15. Karen went to the store planning to buy a pair of shoes, but she ended up buying five pairs of shoes, three dresses, four blouses, and a new winter coat. What happened to Karen?

16. When the angry people caught the thief, they hit and kicked him again and again. What did the angry crowd do?

17. When you put all the ingredients in, you have to stir them so they will be combined. What do you have to do?

**EXERCISE 44d, Review** — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal Verbs</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break into</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep at</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep off</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay off</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring up</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep away</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep on</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up to</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cover up</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep down</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep to</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stick with</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help out</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep from</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep up</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take over</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The newspaper story claimed that the governor had taken a bribe and had then tried to _______ it _______.

2. That stock I bought really _______ _______. It went up nearly 100 percent in only three months.
3. After the new manager ________ next month, you can expect a lot of changes.
4. Will you kids ________ it ________, please? I'm on the phone.
5. I told you to stop. If you ________ doing that, I'm going to get pissed off.
6. The police think the burglars may have ________ through the back door.
7. If you kids go outside to play, ________ from that pile of junk—it's full of broken glass.
8. I need to talk to Jerry about his bad breath, but I'm nervous about ________ it ________.
9. Dan is so sad about what happened that he can't ________ crying.
10. When I went to the car rental office, they had already rented all the good cars, and they
    ________ me ________ a beat-up piece of junk.
11. The legislature passed a tough new law designed to ________ drunken drivers ________ the streets.
12. When you're depressed you should talk to people about what's troubling you, not ________ it ________
    yourself.
13. I'm broke — do you think you could ________ me ________ till payday?
14. Nothing the inventor tried worked, but he ________ ________ it until he solved the problem.
15. I can't believe that my daughter would steal money from me. That awful boyfriend of hers must
    have ________ her ________ ________ it.
16. Jane did very well in her first semester of college. I hope she can ________ it ________ for the
    next four years.
**45. FOCUS ON: phrasal verbs with the verb turn**

Many phrasal verbs are based on the verb turn. In most cases, phrasal verbs with turn involve two options and a change from one option to the other or, when it is possible, a move closer to one option and farther away from the other. In other words, choosing either A or B or, when it is possible to be somewhere between A and B, moving closer to A and farther away from B, or vice versa.

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>turn</td>
<td>turn down &amp; turns down</td>
<td>turning down</td>
<td>turned down</td>
<td>turned down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **turn ...down** p.v. When you turn down an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to decrease the level of what it is producing or doing. **Turn up** is the opposite of turn down.

   Could you turn the radio down? I'm trying to sleep.

   If it gets too cold, I'll turn down the air conditioner.

2. **turn ... down** p.v. When you deny a request, you turn down the request or turn down the person who has made the request.

   I asked Nancy to go to the dance with me, but she turned me down.

   My request for a pay raise was turned down.

   Getting turned down every time I apply for a job is getting me down.

**turn in**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>turn in &amp; turns in</th>
<th>turning in</th>
<th>turned in</th>
<th>turned in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **turn ... in (to)** p.v. When you inform the police that certain people have committed crimes or tell the police where they are, you turn them in or turn them in to the police.

   The escaped prisoner got tired of running and turned himself in.

   When Jake told me that he had murdered Luis, I knew I had to turn him in to the police.

2. **turn ... in (to)** p.v. When you return something that was given to you by a person in authority, you turn that thing in or turn it in to a person in authority. **Hand in** is similar to turn in.

   The police officer was ordered to turn in her badge after she was caught taking a bribe.

   The delivery truck drivers have to turn their keys in to the dispatcher before they go home.

3. **turn ... in (to)** p.v. When you complete a test, report, or project and you give it to the person who assigned the work to you, you turn it in or turn it in to the person who assigned the work. **Hand in** is similar to turn in.
Melanie asked her teacher if she could **turn** her project in late.
I have to finish this report and **turn it in** to the sales manager by tomorrow.

4. **turn in** **p.v.** When you go to bed, you **turn in**.
I’m really tired; I’m going to **turn in** early.
It’s getting late; I’m **turning in**.

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>turn into</th>
<th>turn into &amp; turns into</th>
<th>turning into</th>
<th>turned into</th>
<th>turned into</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **turn into** **p.v.** When something **turns into** something else, it becomes that thing.
   
   It was cold and rainy this morning, but it **turned into** a nice day.
   
   It’s amazing that this small seed can **turn into** a huge tree.

2. **turn ...into** **p.v.** When you **turn** something **into** something else, you change it into that thing.
   
   The Youngs are thinking of **turning** their house in the country **into** a hotel.
   
   The children **turned** the big box **into** a playhouse.

#### turn off

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>turn off</th>
<th>turn off &amp; turns off</th>
<th>turning off</th>
<th>turned off</th>
<th>turned off</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **turn ...off** **p.v.** When you **turn off** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to stop it from producing or doing something. **Turn on** is the opposite of **turn off**.
   
   **Switch off** and **shut off** are similar to **turn off**.
   
   *Would you **turn the light off**? I want to go to bed.*
   
   **turned off** **part.adj.** After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to stop it from producing or doing something, it is **turned off**. **Turned on** is the opposite of **turned off**. **Switched off** and **shut off** are similar to **turned off**.
   
   *I can’t see anything — the lights are **turned off**.*

2. **turn ...off** **p.v.** [informal] Something that **turns you off** offends you and causes you to lose interest in something or someone. Something about a person of the opposite sex that **turns you off** causes you to lose sexual or romantic interest in that person. **Turn on** is the opposite of **turn off**.
   
   *When I met Dan I thought he was a nice guy, but his racist comments **turned me off**.*
   
   *I got **turned off** when she lit a cigarette.*

**turned off** **part.adj.** When something about a person of the opposite sex causes you to lose sexual or romantic interest in that person, you are **turned off**. **Turned on** is the opposite of **turned off**.

*What’s wrong with Nicole? She was having a good time with Frank a little while ago, but now she seems kind of **turned off**.*
turnoff n. Something that offends you and causes you to lose interest in something or someone is a turnoff. Something about a person of the opposite sex that causes you to lose sexual or romantic interest in that person is a turnoff. A turn-on is the opposite of a turnoff.

I don't like tattoos. To me they're a real turnoff.

3. turn off p.v. When you turn off a road or path that you are traveling on, you leave it and start to travel on another road or path. When a road or path leaves another road or path and travels in a different direction, it turns off,

Be careful you don't turn off the main road — you'll get lost.
The path to the cabin turns off just after the big tree stump.

turnoff n. A road or path that leaves another road or path and travels in a different direction is a turnoff.

We're lost — I think we should have taken that turnoff we passed a few miles back.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>turn on</td>
<td>turn on &amp; turns on</td>
<td>turning on</td>
<td>turned on</td>
<td>turned on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. turn ... on p.v. When you turn on an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to make it start producing or doing something. Turn off is the opposite of turn on. Switch on is the same as turn on.

Can you turn the light on please? It's dark in here.

This October has been so warm that I haven't turned the heat on once yet.

turned on part.adj. After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to make it start producing or doing something, it is turned on. Turned off is the opposite of turned on. Switched on is similar to turned on.

Be careful of the stove — it's turned on.

2. turn ... on p.v. [informal] Something that turns you on pleases you and causes you to gain interest in something or someone. Something about a person of the opposite sex that turns you on causes you to become sexually or romantically interested in that person. Turn off is the opposite of turn on.

When I saw this house from the outside, I didn't think I would buy it, but the beautiful woodwork inside really turned me on.

Erik's blue eyes turn on his wife.

turned on part.adj. When something about a person of the opposite sex causes you to become sexually or romantically interested in that person, you are turned on. Turned off is the opposite of turned on.

Paul was really turned on after seeing all the beautiful women in the Victoria's Secret catalog.
**turn-on** n. Something that pleases you and causes you to gain interest in something or someone is a turn-on. Something about a person of the opposite sex that causes you to become sexually or romantically interested in that person is a turn-on. A turnoff is the opposite of a turn-on.

I bought my wife an ankle bracelet for Valentine’s Day; I think they’re a turn-on.

3. **turn on** p.v. When people or animals that you had good relations with turn on you, they stop being friendly and try to hurt you.

Lydia used to be my friend, but now she’s telling people terrible things about me. I wonder why she turned on me like that?

Wild animals don’t make good pets. They can be friendly one minute and turn on you the next.

4. **turn... on (to)** p.v. (informal) When you turn people on to something, you tell them about something you think they will like or something that will help them.

Maria turned me on to a great Colombian restaurant.

This was a good book. Thanks for turning me on to it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>turn out</td>
<td>turn out &amp; turns out</td>
<td>turning out</td>
<td>turned out</td>
<td>turned out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **turn out** p.v. [usually followed by “to be” plus an adjective, an infinitive verb plus a noun, or a complete sentence] When things or people turn out to be a certain way, it is discovered or considered that they are that way. When things or people turn out to be something, it is discovered or considered that they are that thing. When you say that it turns out (that) or turned out (that) and then make a statement of fact, you mean that this information, which is contrary to what you believed or expected, was discovered to be true.

I didn’t think I would like my brother’s new wife, but she turned out to be very nice.

Before I met Rusty’s son, Danny, I assumed he had red hair like his father, but Danny turned out to have black hair.

I thought Sam bought a Mercedes-Benz, but it turns out that he bought a BMW.

I thought Sam bought a Mercedes-Benz, but it turned out that he bought a BMW.

2. **turn out** p.v. When something turns out, it becomes what you want it to become. When something turns out a certain way, it becomes that way.

Did the pictures you took at the wedding turn out?

The pictures turned out perfectly.

Your plan was excellent, but it didn’t turn out well.

3. **turn... out** p.v. When people, companies, factories, workshops, and so on, turn out something, they manufacture it or produce it.

This new factory will turn out 50,000 units per year.

High schools in America are turning out people who can barely read.
4. **turn out** (for) p.v. When people **turn out** or **turn out** for an event, they attend or participate in the event. When people **turn out** to do something, they go to a place to do it.

   Are you nuts? How many people do you think would **turn out** for an outdoor concert in the middle of winter?

   Thousands of people **turned out** to see the Pope when he visited.

**turnout** n. The number of people who attend or participate in an event is the **turnout**.

   Voter **turnout** for the election was only around 30 percent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>turn over</td>
<td>turn over &amp; turns over</td>
<td>turning over</td>
<td>turned over</td>
<td>turned over</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **turn ... over** p.v. When you **turn** something **over**, you move it so that the side that was on the bottom is on the top, and vice versa. When something **turns over**, it moves so that the side that was on the bottom is on the top, and vice versa.

   When one side of the steak is cooked, **turn it over** and cook the other side.

   The driver was killed when his car **turned over**.

2. **turn ... over** (to) p.v. When you give something to someone because that person demands or requires it or because you are not its rightful owner, you **turn** it **over** to that person. **Hand over** is similar to **turn over**.

   The detective always **turns** the evidence from the crime scene **over** to the lab for analysis.

   After the thieves are captured, the stolen items will be **turned over** to the rightful owners.

3. **turn ... over** (to) p.v. When the police or other authorities are looking for people and you take these people or transfer control of them to the police or authorities, you **turn them** **over** or **turn the** **them over** to the police or authorities.

   I caught a burglar in my basement, and I **turned him over** to the police.

   The local police chief was relieved to **turn the terrorist over** to the FBI.

4. **turn over** p.v. When employees of a company leave their jobs and are replaced by new employees, they **turn over**.

   Conditions at the factory were so bad that employees **turned over** at a high rate. We have a very stable work force in our plant. Employees **turn over** very slowly.

**turnover** n. The rate at which employees of a company leave and are replaced by new employees is the **turnover**.

   The new personnel manager said her top priority would be reducing the high **turnover**.
5. **turn over** p.v. When a business **turns over** something that it sells, it continually sells it and replaces it with new merchandise.

   *We're turning over* forty cases of bananas a week in this supermarket.
   *Snowmobiles and skis* turn over *very slowly in the summer.*

**turnover** n. How much money a business has made in a certain time period is its turnover.

   *The company's annual turnover increased by 36 percent compared to the previous year.*

---

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>turn up</td>
<td>turn up &amp; turns up</td>
<td>turning up</td>
<td>turned up</td>
<td>turned up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. **turn up** p.v. When you **turn up** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to increase the level of what it is producing or doing. **Turn down** is the opposite of turn up.

   *Will you turn up the TV? I can't hear it.*
   *It was freezing in here last night, so I turned up the heat.*

2. **turn up** p.v. When you **turn up** something, you find it or learn of it as a result of an investigation or search. When something **turns up**, it is found or is learned of as a result of an investigation or search.

   *The police turned up enough evidence to convict Jake of murder.*
   *Despite a thorough search, the murder weapon still hasn't turned up.*

3. **turn up** p.v. When people or things **turn up** at a place, they appear there. **Show up** is similar to **turn up**.

   *It's hard to plan a picnic when I don't know how many people will turn up.*
   *Every few years my worthless brother turns up at my door asking for money.*

---

**EXERCISE 45a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.**

1. I thought going camping would be a lot of fun, but it sure didn't _______ _______ that way.
2. It's 2:30 in the morning — don't you think you ought to _______ _______ soon?
3. Heather was sort of interested in Tom, but his childish behavior _______ her _______.
4. The store manager said that she usually _______ _______ only twenty or twenty-five units per month.
5. Jake thought Hank was his best friend, but Hank _______ ________ Jake and now they're enemies.
6. All the medical students must _______ their lab equipment ________ before leaving the lab.
7. Any spies caught behind enemy lines will be _______ ________ to the military for questioning.
8. The investigation _______ evidence of corruption in City Hall.
9. This old house looks pretty bad now, but with enough time and money, you could _______ it _______ something really nice.
10. I want to watch TV; please _______ it ________.
11. The volume is too low; please _______ it ________.
12. Now the volume is too high; please _______ it ________.
13. There's nothing good on TV; please _______ it ________.
14. The first thing I noticed when I met my wife for the first time was her beautiful smile; it really _______ me ________.
15. Employees _______ ________ at a very high rate in this industry.
16. Not many people are likely to _______ ________ for the parade in this miserable weather.
17. The boy was given a reward for _______ ________ the bag of money that he found in the street.
18. To get to Uncle John's house, you have to _______ ________ the main road after you cross the bridge and drive north for three miles.
19. Mark knows a lot about wine. He's _______ me ________ to some excellent wines from California.
20. My supervisor _______ ________ my request to be transferred to San Diego.
21. The first few chapters of this novel were a little boring, but now that I'm near the end, it's _______ ________ to be a pretty good book.
22. Please _______ the carpet ________. I want to read the label on the back.
23. A huge crowd is expected to _______ _______ at the airport to welcome the returning Stanley Cup champions.

24. This company has been _______ _______ first-rate merchandise for a hundred years.

25. I told the teacher that I'd been in the hospital and wouldn't be able to _______ _______ my project on time.

26. We've had one problem after another — this is _______ _______ to be a bad day.

27. When Jake told his mother that he had murdered someone, she told him he had to _______ _______ himself.

EXERCISE 45b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Caterpillars become butterflies. What do caterpillars do?
2. Dan appeared at his uncle's funeral. What did Dan do?
3. Frank was thinking of asking Jane for a date, but when he saw her smoking one cigarette after another, he changed his mind. What did Jane's smoking do to Frank?
4. In Question 3, what does Frank think smoking is?
5. In Question 3, how did Frank feel when he saw Jane smoking?
6. Whenever my wife wears my favorite perfume, I feel romantic. What does the perfume do to me?
7. In Question 6, what do I think the perfume is?
8. In Question 6, how do I feel whenever my wife wears my favorite perfume?
9. You're changing the controls of the heater to make it warmer. What are you doing?
10. The rate at which old employees are replaced with new employees in my company is very low. What is very low at my company?
11. This factory manufactures 25,000 cars every year. What does the factory do?
12. Nicole didn't change the controls of her radio to make it louder. What didn't Nicole do?
13. The detective asked every bank employee a lot of questions about the missing money, but she hasn't discovered anything. What hasn't the detective done?
14. After the gas station went out of business, it was bought and changed into a Chinese restaurant. What happened to the gas station?
15. Sally wanted to dye her hair red, but it became orange. What did Sally's hair do?
16. Karen's father asked her if he could borrow enough money to pay his property taxes, and Karen couldn't say no to him. What couldn't Karen do?
17. Todd's company will probably make $4 million this year. What will Todd's company probably do this year?
18. Ned hasn't given his paper to his teacher. What hasn't Ned done?
19. Lydia knows that her brother robbed a bank, but she's not going to tell the police. What isn't Lydia going to do to her brother?
20. So many people attended the political rally that there wasn't enough room in the auditorium. Why wasn't there enough room at the political rally?
21. In Question 20, the number of people who attended the rally was large. What was large?
22. David was too lazy to wash the rug, so he put the dirty side on the bottom and the clean side on the top. What did David do to the rug?

**EXERCISE 45c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.**

1. ____________________________________________________
2. _________________________________________________________
3. _____________________________________________________
4. _________________________________________________________
5. ___________________________________________________________
6. __________________________________________________________
7. __________________________________________________________
8. __________________________________________________________
EXERCISE 45d, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

beat up, 44  get by, 42  get over, 42  lock up, 44
carry away, 44  get down, 42  get up, 42  run up, 43
get back, 42  get into, 42  gross out, 43  stop off, 43
get behind, 42  get out, 42  head toward, 43  try on, 43

1. I lost a very expensive gold watch, and I'll be very surprised if I ever _________ it _______.
2. I had dinner with some friends, and we _________ a $500 tab.
3. Have you _________ _________ to see your parents in Alaska lately?
4. I should have _________ these pants _______ before buying them — they're too small.
5. Carlos was hitting his brother Alex, so Alex said to Carlos, "_________ of here!"
6. I called my brother in Miami and told him that I was leaving Boston at 8:40 in the morning and that I _________ _______ there around 1:00 in the afternoon.
7. I wish you'd chew with your mouth closed — you're _________ me _______.
8. Our flight won't _________ _______ Santa Fe until after midnight.
9. After I leave Texas, I'm going to _______ Mississippi.
10. Karen's expecting me for dinner tonight at her house way out in the suburbs, but my car is in the shop. I don't know how I'm going to _______ _______ there.
11. The night manager has to leave early tonight, so I'm going to ________ _______ for him.
12. Hank had a fight with a guy in a bar and got _______ _______ pretty badly.
13. I had a bad day at work, so I _________ _______ at a bar for a drink before going home.
14. Sofia is having a lot of trouble in her history class and is _______ further and further _______.
15. After her husband died, she had a hard time _________ _______.
16. You can use my credit card to buy a few things, but don't get _______ _______.
46. **FOCUS ON: pronunciation of phrasal verbs with the particle into**

As we saw in Section 6, three-word phrasal verbs are normally accented on the second, or middle, particle whether they are separable or nonseparable. This also applies to phrasal verbs that convert in to into when they are used with an object. Although these verbs are not made up of three words, recall that into is actually a combination of the particles in and to — two words written as one. For this reason, it is the first syllable of into that is accented:

The speakers are built **into** the wall.

This is also true of phrasal verbs using into that do not have an in version:

\[I \text{ bumped } \text{in} \text{to } \text{an } \text{old } \text{friend.}\]

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>build in</strong></td>
<td>build in &amp; builds in</td>
<td>building in</td>
<td>built in</td>
<td>built in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**1. build ...in/into p.v.** When you **build** something in or **build** something into something else, you put it in the item you are making during its construction or assembly rather than adding it later.

I told the builder that I wanted him to build some shelves in.

In the past, FM radios weren't built into cars — you had to add one later if you wanted one.

**built-in part.adj.** When something has been put into something else during its construction or assembly, rather than being added later, it is built-in.

The sound from the stereo goes to built-in speakers in every room of the house.

**bump into**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bump into &amp; bumps into</th>
<th>bumping into</th>
<th>bumped into</th>
<th>bumped into</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**1. bump into p.v.** When you **bump into** things or people, you accidentally hit them with your body.

I couldn't see where I was going in the dark, and I bumped into the door.

Would you please move these boxes — I keep bumping into them.

**2. bump into p.v.** When you meet people unexpectedly or unintentionally, you bump into them. **Run into** is the same as bump into.

We bumped into Sarah at the mall today.

**Bumping into** one of my neighbors while I was in Rome sure was a surprise.
**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>con into</td>
<td>con into &amp; cons into</td>
<td>conning into</td>
<td>conned into</td>
<td>conned into</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **con into** p.v. [informal] When you **con** people **into** something or **con** people **into** doing something, you persuade them to do it by fooling or deceiving them. **Trick into** is similar to **con into**.

   They weren’t sure that it was a good idea to give all their money to Marv’m, but he **conned** them **into** it.

   That crooked mechanic tried to **con me into** paying for a lot of repairs my car didn’t need.

2. **con out of** p.v. [informal] When you **con** people **out of** something, you persuade them to give it to you by fooling or deceiving them.

   Marvin **conned** them **out of** their life savings.

   That crooked mechanic tried to **con me out of** $547.

3. **freak** p.v. [informal] When you **freak** out, you become very upset or very angry. When you **freak** other people out, you cause them to become very upset or very angry.

   Melanie **freaked out** when she learned that her husband had been arrested for murder.

   I wish you would take that Halloween mask off— **you’re freaking me out**.

4. **make for** p.v. When something **makes for** another thing, situation, or event to have a certain quality or characteristic, it **makes for** the other thing, situation, or event.

   Beer, pizza, football, and the kids staying with their grandparents **make for** a perfect Sunday afternoon.

   Alcohol and teenage drivers **make for** trouble.

5. **talk into** p.v. When you **talk** people **into** something or **talk** people **into** doing something, you persuade them to do it.
My father didn’t want to let me use his car Friday night, but I talked him into it.
This museum is really boring. I wish I hadn’t let you talk me into coming here with you.

**talk out of**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>talk out of</th>
<th>talk out of &amp; talks out of</th>
<th>talking out of</th>
<th>talked out of</th>
<th>talked out of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. talk... out of p.v. When you talk people out of something or talk people out of doing something, you persuade them not to do it.

   That man was going to jump off the building, but the police officer talked him out of it.

   Erik’s parents talked him out of changing his major from business to philosophy.

EXERCISE 46a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. My daughter is trying to _______ me _______ getting her a pony, but I keep telling her we can’t afford one.
2. When I ordered my computer, I had them _______ _______ some extra memory.
3. It was a nice surprise to _______ _______ Aunt Kathy today. I hadn’t seen her in years.
4. Don’t tell your mother you’re going to shave your head — she’ll _______ _______.
5. Joe says he’s going to quit school, and we can’t _______ _______ it.
6. Their sleazy son-in-law _______ _______ lending him $14,000.
7. It was so dark last night that I _______ _______ a tree and broke my nose.
8. Nancy and Tom don’t have anything in common — that doesn’t _______ _______ a happy marriage.
9. Don’t trust Marvin — he’ll _______ _______ your last penny.
10. When the enemy soldiers attacked, we _______ _______ the woods.
EXERCISE 46b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Karen is trying to persuade me to help her paint her house. What is Karen trying to do?
2. Francisco unexpectedly met Raul downtown a couple of days ago. What did Francisco do?
3. That lawyer is lying to you and trying to persuade you to give him everything you own. What is the lawyer trying to do?
4. Having both of my ex-wives at the party will make the evening very uncomfortable. What will having both of my ex-wives at the party do?
5. That dishonest guy deceived my Aunt Kathy to get her to sell her house for a lot less than it's worth. What did the dishonest guy do to my Aunt Kathy?
6. Carmen is upset and very nervous because she can't find her children at the shopping center. What is Carmen doing?
7. When my house was constructed, a shelf for a TV was made in the wall. What was done to the wall?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe the shelf?
9. Bob has decided to quit his job, and no one can persuade him not to. What can no one do to Bob?

EXERCISE 46c — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

1. _____________________________
2. _____________________________
3. _____________________________
4. _____________________________
5. _____________________________
6. _____________________________
7. _____________________________
8. _____________________________

361
EXERCISE 46d, Review — Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- blowout, 43
- checkout, 41
- mix-up, 44
- takeover, 39
- break-in, 41
- comeback, 40
- pickup, 39
- wipeout, 39
- check-in, 41
- lockup, 44
- run-up, 43

1. The guy that got arrested didn't have enough money for bail, so he was put in the _______.
2. The baseball player had a few bad years, but last year he made an amazing _________ and had his best year ever.
3. Not one person was left alive after the battle — it was a complete _________.
4. _________ is two hours before the flight.
5. The hotel's _________ time is 11:00 A.M.
6. There was a tragic _________ at the hospital — a patient's healthy left kidney was removed instead of his diseased right kidney.
7. The detective asked the store owner for a complete list of items stolen during the _________.
8. Is this a _________ or a delivery?
9. After the military _________, hundreds of people were executed.
10. Unfortunately, I sold my house before the big _________ in real estate prices.
11. The truck driver was killed in an accident after she had a _________ on the highway.

EXERCISE 46e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- blow off, 40
- give out, 43
- lock up, 44
- stick with, 40
- bring up, 40
- go away, 40
- piss off, 44
- stress out, 44
- burst out, 40
- kick out, 44
- shut up, 43
- turn in, 45
- get by, 42
- let in, into, 41
- stand for, 34
- turn into, 45

1. Sooner or later he'll get tired of running from the police, and he'll _________ himself _________.

362
2. I ______ my children _______ to be honest.
3. When we leave our summer home to go back to the city, we always _______ it _______ securely.
4. I took three aspirin, but this headache still hasn't _______ _______.
5. Do you know what “Ph.D.” _______ _______?
6. I usually check my work pretty carefully, I don't know how this mistake _______ _______ me.
7. Worrying about how I'm going to find the money to pay my taxes is really _______ _______.
8. I'm tired of listening to my brother talk about winning four million dollars in the lottery. I wish he would just _______ _______.
9. Those new computers are really fast, but I'm going to _______ _______ the one I have; it's fine for writing letters.
10. The tennis player had to retire when his elbow _______ _______.
11. I'm going to talk to my husband about _______ the garage _______ an apartment for my mother.
12. Joe promised that he'd help me fix my car yesterday, but he never came; he just _______ _______.
13. Joe does that sort of thing all the time, and it's very rude. He really _______ me _______.
14. The door was locked, so I knocked on it again and again until someone _______ _______ me.
15. What did Nancy do to get herself _______ _______ of school?
16. When I heard about the crazy thing that Nancy had done at school, I _______ _______ laughing.
47. FOCUS ON: particles used without verbs

The particles of many phrasal verbs, especially phrasal verbs that relate to physical movement, are frequently used alone with a form of be. This is very common in conversation when the verb has already been stated at least once and does not need to be repeated:

Customer: Have you run out of coffee? Store clerk: We’re out of regular coffee, but we’re not out of instant.

Marsha: When do you have to move out of your apartment? Nancy: I have to be out by next Wednesday.

Jim: Did you turn the air conditioner on? Bob: No, it was on when I came in.

Mother: Has your sister woken up yet? Susie: No, she’s still not up.

Using the particle without a verb is also common when a phrasal verb can be understood from the context. Sometimes, only one verb is obvious:

Randall: Are you through?
Todd: No, I won’t be through until after 4:00.

If this conversation occurred at a place of employment, the phrasal verb could only be get through. But often, in a particular situation, more than one verb might be understood, but to the speakers it is not important or necessary to be specific about which one:


If this conversation occurred in an office building, several verbs might be understood: come in, go in, get in, (be) let in.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>brush up</td>
<td>brush up &amp; brushes up</td>
<td>brushing up</td>
<td>brushed up</td>
<td>brushed up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **brush up** (on) p.v. When you brush up or brushes up on something, you study or practice a skill or subject you used to know but have forgotten or partly forgotten.

   It's been a long time since I studied algebra, but I'm going to need it if I go back to school to study for my master's degree, so I'd better brush up.

   Frank's going to Peru next month, so he's been brushing up on his Spanish.
1. **come in** p.v. When people or things enter a place, room, house, and so on that you are in, they *come in* or *come into* it. Go out is the opposite of *come in*.
   - Welcome to my house. Please *come in*.
   - The burglar *came into* the house through the back door.

2. **come in** p.v. When a train, bus, airplane, or ship *comes in*, it arrives. Get in is similar to *come in*.
   - Do you know when the train from Kankakee *comes in*?
   - David's plane hasn't *come in* yet.

3. **come in** p.v. When people arrive at the place where they work, they *come in*. Get in is similar to *come in*.
   - The manager is angry with Linda because she *comes in* late every day.
   - I called to tell the boss that I was sick and wouldn't be *coming in*.

4. **come in** p.v. When something that a store will sell *comes in*, it is delivered to the store.
   - Let's go shopping at Macy's tomorrow; the summer clothes have *come in*.
   - I couldn't buy that new book I wanted; it hasn't *come in* yet.

5. **come in** p.v. When a thing or skill *comes in* handy, it is something useful that you like to have available when you need it.
   - When I travel, I always take a small sewing kit with me; it really *comes in* handy if a button falls off.
   - I don't know how to speak Japanese, but knowing how to say the numbers and "please" and "thank you" when I was in Japan sure *came in* handy.

**cut back**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>come in</strong></td>
<td><em>come in</em> &amp; <em>comes in</em></td>
<td><em>coming in</em></td>
<td><em>came in</em></td>
<td><em>come in</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **cut back** (on) p.v. When you *cut back*, or *cut back* on the amount of money you spend, you spend less.
   - The President said he was against *cutting back* on spending for education.
   - My father said that we're spending too much and have to *cut back*.

**cutback** n. A **cutback** is a reduction in the amount of money you spend on something.
   - The people who work on the air force base are worried that they'll lose their jobs because of military spending **cutbacks**.
2. **cut back** (on) p.v. When you cut back or cut back on something that you consume, you use it less. When you cut back or cut back on something that you do, you do it less. **Cut down** is similar to cut back.

Mark hasn't been able to quit smoking, but he has cut back a bit.

You're getting a little overweight; maybe you should cut back on sweets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>move in</strong></td>
<td>move in &amp; moves in</td>
<td>moving in</td>
<td>moved in</td>
<td>moved in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **move into** p.v. When you move in or move into a place, you bring your furniture and other personal possessions into a place where you will live. **Move out** is the opposite of move into.

The landlord said we could move right in if we want to.

Erik's moving into a bigger apartment next week.

2. **move... into** p.v. When you move people in or move them into a place, you bring their furniture and other personal possessions into a place where they will live. When you move things in or move them into a place, you take them in. Move out is the opposite of move into.

The movers moved me in in less than two hours.

Moving all this furniture into a fifth-floor apartment isn't going to be easy.

3. **move in (with)** p.v. When you move in or move in with people, you bring your furniture and other personal possessions into a place where you will live.

Bill moved out of his house for a while when he separated from his wife, but yesterday he moved back in.

My Aunt Kathy might move in with her son and his family.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>move out</th>
<th>move out &amp; moves out</th>
<th>moving out</th>
<th>moved out</th>
<th>moved out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **move out** (of) p.v. When you move out or move out of a place, you take your furniture and other personal possessions out of a place where you lived. Move into is the opposite of move out.

Could you help me move out? I have to be out by the end of the month.

Mr. and Mrs. Baker moved out of their big house and into a smaller place after their children grew up.

1. **move... out (of)** p.v. When you move people out or move them out of a place, you take their furniture and other personal possessions out of a place where they lived. When you move things out or move them out of a place, you take them out. Move into is the opposite of move out.

One of our roommates wasn't paying his rent, so we moved his stuff out while he was at work.

The company had a sale to try to move some merchandise out of the warehouse.
### 1. pull out (of) p.v. When a car, truck, or other vehicle **pulls out** or **pulls out** of a parking space, it leaves the place where it was parked and starts driving in the street. When the drivers of cars, trucks, or other vehicles **pull out** or **pull out** of a parking space, they leave the place where they were parked and start driving in the street.

- The accident happened when the Ford **pulled out** in front of the Chevy.
- You should fasten your seat belt before you **pull out** of the parking space.

### 2. pull out (of) p.v. When you **pull out** or **pull out** of an agreement or arrangement, you leave it because you decide that you do not want to participate any longer.

- The French company reconsidered its agreement to build a plant in Canada and decided to **pull out**.
- I wish I had **not pulled out** of that business deal. Now everyone who stayed in is making a lot of money.

### 3. pull... out (of) p.v. When soldiers leave a combat zone or an area where combat is likely, they **pull out** or are **pulled out**. **Go in** is the opposite of **pull out**.

- When Sergeant Jones saw the enemy soldiers getting closer, he ordered his men to **pull out**.
- General Johnston **pulled** all the troops **out** of the occupied territory.

**pullout n.** When soldiers leave a combat zone or an area where combat is likely, a **pullout** takes place.

- General Johnston ordered an immediate **pullout** of all troops in the occupied territory.

### 3. put in & puts in p.v. When you **put** something in or **put** something into a container, storage place, or building, you place it inside. **Take out** is the opposite of **put in & puts in**.

- Please **put** your clothes in the closet.
- The clerk **put** the bottle into the bag and gave me a receipt.

### 2. put... in & into p.v. When you **put** money in or **put** money into a bank or an account at a bank, you deposit the money. **Put in & into** is the opposite of **take out**.

- I'm going to the bank today. How much money do you think I should **put in**?
- We **put** $10,000 **into** our savings account.

### 3. put... in & into p.v. When you **put** people in or **put** them into a prison, hospital, school, or other institution, you take them there or require them to go there.

- Jake got **put in jail** for twenty years. Marvin should be **put into** a mental institution.
4. **put... into** p.v. When you **put** time or effort **in** or **put** time or effort **into** something, you spend time and work hard to accomplish it.

   At the Christmas party, the manager thanked his employees for all the work they had **put in**.

   I **put** a lot of time **into** becoming a doctor.

5. **put... into** p.v. When you **put** money **in** or **put** money **into** something, you contribute money to help pay for something or as an investment you hope will return a profit.

   When the check came for dinner, we **each put** $25 **in**.

   I've already **put** $100,000 **into** this business. I hope it starts making money soon.

6. **put... in** p.v. When you construct or install something in a building, you **put** it **in**.

   We're **having new carpeting put in** next week.

   Erik and Nancy are **thinking about putting in** central air conditioning.

7. **put... in** p.v. When you cause people to be in a situation, position, or condition, you **put** them **in** that situation, position, or condition.

   You've **put Jim in a very awkward situation**.

   Margaret Cummings was **put in** charge of the sales department.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>run out</strong></td>
<td>run out &amp; runs out</td>
<td>running out</td>
<td>ran out</td>
<td>run out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **run out (of)** p.v. When people or things **run out** or **run out of** a place, room, building, and so on, they leave it very quickly. **Run into** is the opposite of **run out**.

   There's Sofia across the street — **run out** and ask her to come over here.

   When I opened the door, the dog **ran out of** the house.

2. **run out (of)** p.v. When you do not have any more of something because you have used, consumed, or sold all of it, you **run out** or **run out of** it.

   I'm sorry I can't give you sugar for your coffee — I've **run out**.

   Sam was late to work this morning because he **ran out of** gas.

3. **run out** p.v. When something is completely used, consumed, or sold, it **runs out**.

   I **played poker** last night, and for a while I was ahead by $3,000. But then my luck **ran out**, and I ended up losing it all.

   My brother is too lazy to look for a job. He asks me for money, and when the money **runs out** he comes back for more.

**EXERCISE 47a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. We have a lot of shopping to do, but the store closes in twenty minutes, so let's try to finish before we __________ ________ of time.
2. Michael _______ a lot of time _______ getting his pilot's license.
3. The government threatened to _______ _______ of the cease-fire agreement after the latest terrorist bombing.
4. This little flashlight on my key chain _______ _______ handy when it's dark outside.
5. I haven't stopped drinking completely, but I have _______ _______ way _______.
6. When Timmy's mother saw him outside throwing rocks at cars, she _______ _______ and stopped him.
7. We bought a house in Milwaukee, and we're _______ _______ it next month.
8. Instead of spending all your money, maybe you should _______ some of it _______ the bank.
9. I'm starting a new job as a secretary next week, so I need to _______ _______ on my typing.
10. After my mother died, I asked my father to _______ _______ with me.
11. I'll be waiting for you at the station when your train _______ _______.
12. All these problems are _______ me _______ a bad mood.
13. How much money are you going to _______ _______ this investment fund?
14. We're very busy at work, so my boss asked me to _______ _______ early tomorrow.
15. I need to find a new place to live soon. I have to _______ _______ of the place I'm in now by the end of the month.
16. These computers are being sold at 15 percent off the regular price for three days only, so hurry before time _______ _______.
17. Linda hired a carpenter to _______ _______ some shelves _______ her son's room.
18. We lost the key for the front door, so everyone's been _______ _______ through the back door all day.
19. Since Jim lost his job, we've had to _______ _______ a lot on our spending.
20. The troops were _______ _______ of Vietnam and sent back to the United States.
21. I bought a new bed for Susie, so I'm going to _______ her old bed _______ of her room and into her brother's room.

22. After my surgery, I was _______ the intensive care unit.

23. The store clerk says the new computer I want is supposed to _______ tomorrow.

24. My couch is huge — there's no way I can _______ it _______ my new place without help.

25. Erik _______ too much salt _______ the soup, and now it tastes terrible.

26. Safe drivers always look both ways before they _______ _______ and drive away.

EXERCISE 47b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Tom is going to live with his Uncle John. What is Tom going to do?

2. The government is spending less on the military. What is the government doing?

3. In Question 2, what would you call this reduction in military spending?

4. I can't figure out where the mosquitoes are entering my house. What can't I figure out?

5. My plane didn't arrive on time. What didn't my plane do?

6. Bob's taking all his furniture out of his old apartment. What is Bob doing?

7. You spent all your money, and now you're broke. What did you do?

8. Nancy's truck was parked, but now she's driving it into the street. What is Nancy doing?

9. Sarah shouldn't have built a pool in such a small backyard. What shouldn't Sarah have done?

10. Daniela hasn't studied Italian since high school, but she's been studying it again lately because she's going to Italy soon. What is Daniela doing?

11. Charles might change his mind and decide not to participate in a business deal. What might Charles do?
12. Your dentist told you that you should eat less candy. What did your dentist tell you?

13. Ned is going to arrive at work late tomorrow. What is Ned going to do?

14. Jane is working very hard to learn Chinese. What is Jane doing?

15. The basketball game ended before Jim's team could score enough points to win it. Why didn't Jim's team win the game?

16. Joe hasn't placed his clothes in the washing machine. What hasn't Joe done?

17. Tom asked Sally when she was taking her furniture into her new apartment. What did Tom ask Sally?

18. Bill deposits $1,000 every month in his checking account. What does Bill do every month?

**EXERCISE 47c, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.**

- bump into, 46
- get down, 42
- kick out, 43
- stop off, 43
- con into, 46
- get in, 42
- make for, 46
- talk into, 46
- con out of, 46
- get out, 42
- rip off, 44
- talk out of, 46
- freak out, 46
- get up, 42
- shut up, 43
- try on, 43

1. Alfonso must have __________ thirty pairs of pants before picking one out.

2. Bob got __________ of the bar after he started a fight.

3. You can't trust Marvin at all. He __________ everyone he does business with.

4. I can't reach those books on the top shelf. Would you __________ them __________ for me, please?

5. That sneaky real estate agent __________ me __________ selling her my house for a lot less than it was worth.

6. My parents live between my job and my home, so sometimes on the way home from work I __________ __________ for a visit.

7. Sam's wife didn't want to go camping with him, but he finally __________ her __________ it.
8. My father-in-law was ________ ________ ________ $800 by a house painter who took the money but never came back to start painting the house.

9. When I was a child, my mother was on drugs and my father was in jail. That situation didn't ________ ________ a very happy childhood.

10. Carlos ________ ________ the table, and a glass of wine fell on the floor.

11. All you ever do is talk, talk, talk. Will you please ________ ________?

12. It sure was hot yesterday. It must have ________ ________ to 100 degrees.

13. Our daughter has decided to get her nose pierced, and there's no way we can ________ her ________ it.

14. I found my old army uniform in the attic, and I can still ________ ________ it even though it's twenty-five years old.

15. My teacher caught me cheating on the test today, and he said he's going to call my parents tomorrow to tell them. How am I going to ________ ________ of this mess?

16. I saw a guy today who looked exactly like my dead brother. It really ________ ________ me ________.

48. FOCUS ON: modals and present perfect passive phrasal verbs

In Section 43, we discussed the use of several modal and semimodal auxiliaries in the present perfect. These same modals and semimodals are commonly used in passive sentences. The modal or semimodal is followed by have or the contraction 've, been, and the past participle:

- could + have + been + past participle
- would + have + been + past participle
- should + have + been + past participle
- must + have + been + past participle
- might + have + been + past participle
- may + have + been + past participle

Let's compare a present perfect active sentence containing a modal with a present perfect passive sentence containing a modal:

---
active: Jane might have switched on the light. passive: The light might have been switched on.

As we have seen, the object of the active sentence becomes the subject of the passive sentence. Also, there is no object in the passive sentence, so the passive phrasal verb cannot be separated. The object of the active sentence can be used in a by phrase:

active: Jane might have switched on the light. passive: The light might have been switched on (by Jane).

And once again we see that it is not always easy to distinguish between a past participle:

The burglar alarm must have been switched off (by the right manager because he’s the only one with a key).

and a participle adjective:

The burglar alarm must have been switched off (because if it had been on, everyone in the neighborhood would have heard it when the burglars smashed the window of the jewelry store).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>close down</td>
<td>close down</td>
<td>doing down</td>
<td>closed</td>
<td>closed down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. close... down p.v. When you close down a business or a business is closed down, it closes permanently or for a long time.
   - The restaurant was closed down by the health department.
   - The ski resort will close down for the summer on May 1.

   knockout n. A hit hard enough to cause someone to lose consciousness is a knockout.

   - At the count often the referee declared a knockout.

2. knock... out p.v. If something knocks you out, it impresses or surprises you a lot.
Tom's new house is fabulous! It really knocked me out.

The Youngs’ daughter is only twelve and she’s already in college? That just knocks me out.

knockout n. A knockout is something that impresses or surprises you a lot.

Have you seen Erik’s new girlfriend? She’s a real knockout.

3. knock... out p.v. When you try very hard to please other people, you knock yourself out or knock yourself out to do something.

Marsha’s Thanksgiving dinner was fabulous. She really knocked herself out.

Thanks for inviting me to spend the weekend with you, but don’t knock yourself out — I don’t mind sleeping on the couch.

4. knock... out p.v. When soldiers knock out a piece of the enemy’s equipment, they destroy it or damage it enough so that it no longer operates.

The enemy radar installation was knocked out by a 500-pound bomb.

I can’t contact headquarters. I think our communications system might have been knocked out during the attack.

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>look down on</td>
<td>look down on</td>
<td>looking down on</td>
<td>looked down on</td>
<td>looked down on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look up to</td>
<td>look up to</td>
<td>looking up to</td>
<td>looked up to</td>
<td>looked up to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put back</td>
<td>put back</td>
<td>putting back</td>
<td>put back</td>
<td>put back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. look down on p.v. When you look down on people, you consider them to be less intelligent, less educated, or from a lower level of society than you.

Some people look down on Hank because his father was in prison.

Looking down on people because of things they have no control over is stupid.

1. look up to p.v. When you look up to people, you admire and respect them.

I've always looked up to my father because of his honesty and concern for others.

You should look up to people who have overcome difficulties to become successful.

1. put... back p.v. When you put something back, you return it to where it was before.

After you finish listening to my CDs, please put them back.

Susie, I told you we’re eating dinner in ten minutes, so put that cookie right back!

2. put... back p.v. When something slows the development or progress of project, it puts the project back or it puts the people involved in the project back.

The hurricane put the hotel construction project back by at least three months.

I had planned to finish college last year, but being hospitalized for several months put me back.
3. **put back** p.v. When you **put back** the date that you plan to do or complete something by, you postpone it.

   The closing on the house I’m selling might have to be **put back** if the buyers can’t get their loan approved in time.

   The graduation date will have to be **put back** if the teachers strike doesn’t end soon.

4. **put back** p.v. [informal] When you **put back** alcoholic beverages, you drink a lot of them.

   Did you see how much David was drinking last night? He sure can **put it back**.

   I’m not surprised he has a hangover — he must have **put back** half a bottle of tequila.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>switch off</td>
<td>switch off &amp; switches off</td>
<td>switching off</td>
<td>switched off</td>
<td>switched off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **switch off** p.v. When you **switch off** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to stop it from producing or doing something. **Turn off** is similar to **switch off**.

   **Switch on** is the opposite of **switch off**.

   Try to remember to **switch off** the lights when you leave the room.

   I **switched the engine off** and got out of the car.

   **switched off** part.adj. After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to stop it from producing or doing something, it is **switched off**. **Switched on** is the opposite of **switched off**. **Turned off** is similar to **switched off**.

   Last night the light in the hallway was **switched off**, and I fell down the stairs. **switch on**

   switch on & switches on | switching on | switched on | switched on |

---

1. **switch on** p.v. When you **switch on** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to make it start producing or doing something. **Turn on** is similar to **switch on**.

   **Switch off** is the opposite of **switch on**.

   Push this button to **switch the computer on**.

   The sign should have been **switched on** by the manager in the morning.

   **switched on** part.adj. After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to make it start producing or doing something, it is **switched on**. **Switched off** is the opposite of **switched on**. **Turned on** is similar to **switched on**.

   When I drove by the restaurant, I noticed that the sign wasn’t **switched on**.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>throw out</th>
<th>throw out &amp; throws out</th>
<th>throwing out</th>
<th>threw out</th>
<th>thrown out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **throw out** p.v. When you **throw out** something, you dispose of it by putting it in the wastebasket, trash, and so on. **Throw away** is the same as **throw out**.

   I can’t find some important papers, and I think they might’ve been accidentally **thrown out**.

   Don’t **throw that newspaper out** — I haven’t read it yet.
2. **throw... out (of) p.v.** When you **throw people out** or **throw people out** of a group, place, building, or room, you order them to leave. **Kick out** is similar to **throw out**.

Frank started a fight and got **thrown out** of the bar.

I haven't paid the rent in six months, and I'm worried that the sheriff will come and **throw us out**.

**EXERCISE 48a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. We might _______ our wedding _______ until September so that Rosa's parents can attend.
2. Please _______ the lights _______ — I'm trying to sleep.
3. Bob was _______ when the baseball hit him in the head.
4. When I was a little girl, I _______ my grandfather and wanted to be like him.
5. Sam must have _______ three gin and tonics in about a half an hour last night.
6. It's cold in here — the air conditioner shouldn't have been _______ _______.
7. Mrs. Flores was so angry with her husband that she _______ him right _______ of the house.
8. My wife thinks I forgot our anniversary again, so she's going to be _______ _______ when I give her this gold bracelet.
9. The blizzard has _______ _______ our efforts to find the crashed plane, but we'll keep looking until we find it.
10. I'm tired of looking at all this junk — why don't you _______ it _______?
11. Citizens of the neighborhood have demanded that the noisy bar be _______ _______.
12. Charles _______ anyone who comes from the poor side of town.
13. If you're finished with these tools, _______ them _______.
14. The soldier used a bazooka to _______ _______ an enemy tank.
15. Timmy's mother planned a really nice birthday party for Timmy and all his friends. She really ________ herself ________.

EXERCISE 48b — Write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The health department should close down. (the restaurant, it)

2. Ali's left hook knocked out. (Joe, him)

3. General Johnston had to put back. (the attack, it)

4. Have you switched on? (the TV, it)

5. Are you going to switch off? (the lights, them)

6. Throwing out is going to be a big job. (all this junk, it)
EXERCISE 48c — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. The judge's decision has slowed our fight for justice. What has the judge's decision done to us?

2. Jim respects his uncle and wants to be like him. What does Jim do to his uncle?

3. Todd was really amazed at how good Erik's new book is. What did Erik's book do to Todd?

4. In Question 3, what would Todd call Erik's book?

5. You pushed the button on the remote, and now the TV is on. What did you do to the TV?

6. In Question 5, how would you describe the TV after I pushed the button on the remote?

7. The lights were on, but they're not on anymore. What must have been done to the lights?

8. In Question 7, how would you describe the lights now?

9. The bar owner will be ordered to close his bar permanently. What will be done to the bar?

10. Charles thinks people from that part of town are low-class. What does Charles do to people from that part of town?

11. Joe would have been ordered to leave his house if he hadn't paid his late mortgage payments. What would have happened to Joe if he hadn't paid his late mortgage payments?

EXERCISE 48d, Review — Complete the sentences with these nouns from previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

carryout, 28 lockout, 29 turnover, 45
cutback, 47 make-up, 23 rip-off, 44
falling-out, 32 pullout, 47 turnout, 45 runaround, 40

1. Heather kind of liked Ann's brother until she saw him smoking. To her that's a big ______._

2. The Senate voted against a __________ in spending for AIDS research.

3. Lydia doesn't want anyone to take pictures of her without her __________ on.

4. Bill thinks that Nicole's short skirt is a __________.

378
5. The soldiers were ordered to prepare for a ________.

6. I hate cooking, so we eat ________ food almost every night.

7. I've gone to every office in City Hall about my problem, but no one will help me. They just give me the ________.

8. The company's high ________ rate is one reason why it lost money last year.

9. Can you believe the frames for these glasses cost $300? What a ________.

10. One thief broke into the store while the other stayed outside as a ________.

11. The ________ for the parade would have been a lot bigger if it hadn't been raining.

12. George had a ________ with his brother and hasn't spoken with him for fifteen years.

EXERCISE 48e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- blow out, 43
- con into, 46
- pull out, 47
- talk into, 46
- brush up, 47
- con out of, 46
- put in into, 47
- talk out of, 46
- bump into, 46
- move in into, 47
- stick out, 32
- turn over, 45
- carry away, 44
- move out, 47
- stress out, 44
- turn up, 45

1. Your work isn't very good. You ought to ________ more effort ________ it.

2. I was so mad at my boss that I almost quit my job. Fortunately, my wife ________ me ________ it.

3. Did you see Mike's house? He said he was going to put a few Christmas tree lights on the roof, but there must be 5,000. I guess he got ________ ________.

4. Don't let that crooked contractor ________ you ________ ________ any money for unnecessary home repairs.

5. France was a member of NATO until it ________ ________ in 1966.

6. Don't quit now, we're almost finished. You've just got to ________ it ________ for a little while longer.

7. What a surprise! I ________ ________ Bob at the train station yesterday. I hadn't seen him in years.
8. The police acted on a tip that the suspect would be at the bus station on Saturday morning, but he didn’t ________ ________.

9. If you’re not careful that crook will ________ ________ selling him your land for a lot less than it’s worth.

10. Mike used to speak Arabic pretty well, but he ought to __________________ before he goes to Egypt.

11. How could I have been ________ ________ doing something stupid?

12. The apartment has been cleaned and painted. You can ________ ________ any time you want.

13. ________ it ________, I want to see what’s on the other side.

14. Living with Sam is driving me crazy — I have to __________________.

15. After you make a wish you can __________________ the candles.

16. Living in a house with seven dogs is really ________ ________ my cat ________.

49. FOCUS ON: combinations of get, right, back, and to

The focus of this section is an expanded definition of the two-word phrasal verb get to and the three-word phrasal verb get back to. The purpose is to try to make some sense out of a seemingly limitless number of idiomatic combinations of get, to, and various particles and adverbs, in particular right and back, and to demonstrate that many phrasal verbs comprised of get and a particle are actually variations of get to that can be modified with right and/or back.

Remember that back is sometimes part of a phrasal verb and sometimes an adverb used to modify a phrasal verb (review Section 26), although we will see that there is often no difference in meaning between the phrasal verb get back (to), discussed in Section 42, and the phrasal verb get to modified by back (get back to).

The numbers in the chart correspond with the meanings in the definitions.

get to

1. Although the phrasal verb get to is defined here as meaning arrive, it can be understood as the basis for some of the phrasal verbs that were discussed in Section 42:

   Bill get to Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria.)
   Bill get back to Peoria. (Bill returned to Peoria.)
   Bill get up to Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria from the south.)
   Bill get down to Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria from the north.)

   380
Bill got over to Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria from the east or west.)

Bill got out to Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria from the east or from a larger city.)

We see that get back (to), get up (to), get down (to), get over (to), and get out (to) are variations of get to but with additional information. These verbs can be modified with right, meaning immediately, quickly, or directly (see Section 10):

Bill got right back to Peoria. (Bill returned to Peoria quickly.)
Get to work has two meanings, similar but not the same. Get to work can refer to an arrival at a place where someone works:

Ann got to work. (Ann arrived at the place where she works.)

But get to work (see meaning 3) can also mean start working, without any reference to a change of location:

Joe got to work. (Joe started working.)

Joe got back to work. (Joe started working again.)

Joe got right to work. (Joe started working immediately.)

Joe got right back to work. (Joe started working again immediately.)

The difference in these two meanings is illustrated by the following sentence:

I got to work at 9:00, but I didn’t get to work until 10:00, which can paraphrased as I arrived at my office at 9:00, but I didn’t start working until 10:00.

2. Although the phrasal verb get to is defined here as meaning reach a certain level, number, or amount, it can be understood as the basis for some of the phrasal verbs discussed in Section 42:

Jane got to 120 pounds.

Jane got back to 120 pounds. (Jane weighs 120 pounds again.)

Jane got up to 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh less than 120 pounds.)

Jane got down to 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh more than 120 pounds.)

We see that get back (to), get up (to), and get down (to) are variations of get to but with additional information.

Get up (to) and get down (to) can be modified by back:

Jane got back up to 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh 120 pounds, lost weight, and then gained it back.)

Jane got back down to 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh 120 pounds, gained weight, and then lost it.)

3. If you start to do something, you get to it:

I’ll try to get to my homework after dinner.

If you start to do something, stop doing it, and then later start to do it again, you get back to it:

I’ll try to get back to my homework after dinner.

If you start to do something, stop doing it, and then later quickly start to do it again, you get right back to it:

I’ll try to get right back to my homework after dinner.

Remember that when both right and back are used, right always comes first:

I’ll try to get back right to my homework after dinner.

382
get back to

1. Get back to is a three-word verb meaning talk to someone again later. Get back to does not vary in form — neither back nor to is optional.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dog up</td>
<td>clog up &amp; dogs up</td>
<td>dogging up</td>
<td>clogged up</td>
<td>clogged up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. clog... up p.v. When people or things clog up a drain or something else that liquids must flow through, they put something in it that prevents water or other liquids from going through it or that prevents it from working properly.

Don't pour that bacon grease in the sink — you'll clog the drain up.

Dr. Smith said my arteries were so clogged up by plaque deposits that it was a miracle I was still alive.

clogged up part.adj. When a drain or something else that liquids must flow through is clogged up, something is in it that prevents water or other liquids from going through it or that prevents it from working properly.

The mechanic told me that the engine valves in my car were clogged up.

got ahead

1. get ahead p.v. When you get ahead, you become more successful and make progress in your job or your life.

With your pessimistic attitude, you'll never get ahead.

Getting ahead is pretty easy when your father owns the company.

get back to

1. get back to p.v. When you get back to people, you talk to them later, usually because you do not have time to talk to them at the time or because you will have information for them later that you do not have now.

I don't have time to talk now; I'm really busy. Can I get back to you?

That real estate agent still hasn't gotten back to me to let me know if our offer was accepted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get on</td>
<td>get on &amp; gets on</td>
<td>getting on</td>
<td>got on</td>
<td>gotten/got on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. get on p.v. When you move your body toward something and stand, sit, or lie on it, you get on it.

The nurse asked me to take off my shirt and get on the examination table.

If you get on that chair you can reach the top shelf.
2. **get on** p.v. When you mount an animal, bicycle, motorcycle, and so on, you *get on* it.
   - Getting on a camel isn’t as easy as *getting on* a horse.
   - The children got back on their bikes and went home.

3. **get on** p.v. When you enter a bus, train, airplane, ship, and so on, you *get on* it.
   - The bus stopped so that I could *get on*.
   - Only people who are going on the cruise can *get on* the ship.

4. **get** p.v. When you *get* an item of clothing on, you put it on your body.
   - Get your coat on. It’s cold outside.
   - These gloves are too small. I can’t *get* them on.

5. **get on** (with) p.v. When you continue doing something, you *get on, get on* with what you were doing, or *get on* with it.
   - It’s getting late. If we’re going to finish this work today we’d better *get on* with it.
   - I didn’t say you could stop! *Get on* with your work.
After seeing all those strange lights in the sky, I got to wondering if maybe UFOs really exist after all.

5. get to p.v. When you get to do something, you are allowed to do it or are able to do it.

Timmy was excited because he got to ride a pony.

I hope I get to shake the President's hand after his speech.

6. get to p.v. When something gets to you, it bothers or annoys you, either psychologically or physically.

Jim's constant complaining is really starting to get to his wife.

Let's sit down and rest — this heat is getting to me.

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hang on</td>
<td>hang on &amp; hangs on</td>
<td>hanging on</td>
<td>hung on</td>
<td>hung on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. hang on (to) p.v. When you hang on or hang on to something, you hold it tightly so that you will not fall or be hurt. Hold on is similar to hang on.

I fell off the horse because I wasn't hanging on tightly enough.

If she'd hung on to my hand, she wouldn't have fallen off the cliff.

2. hang on p.v. [informal] When you hang on, you wait for a short time. Hold on is the same as hang on.

Hang on for a minute — I'll be right back.

Judy's coming to the phone now — can you hang on?

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>start off</td>
<td>start off &amp; starts off</td>
<td>starting off</td>
<td>started off</td>
<td>started off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. start off (with/by) p.v. When an activity or event starts off, it begins. When you start an activity or event off with something, you begin with it. When you start an activity or event off by doing something, you begin by doing it.

The singer started the concert off with a song from her latest CD.

Many speakers like to start off a speech by telling a joke.

2. start off p.v. When people or things start off a certain way, they are this way at the beginning of a process that changes them. Start out is similar to start off.

The day started off nice, but it got cold and cloudy.

I thought the movie was good, but it started off kind of boring.

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>throw away</td>
<td>throw away &amp; throws away</td>
<td>throwing away</td>
<td>threw away</td>
<td>thrown away</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. throw... away p.v. When you throw something away, you dispose of it by
putting it in the wastebasket, trash, and so on. **Throw out** is the same as **throw away**.

If you’re finished with these papers, throw them away.

Nancy’s outside looking in the trash for her wedding ring; it was accidentally thrown away.

2. **throw... away** **p.v.** When you **throw away** something important or valuable, you foolishly do something that causes you to lose it.

This is your last chance to save your marriage, so don’t throw it away.

When I got mad and quit my job, I threw away a chance to become vice-president of the company.

**EXERCISE 49a** — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. We were lucky that the floodwater didn’t ______ the second floor.
2. These steps have ice on them, so ______ to my arm.
3. I usually ______ work at 8:40.
4. It’s important to ______ your day ______ with a good breakfast.
5. I never used to care about Maria’s bad attitude, but now it’s starting to ______ me.
6. I’m a little busy now. Give me your phone number, and I’ll ______ right ______ you.
7. Go ______ your shoes ______ — we’re leaving in a minute.
8. Ann cut her hair in the bathroom, and she ______ the sink ______ with hair.
9. Don’t let the baby ______ the table — he might fall off.
10. If you hadn’t ______ the theater late, you wouldn’t have missed the beginning of the movie.
11. ______ all that junk in the garage made a lot more room.
12. As Jerry was ______ the train, he realized that he had forgotten his ticket.
13. Whenever I ______ feeling depressed, I call my mother.
14. If you want to ______ in this world, you need a good education.
15. The trail to the top of the mountain ______ level, but then it gets steeper and steeper.
16. Maybe you should _______ ________ with your work and stop wasting time.
17. _______ ________ for a couple of minutes — I'm almost ready.
18. This is a great opportunity. Don't be stupid and _______ it ________.
19. I know you're busy, but when do you think you might have time to _______ back ________ fixing that leak in the roof?
20. I waited outside Mr. Baker's office for two hours, but I never _______ talk to him.
21. Madeleine fell off her bike, but she _______ right back ________ again.
22. _______ ________ work! This has to be finished in three hours, and you haven't even started.

EXERCISE 49b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Linda's three-year-old daughter can't put her shoes on. What can't Linda's three-year-old daughter do?
2. Luis started to feel a little depressed. What did Luis do?
3. Marvin had a nice family and a good job, but he lost them because of drugs. What did Marvin do to his family and job?
4. After I take a break, I'm going to continue working immediately. What am I going to do?
5. Betty doesn't have the information I want, so she's going to call me when she does. What is Betty going to do?
6. The sewer drain became blocked by dead leaves. What happened to the sewer drain?
7. In Question 6, how would you describe the sewer drain after it became blocked?
8. Ned has never arrived at his office after 9:30. What has Ned never done?
9. You continued with your work. What did you do?
10. When the temperature inside the turkey reaches 190 degrees, take it out of the oven. When should the turkey be taken out of the oven?
11. Bill said that he couldn't wait any longer. What did Bill say?

12. My taxes are due in three days, so I've got to do them tonight. What have I got to do?

13. Sam's birth certificate must have been accidentally put in the trash. What must have happened to Sam's birth certificate?

14. Dan showed me how to mount a horse. What did Dan show me?

15. Their marriage began well, but things got worse. What did their marriage do?

16. My brother told me that I shouldn't let it bother me. What did my brother tell me?

17. Alex was allowed to pet a baby tiger at the zoo. What happened to Alex?

18. The mountain climber held the rope tightly. What did the mountain climber do?

19. Mike went to the diving board and stood on it. What did Mike do?

20. The bus driver stepped out of the bus to check the tires, and then he entered the bus again immediately. What did the bus driver do after he checked the tires?

21. It's been only fifteen minutes since Heather left. She could not have arrived at the airport already. What couldn't Heather have done already?

22. The salesperson always begins his presentation by introducing himself. What does the salesperson always do?

23. Having an MBA should help you to progress in your career. What should an MBA do?

EXERCISE 49c — Write five original sentences using get to and get back to. Try to use right and back in some of the sentences.

1. __________________________________________________
2. __________________________________________________
3. __________________________________________________
4. __________________________________________________
5. __________________________________________________

388
EXERCISE 49d. Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

1. close down, 48
2. get over, 42
3. look down on, 48
4. switch on, 48
5. come in, 47
6. knock out, 48
7. look up to, 48
8. throw out, 48
9. cut back, 47
10. know about, 33
11. put back, 48
12. trick into, 35
13. get off on, 40
14. let in, 41
15. switch off, 48
16. turn down, 45

1. The company has decided to save money by ___________ on advertising.
2. Look at the arrival monitor to see if his plane has ___________ yet.
3. That sneaky car salesperson ___________ me ___________ paying for a lot of options I didn't want.
4. Those shoes are so ugly. Why don't you just ___________ them?
5. Anyone who has done as much good for other people as he has deserves to be ___________.
6. Charles used to ___________ ___________ me because he went to college and I didn't.
7. What do you ___________ changing the meeting from Tuesday to Wednesday? No one has said anything to me about it.
8. The opening of the new factory had to be ___________ because some equipment hadn't been delivered.
9. Janice loves to cook, and she especially ___________ ___________ baking fancy pastries.
10. The antigovernment newspaper was ___________ by the dictator.
11. Rio de Janeiro is so beautiful. It ___________ me ___________.
12. Jim asked Lydia to marry him, but she ___________ him.
13. That chimney is ___________ a lot of cold air.
14. Most people ___________ a cold in four or five days.
15. If it gets too cold in here, ___________ the air conditioner.
16. Could you ___________ the lights ___________ please, it's getting dark.
50. FOCUS ON: Keep at it!
I hope the time and effort you've put into finding out more about phrasal verbs has paid off. If you've knocked yourself out, stuck with it, and not fallen behind or gotten mixed up or burned out, a great improvement in your ability to understand and use English has come about — you've ended up being better able to figure out what you read and hear and better able to come up with the right word when you write or speak. But don't get stressed out and give up if you can't remember every meaning of every verb — improving your vocabulary takes time. It comes down to regularly brushing up on what you have learned and, when you come across a word you don't know, looking it up in a dictionary. Keep at it!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>present tense</th>
<th>-ing form</th>
<th>past tense</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ask out</td>
<td>ask out &amp; asks out</td>
<td>asking out</td>
<td>asked out</td>
<td>asked out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ask... out p.v. When you ask people out, you ask them to go with you to a place of entertainment in order to have fun and spend time together.

Being asked out by Tom was quite a surprise to Judy.
The Bakers called and asked the Ortegas out.

come down to

come down to & comes down to | coming down to | came down to | come down to

1. come down to p.v. When the key to understanding a situation or problem is knowledge and consideration of a certain aspect of the situation or problem, this aspect of the situation or problem is what the situation or problem comes down to.

Learning a language comes down to practice, practice, practice.
Our marriage problems aren't really that complicated. What it comes down to is whether you're willing to deal with your drinking problem.

deal with

deal with & deals with | dealing with | dealt with | dealt with

1. deal with p.v. When you deal with a project or a problem, you do what you must do to complete the project or to solve the problem.

There are many problems, but I can deal with only one at a time.
After school the principal will deal with the boys who broke the window.

2. deal with p.v. When a book, film, article, speech, and so on, deals with a certain subject, that is what it is about.

The governor's speech dealt with the growing crime rate.
I read an interesting article dealing with the issue of legalizing marijuana.
### hold on

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hold on</td>
<td>hold on &amp; holds on</td>
<td>holding on</td>
<td>held on</td>
<td>held on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **hold on** (to) **p.v.** When you *hold on* or *hold on to* something, you hold it tightly so that you will not fall or be hurt. *Hang on* is similar to *hold on.*

   When the horse jumped over the fence, I *held on* as hard as I could.

   *Hold on* to the rail when you get out of the bathtub — it’s slippery.

2. **hold on** (to) **p.v.** When you *hold on* or *hold on to* people, you hold them tightly to protect them or to prevent them from leaving. When you *hold on* or *hold on to* things, you hold them tightly to protect them or to prevent them from being taken.

   Sam grabbed the robber’s legs and *held on* while the guard handcuffed her.

   We were *holding on* to each other as the tornado passed.

3. **hold on** **p.v.** [in informal] When you *hold on,* you wait for a short time. *Hang on* is the same as *hold on.*

   Can you *hold on* just a little longer? I’ll be right with you.

   I’ve been *holding on* for fifteen minutes. I can’t wait any longer.

### pay back

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pay back</td>
<td>pay back &amp; pays back</td>
<td>paying back</td>
<td>paid back</td>
<td>paid back</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **pay... back** **p.v.** When you *pay people back,* you give them money that you borrowed from them.

   Would you lend me $200? I’ll *pay you back* next Friday when I get paid.

   Mark has never been *paid back* for all his sister’s medical bills.

2. **pay... back** **(for)** **p.v.** When you *pay people back* or *pay people back* for something bad they have done to you, you do something bad to them.

   I’ll *pay that guy back* for the terrible things he’s done to me if it takes the rest of my life.

   Jake shot Hank to *pay him back* for turning him in to the police.

### take up on

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take up on</td>
<td>take up on &amp; takes up on</td>
<td>taking up on</td>
<td>took up on</td>
<td>taken up on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **take... up on** **p.v.** When you *take people up on an offer,* you accept their offer.

   My brother has invited us many times to visit him in Hawaii, and last winter we *took him up on* the offer.

   Nicole has never *taken me up on* my offer to lend her the money she needs for her dental bills.

### turn around

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>-ing Form</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>turn around</td>
<td>turn around &amp; turns around</td>
<td>turning around</td>
<td>turned around</td>
<td>turned around</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **turn ... around** p.v. When you **turn around**, you move a vehicle or your body so that it faces the opposite direction. When you **turn** something **around**, you move it so that it faces the opposite direction.

   Someone called my name, and I **turned around** to see who it was.

   You should **turn** this house plant **around** so that the other side can get some light.

2. **turn ... around** p.v. When you **turn around** a bad situation, a failing business, a losing game, and so on, you improve it so that it is successful.

   **Turning** this money-losing company **around** is going to take several years.

   The quarterback completed four passes in the last five minutes of the football game and completely **turned it around**.

**turnaround** n. A **turnaround** is a major improvement in a bad situation, a failing business, a losing game, and soon.

   **We won the game in a last-minute turnaround.**

   **This company was losing money, but there's been a major turnaround since the new manager took over.**

**wear out**

1. **wear... out** p.v. When something **wears out** or you **wear it out**, it becomes damaged or weak from use and age and is no longer usable.

   **People who live in the city wear out their car brakes faster than people who live in the country.**

   **The carpet in the hallway wore out and had to be replaced.**

   **worn-out** part. adj. When something is **worn-out**, it has become damaged or weak from use and age and is no longer usable.

   **I need new running shoes. These are totally worn-out.**

2. **wear... out** p.v. When something **wears you out**, it makes you very tired.

   **Playing with his grandchildren really wore Fred out.**

   **Shoveling snow for three hours would wear anyone out.**

   **worn-out** part. adj. When something has made you very tired, you are **worn-out**.

   **I have to sit down and rest for a minute — I'm worn-out.**

EXERCISE 50a — Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. I lent Sally $1,000 last year, but she still hasn’t _______ me _______.
2. Children usually get too big for their clothes long before the clothes _______ _______.

392
3. The company’s new CEO promised the shareholders that he would _______ the company _______.
4. Judy told me that she said all those terrible things about me at work to _______ me _______ for stealing her boyfriend.
5. Dr. Wood’s new book _______ with preventive medicine.
6. Carrying those boxes of books up to the attic _______ me _______.
7. Like so many things in life, this problem _______ _______ money.
8. Jim drove right past Bob’s house, so he had to _______ _______ and go back.
9. _______ to my hand, Susie — it’s very crowded here, and I don’t want you to get lost.
10. I _______ that problem yesterday, so you don’t need to worry about it anymore.
11. Linda isn’t sure who she’ll go to the dance with, but she said she might _______ Todd _______.
12. It was so windy that I had to _______ to a signpost to keep from falling over.
13. Mike has invited me to his house for dinner several times, but I’ve never _______ him _______.
14. _______ _______ just a minute! Where do you think you’re going?

EXERCISE 50b — Write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this section. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. Tom’s been waiting for ten minutes. What has Tom been doing?
2. My shoes have holes in the bottom, and now I can’t wear them. What has happened to my shoes?
3. In Question 2, how would you describe my shoes?
4. The country’s economy was bad, but now it’s improving. What is the country’s economy doing?
5. The main thing that Lydia will consider when she chooses a college is how good the MBA program is. What is important to Lydia in choosing a college?
6. You called Betty and asked her to go to a movie. What did you do?
7. Bill's baseball team was way behind, but they ended up winning the game. What would you call the game?

8. Mike lent Frank $20, and tomorrow Frank is going to give Mike $20. What is going to happen to Mike tomorrow?

9. Sarah asked me if I would like her to come to my house to help me with my homework, and I said yes. What did I do?

10. Ms. Cummings will do whatever she needs to do to solve the problem after dinner. What will Ms. Cummings do after dinner?

11. The purse snatcher couldn't take my mother's purse because she held it tightly in her hand. What did my mother do to her purse?

12. Shampooing the carpet was a lot of work, and it made Janice really tired. What did shampooing the carpet do to Janice?

13. In Question 12, how did Janice feel after shampooing the carpet?

**EXERCISE 50c** — Write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this section.

1. __________________________________________________
2. __________________________________________________________
3. _______________________________________________________
4. _____________________________________________________
5. __________________________________________________________
6. __________________________________________________________
7. __________________________________________________________
8. __________________________________________________________

**EXERCISE 50d, Review** — Complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from this section and previous sections. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

- beat-up, 44
- mixed up, 44
- turned off, 45
- built-in, 46
- pissed off, 44
- turned on, 45
- clogged up, 49
- stressed-out, 44
- worn-out, 50
- grossed out, 43
- switched off, 48
- locked up, 44
- switched on, 48

394
1. Trying to take care of my family and work full-time has made me really _________.
2. You should get rid of those ________ shoes and buy some new ones.
3. I felt really ________ after dancing the merengue with Maria.
4. Maria seemed a little ________ when she saw my big belly hanging over my belt.
5. While I was driving on the interstate, about a billion bugs splattered all over the windshield. I was really ________.
6. My car looks pretty ________, but it runs all right.
7. This sink is all ________. We'll have to call a plumber.
8. Could you help me with my calculus homework? I don't understand it at all, and I'm totally ________.
9. You should keep guns ________ if there are children in the house.
10. Mike's really ________ about having to work on Sunday. He was planning to go to the football game, but now he can't.
11. Most computers today have a ________ CD-ROM drive.
12. I like to leave the radio ________ when I'm not home so that burglars will think that someone is at home.
13. It sure is hot in here. Why is the air conditioner ________?

EXERCISE 50e, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

build in, into, 46 get on, 49 throw away, 49 turn off, 45
clog up, 49 get to, 49 turn down, 45 turn on, 45
get ahead, 49 hang on, 49 turn in, 45 turn out, 45
get back to, 49 make for, 46 turn into, 45 turn up, 45

1. Jake was nice when he was a boy, but as he got older he ________ a criminal.
2. Stop bothering me about washing the dishes — I'll ________ it when I have time.
3. The teacher said, “After you __________ your tests, you can leave.”
4. These stereo speakers weren’t added later; they were __________ right __________ the wall.
5. Business has been very good; in fact, this may __________ to be our best year ever.
6. I’ll have to __________ you — I don’t have time to talk now.
7. If I had known you wanted those old clothes, I wouldn’t have __________ them __________.
8. It was getting dark, so I __________ the light.
9. I’ve gained so much weight that I can’t __________ these pants __________.
10. Having a good education helped me to __________ __________.
11. __________, I’m almost ready.
12. It’s too hot in here; could you __________ the heat __________ a little?
13. My father said, "_________ the TV _________ and do your homework."
14. Who put all this stuff in the sink and __________ it _________?
15. The champagne, flowers, and gourmet dinner __________ a very special evening.
16. It’s hot in here; who keeps __________ ________ the heat?

EXERCISE 50f, Review — Complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from this section and previous sections. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense. To check their meanings, review the section number given after each one.

ask out, 50  get ahead, 49  hold on, 50  start off, 49
come down to, 50  get back to, 49  pay back, 50  take up on, 50
deal with, 50  get to, 49  put into, 47  turn around, 50
freak out, 46  give out, 43  run out, 47  wear out, 50

1. I like to go to the supermarket on Saturday because they __________ free samples.
2. My teacher said that my project wasn’t very good and that it was obvious I hadn’t __________ much effort _______ it.
3. Don’t lend money to Marvin; he’ll never __________ you ________.
4. Thanks for inviting me to go sailing with you. I just might ______ you ______ the offer someday.
5. Sergeant Jones _______ the problem in his usual efficient manner.
6. We’re _______ of coffee. Can you make some more?
7. Jim likes Maria, but he’s too shy to ______ her.
8. Nowadays, it’s hard to _______ in the business world if you don’t know something about computers.
9. Janice was talking to her father on the other telephone line when I called, so she asked me to ______ ______ for just a minute while she said good-bye to him.
10. Ann used to have a lot of problems, but she has ______ her life ______, and now she is very happy and successful in her job.
11. I called the restaurant manager to complain about the bad food we were served yesterday, so she said she would investigate and ______ ______ me.
12. Heather was very excited that she had ______ go backstage after the concert and meet the band.
13. We had a hard time deciding which of the two houses to buy. We liked both of them, but it ______ ______ which one was in a better school district.
14. I’m not as young as I used to be. That fifteen-mile hike ______ me ______.
15. I hate walking through cemeteries at night; it really ______ me ______.
16. The president of the company ______ the meeting ______ by welcoming everyone.
**Answers**

When questions require complete sentences as answers, several variations of the answer are often possible depending on whether contractions are used, whether separable phrasal verbs are separated, and whether the object of the phrasal verb is repeated in the answer, replaced by a pronoun, or ellipted (not repeated because it is understood). The answers given below would be natural and likely in everyday American English — contractions are used more often than not and separable phrasal verbs are separated more often than not — but any grammatical and logical sentence with the correct verb in the correct tense is acceptable. Phrasal verbs separated by their objects (but not adverbs or adverbials) are indicated with three dots between the verb and particle. Remember that questions asked with / or we are answered with you, and questions asked with you are answered with / or we.

1a
1. took off
2. took off
3. put... on
4. run ...into
5. shows up
6. showed up
7. came from
8. put... on
9. figure... out
10. take... off
11. coming from
12. put on
13. took off
14. looked for
15. gave back
16. run into
17. take... off
18. Take off
19. run into
20. Taking... off
21. putting... on
22. put... on
23. put on
24. took... off
25. ran into

1b
1. I finally figured out the instructions.
   I finally figured the instructions out.
   I finally figured them out.
2. Give back my tools when you are finished.
   Give my tools back when you are finished.
   Give them back when you are finished.
3. She put on her slippers.
   She put her slippers on.
   She put them on.
4. I took off my shoes.
   I took off my shoes.
   I took them off.
5. The hurricane took off the roof.
   The hurricane took the roof off.
   The hurricane took it off.

1c
1. They didn't show up.
2. He figured it out.
3. It's taking off.
4. It was a takeoff.
5. He speaks Arabic because he comes from Egypt.
6. You took off.
7. You ran into him.
8. It came from the tenth floor.
9. I almost ran into a tree.
10. He put his name on it.
11. You have to take it off.
12. You figured it out.
13. You're taking them off.
14. They took off.
15. She's looking for it.
16. They don't show up.
17. He always forgets to put them on the table.
18. He took Friday off.
19. She gave it back.

2a
1. falling for
2. came off
3. dozed off
4. threw up
5. fell for
6. pulls through
7. stay off
8. came off
9. giving in
10. heard about
11. throwing up
12. come off

2b
1. Did the sick boy throw up?
2. Does Rosa fall for every boy she meets?
3. Do the tops come off easily?
4. Does the dog stay off the bed?
5. Did Erik hear about the new job?

2c
1. I don't always give in to her demands.
2. Mr. and Mrs. Taylor didn't fail for the salesman's promises.
3. These machines don't throw up sparks.
4. The patient didn't pull through.
5. The plot didn't come off as planned.

2d
1. She told you to stay off it.
2. He fell for it.
3. They're starting to doze off.
4. She hears about everything.
5. It didn't come off the way you planned it.
6. One of the wheels came off my car.
7. You're not giving in.
8. You fell for them.
9. She doesn't think Ted will pull through.
10. He was throwing up.

2e
1. take off
2. showed up
3. took off
4. looking for
5. came from
1. Go in for
2. Put up with
3. Go along with
4. Looks down on
5. Feel up to
6. Screw ... out of
7. Looking forward to
8. Get ... over with
9. Go along with

6. Give back
7. Ran into
8. Figure out

3a 1. I was the dictionary.
    2. I was in Boston looking some old army buddies.
    3. Dad's in the bedroom wrapping up Mom's birthday present.
    4. The committee is wrapping up their discussion.
    5. He pointed it out.
    6. You're planning for them.
    7. It's looking up.
    8. You put him to a lot of trouble.
    9. It's paid for.
   10. They're wrapping it up.
   11. He put it to me.
   12. She's looking up Erik's telephone number.
   13. He cheated on her.

3b 1. He talks down to him.
    2. She should get it over with.
    3. He screwed them out of $5,000.
    4. She's looking forward to it.
    5. I have to put up with it.
    6. He doesn't feel up to it.
    7. You went along with it.

3c 1. Fall for
    2. Threw up
    3. Come off
    4. Gave in
    5. Stay off
    6. Pull through
    7. Dozed off
    8. Heard about

4a 1. Wrap ... up
    2. Put ... to
    3. Points to
    4. Pay for
    5. Cheated on
    6. Put ... to
    7. Looking ... up
    8. Went after
    9. Cheated on
    10. Plan for
    11. Pointing to
    12. Went after
    13. Pay for
    14. Looked up
    15. Wrapped ... up
    16. Going after
    17. Look up
    18. Going after
    19. Put ... to

4b 1. I was looking up a word in the dictionary.
    2. I was looking up some old army buddies.
    3. Dad's in the bedroom wrapping up Mom's birthday present.
    4. The committee is wrapping up their discussion.
    5. He pointed it out.
    6. You're planning for them.
    7. It's looking up.
    8. You put him to a lot of trouble.
    9. It's paid for.
   10. They're wrapping it up.
   11. He put it to me.
   12. She's looking up Erik's telephone number.
   13. He cheated on her.

4c 1. He pointed it out.
    2. You're planning for them.
    3. It's looking up.
    4. He went after him.
    5. She's going to go after it.
    6. You put him to a lot of trouble.
    7. You're paying for it.
    8. It's paid for.
    9. They're wrapping it up.
   10. She looked her up.
   11. He put it to me.
   12. She's looking up Erik's telephone number.
   13. He cheated on her.

4d 1. Tell for
    2. Came from
    3. Showed up
    4. Figure ... out
    5. Pulled through
    6. Gave in
    7. Heard about
    8. Looking for

5a 1. Broke down
    2. Set up
    3. Pile up
    4. Hand... back
    5. Find out
    6. Called in
    7. Looked at
    8. Breaks down
    9. Breaking ... down
   10. Set ... up
   11. Look at
   12. Break, ... down
   13. Look at
   14. Calling in
   15. Break down
   16. Burn down

5b 1. Broke down
    2. Set up
    3. Pile up
    4. Handed ... back
    5. Find out
    6. Called in
    7. Looked at
    8. Breaks down
    9. Breaking ... down
   10. Set ... up
   11. Look at
   12. Break, ... down
   13. Look at
   14. Calling in
   15. Break down
   16. Burn down
   17. Setting up
   18. Broke down
   19. Piling up
   20. Looking at

5c 1. The firefighters broke down the door. The firefighters broke the door down.
   2. They burned down the old barn. They burned the old barn down. They burned it down.
   3. He called in Dr. Shapiro. He called Dr. Shapiro in. He called her in.
   4. Our teacher handed back the papers. Our teacher handed the papers back. Our teacher handed them back.
   5. I set up the ironing board. I set the ironing board up. I set it up.

5d 1. She set it up.
    2. It was set up.
    3. They're piling up.
    4. They're piled up.
    5. He handed it back.
    6. It broke down.
    7. It's broken down.
    8. He had a breakdown.
    9. They burned it down.
   10. It burned down.
   11. He broke down.
   12. He had a breakdown.
   13. She was angry because I didn't call in.
   14. She set it up.
   15. It's setup.
16. He broke in.
17. You found out that Ali's excuse was a big lie.
5e
1. put up with
2. felt up to
3. Stay off
4. come off
5. looking forward to
6. go along with
7. threw up
8. goes in for
9. talked down to
10. get ...over with

6b
1. He went through with it.
2. You didn't get around to it.
3. You told him you'd get around to it tomorrow.
4. She gets a lot of satisfaction out of it.
5. She came up with a way to manufacture her company's products more cheaply.
6. It comes down to location.
7. I feel like I'm coming down with a cold.
8. You'll monkey around with it.
9. You got it out of her.
10. She went back on her promise.

6c
1. wrap ...up
2. plan for
3. looked ...up
4. cheated on
5. look at
6. finds out
7. going after
8. pointed to
9. put ...to
10. pile up
11. handed ...back
12. burned down

6d
1. wrap... UP
2. PLAN for
3. looked... UP
4. CHEATED on
5. LOOK at
6. finds OUT
7. GOING after
8. POINTED to
9. put...TO
10. pile UP
11. handed... BACK
12. burned DOWN

7a
1. let out
2. holding ...up
3. ran over
4. let out
5. cut ...up
6. pointed out
7. let... out
8. taken in
9. took ...in
10. taking ...apart
11. holding up
12. took in
13. hold up
14. seeing about
15. let out
16. held up
17. ran over
18. pointed ...out
19. ran over
20. take ...in
21. take ...in
22. held ...up
23. run over
24. see about
25. hold up

7b
1. The cook cut up the meat.
2. The cook cut the meat up.
3. The cook cut it up.
4. The snowstorm held up air travelers.
5. The snowstorm held up air travelers.
6. The snowstorm held them up.
7. Don't let out the dog.
8. Don't let the dog out.
9. Don't let it out.
10. The real estate agent pointed out the swimming pool.
11. The real estate agent pointed out the swimming pool.
12. The real estate agent pointed it out.
13. The truck ran over the man.
14. The truck ran the man over.
15. The truck ran him over.
16. I'm going to take apart the broken doorknob.
17. I'm going to take the broken door knob apart.
18. The tailor took in the pants.
19. The tailor took the pants in.
20. The tailor took them in.

7c
1. You're going to see about changing to a different room.
2. They haven't held up.
3. She's going to take them in.
4. He was taken in.
5. I was run over.
6. He pointed them out.
7. It held up the game.
8. She's cutting a piece of paper up.
9. They're holding it up.
10. She held the bank up.
11. There was a holdup.
12. You took it in.
13. He took it apart.
14. It ran over.
15. They took you in.
16. He let it out.
17. You ran over and grabbed it.
18. She let out a scream.
19. It has held up.
20. He let them out.
21. He took it in.
22. It's running over.
23. You're letting them out.

7d
1. go through with
2. come off
3. got out of
4. get around to
5. monkeying around with
6. boil down to
7. figure out
8. put... on
9. went after
10. gone back on
11. came up with
12. looking forward to
13. dozed off
14. came down with

8a
1. fallen over
2. burned out
3. fought back
4. ring ...up
5. work in
6. pick out
7. picked out
8. burn ...out
9. rung ...up
10. heard of
11. fell ...over
12. burned out
13. hear of
14. fight back
15. tear down
8b
1. The sheriff burned out the escaped convicts.
The sheriff burned the escaped convicts out.
The sheriff burned them out.
2. Bill has picked out a new car.
Bill has picked it out.
3. The clerk hasn't rung up these CDs yet.
The clerk hasn't rung these CDs up yet.
The clerk hasn't rung them up yet.
4. The new owners have torn down the garage.
The new owners have torn the garage down.
The new owners have torn it down.
5. The mayor tried to work in a tour of the factory.
The mayor tried to work a tour of the factory.
The mayor tried to work it in.
8c
9. on
9c
1. Tonight I'm going to try to hook up my fax machine.
Tonight I'm going to try to hook my fax machine up.
Tonight I'm going to try to hook it up.
2. After my accident, I had to give up scuba diving.
After my accident, I had to give up scuba diving.
After my accident, I had to give it up.
3. You can hang your coat up in the closet.
You can hang your coat up in the closet.
You can hang it up in the closet.
9d
1. You want to catch up.
2. She has to give up diving.
3. She needs to catch up.
4. I was worked up.
5. Hooking up a computer to a printer is easy.
1. He said he wouldn't hear or it.
2. It's burned itself out.
3. He's rung them up.
4. They've picked it out.
5. She couldn't fight back the tears.
6. It burned out.
7. It's burned out.
8. They fell over.
9. It was burned out.
10. It's burned out.
11. You didn't fight back.
12. You've worked it in.
13. She hasn't rung you up.
14. They tore it down.
15. He fall over himself.
16. You asked him if he's ever heard of the new seafood restaurant in the mall.
8d
1. took... apart
2. pull through
3. shown up
4. ran over
5. taken in
6. fall for
7. cut ...up
8. held up
9. pointed to
10. looked ...up
11. let ...out
1. burned out.
2. hear of
3. to
4. on
5. of
6. to
12. gave in
13. get ...over with
14. see about
15. goes in for
16. put up with
9a
1. give up
2. broke out
3. getting along
4. work up
5. gave... up
6. catch up
7. hang up
8. worked up
9. catch up
10. getting along
11. gave up
12. hang up
13. chickened out
14. hook up
15. catch up
16. broken out
17. hook up
9b
1. on
2. to
3. on
4. of
5. with
6. of
7. of
8. to
9e
1. heard of
2. piled up
3. put... to
4. fallen over
5. looked at
6. pick... out
7. ran into
8. pointed to
9. hand ...back
10. cheating on
11. work... in
12. fight back
13. rang up
14. found out
15. torn down
16. burned out
10a
1. hand ...out
2. screw... up
3. fallen off
4. gave up
5. screwed ...up
6. laid off
7. growing up
8. kick back
9. went ahead
10. fill... in
11. go ahead
12. fall off
13. layoff
14. fill... in
15. kick back
16. fill in
17. Grow up
10b
1. grown-ups
2. screwup
3. kickbacks
4. handouts
5. fill-in
6. handout
7. layoffs
8. falloff
9. go-ahead

10c
1. You haven't filled in all the spaces.
   You haven't filled all the spaces in.
   You haven't filled them in.
2. Is the teacher handing out the tests?
   Is the teacher handing out the tests?
3. The company is going to lay off my brother.
   The company is going to lay off my brother.
   The company is going to lay him off.
4. I'm sorry I screwed up your plan.
   I'm sorry I screwed your plan up.
   I'm sorry I screwed it up.

10d
1. You went ahead with it.
2. She told you to fill it in.
3. It's filled in.
4. She's screwing it up.
5. It's screwing up.
6. I kick back $3,000 to the mayor.
7. It's a kickback.
8. She was laid off.
9. He screwed you up.
10. You grew up there.
11. It's for grown-ups.
12. It will falloff.
13. It would be called a falloff.
14. She told him to lay off.
15. He's filling in for Omar.
16. They'll be handed out.
17. She filled her in.

10e
1. takeoff
2. breakdown
3. hook up
4. breakout
5. hold up
6. setup
7. put'on

10f
1. work up
2. gave up
3. pick out
4. hook up
5. get up
6. talk down to
7. catch up

8. chicken out

11a
1. cut... off
2. back up
3. back up
4. work out
5. backing ... up
6. cut... off
7. back... up
8. follows up
9. drop... off
10. backed... up
11. wake up
12. work out
13. take out
14. back up
15. worked out
16. works out
17. drops off
18. cut off
19. taking... out
20. back up
21. cut... off
22. fell off
23. try... out
24. woke... up
25. worked out
26. try out
27. take out
28. worked out
29. cutoff
30. took... out
31. taken... out

11b
1. Did you back up your work? Did you back your work up? Did you back it up?
2. They're cutting off the power. They're cutting the power off. They're cutting it off.
3. I dropped off Frank at the airport. I dropped Frank off at the airport. I dropped him off at the airport.
4. Mom asked me to take out the garbage. Mom asked me to take it out.
5. Alex tried out his new bicycle. Alex tried his new bicycle out. Alex tried it out.
6. Mike has woken up Ali. Mike has woken Ali up. Mike has woken him up.

11c
1. It's his backup camera.
2. It's the cutoff date.
3. She's his back-up.
4. I gave it a tryout.

5. She made a follow-up visit.
6. Your workout clothes got dirty.
7. You ate takeout food.
8. There was a backup on the interstate.
9. There has been a falloff.
10. She didn't make a backup.
11. There's a dropoff.
12. You gave it a workout.

11d
1. They cut it off
2. You bought takeout food.
3. Working out is good for my health.
4. You're going to try it out.
5. They're letting me give their service a tryout.
6. It cut them off.
7. They were cut off.
8. I'm backing it up.
9. It's a backup.
10. She's following up.
11. My workout routine is difficult.
12. He backed up his accusation with photographs.
13. She wants to try out.
14. It backs it up.
15. It's a backup.
16. She drops her off.
17. It's a follow-up appointment.
18. It's not working out the way she expected.
19. He took Judy out.
20. It works out to $9,000.
21. You've never woken up at 3:30 in the morning.

11e
1. lay off
2. handed out
3. grew up
4. screwed up
5. go ahead
6. felt off
7. stay off
8. looking for
9. coming from
10. feel up to
11. screw... out of
12. kickback
13. go along with
14. give ... back
15. fill in
16. heard of

12a
1. sign ... out
2. came up
3. put up
4. came across
5. signed out
6. fell through
7. puts up
8. backoff
9. fallen through
1. He'd backed off.
2. He had signed in.
3. She'd fallen through.
4. He had put up a fight.
5. It had come across well.

12b
1. The bride hasn't called the wedding off.
2. Are they closing off the gallery?
3. The accountant handed in her report.
4. Have you left off Carmen?
5. The judge let off the pickpocket.
6. I told him not to light up the cigarette.
7. The EPA tracked down the polluters.

12c
1. It was tracked down.
2. They were handed in.
3. They're always left off.
4. She was hit on.
5. It was left off.
6. It was called off.
7. It's being closed off.
8. It's closed off.
9. It was lit up.
10. It was lit up.

12d
1. pay for
2. followed up

4. light up
5. tracked ... down
6. lighting up
7. closed off
8. left off
9. hit on
10. handed in
11. dropped off
12. left off
13. hand in
14. let... off
15. hand in

13b
1. The bride hasn't called off the wedding.
2. Are they closing off the gallery?
3. The accountant handed in her report.
4. Have you left off Carmen?
5. The judge let off the pickpocket.
6. I told him not to light up the cigarette.
7. The EPA tracked down the polluters.
8. She had put up the money.
9. He'd said that it was coming up.
10. He'd screwed it on.
11. It was screwed on.
12. It had put up.
13. It had come across.
14. He'd come up to New York.
15. He'd come across some old newspapers.
16. He'd come across some old newspapers.
17. She had signed out.

13c
1. It was tracked down.
2. They were handed in.
3. They were always left off.
4. She was hit on.
5. It was left off.
6. It was called off.
7. It's being closed off.
8. It's closed off.
9. It was lit up.
10. It was lit up.

13d
1. burned down
2. taken off
3. talked down to
4. set up
5. screwed out of
6. let out
7. called in
8. pointed out
9. run into
10. piled up
11. given back
12. handed back
13. taken apart
14. planned for
15. run over
16. looked at

14a
1. wound up
2. tick... up
3. put away
4. stuck... up
5. dress up
6. dries up
7. put... away
8. winding up
9. stuck... up
10. winding ... up
11. dressed up
12. dries up
13. wind ... up
14. stick up
15. filled out
16. put away
17. stuck up
18. put away
19. used ... up
20. bulls in
1. He wound up in the hospital.
2. She kept butting in.
3. It dried up.
4. He put them away.
5. They're put away.
6. They're dried up.
7. They wound it up. S. It was wound up.
8. She dressed up.
9. She was dressed up.
10. He filled it out.
11. It was filled out.

14e
1. hung up
2. paid for
3. hooked up
4. cutoff
5. broken-down
6. set up
7. filled in
8. screwed up
9. caught up
10. worked up
11. grown-up
12. cut up
13. burned-out
14. backed up
15. wake-up
16. piled up

15a
1. blew ...away
2. set... up
3. came through
4. fix ...up
5. tell ...on
6. comes through
7. heading/headed for
8. fix ... up
9. comes through
10. heading/headed for
11. go with
12. dried out
13. blow ...away
14. come through
15. set... up
16. go with
17. came through
18. blown away
19. went with
20. came through
21. went with
22. head back
23. go with

15b
1. He's going to fix you up with a table next to the fireplace.
2. She's sure that her father will come through.
3. It's going to blow him away.
4. He'll fix it up.
5. It will be fixed up.
6. He won't tell on her.

16a
1. thinking about
2. carry... on
3. counting on
4. go for
5. believe in
6. get through
7. count on
8. get through
9. held off
10. put ...past
11. carried on
12. held off
13. went for
14. going for
15. carry on
16. get ...through
17. believe in
18. carry on
19. believe in
20. get through
21. goes for
22. get through
23. count on

16b
1. She goes for it.
2. She didn't get through studying until 11:00 P.M.
3. They carried them on.

16c
1. wounded
2. goes in for
3. put up with
4. looking forward to
5. give up
6. feel up to
7. see... about
8. get around to
9. get out of
10. get ...over with
11. left off
12. worked out
13. broke down
14. took ...in
15. put ...up
16. broke out
17. butt in

16d
1. stuck-up
2. fixed up
3. used up
4. put away
5. wound up
6. wrapped up
7. filled out
8. dried up
9. dressed up
10. screwed on
11. closed off
12. lit up

16e
1. wound up
2. goes in for
3. put up with
4. looking forward to
5. give up
6. feel up to
7. see... about
8. get around to
9. get out of
10. get ...over with
11. left off
12. worked out
13. broke down
14. took ...in
15. put ...up
16. broke out
17. butt in
17b (any two of the possible sentences shown are acceptable)
2. Sometimes these cheap toys fall apart.
3. Nervously he went about making the bomb.
4. Eventually Sally will grow out of her childish behavior.
5. Reluctantly Jim headed into the swamp.
6. Suddenly Pat ripped up Mike's letter.
7. Soon Frank will get back at Todd.
8. Gradually he wore down my resistance.

17c
1. It was ripped up.
2. It was ripped up.
3. It's falling apart.
4. They came over.
5. He doesn't know how to go about applying for a mortgage.
6. We're going to head into the city.
7. She grew out of it.
8. They've worn down.
9. They're worn down.
10. He's gotten back at you.
11. They came over before Columbus.

17d
1. find out
2. get along
3. go through with
4. chickened out of
5. work in
6. fight back
7. came down with
8. monkey around with
9. kicking back
10. heard of
11. come up
12. bolt down to
13. come up
14. tell over
15. Go ahead

18a
1. get off
2. break through
3. tell...apart
4. get off
5. line up
6. stood around
7. goes beyond
8. get...off
9. figured on
10. get off
11. lined up
12. get...off
13. broke through
14. Get off
15. lift up
16. get off
17. line up
18. Get off

18b
1. He said he'd get it off the table.
2. You can't tell them apart.
3. He can't lift it up.
4. He said he hadn't figured on snow in May.
5. She lined up a great band.
6. It's lined up.
7. He said it goes beyond that.
8. They broke through it.
9. He gets off at 5:00.
10. I got off with a warning.
11. He lined up the desks.
12. They're lined up.
13. She asked you to get off the phone.
14. You stood around waiting for the bus.
15. He said you'd get Sundays off.
16. They have to be lined up.

18c
1. Got off the train.
2. He told him to get off the grass.

18d
1. went for
2. thought about
3. held off
4. went with
5. came through
6. counting on
7. told on
8. put...past
9. come over
10. goes along with
11. head for
12. head back
13. carried on
14. get off
15. grown out of
16. believe in
trucks.
The drivers are warming their trucks up.
The drivers are warming them up.

19c
1. It warmed up right.
2. I'll go right back to work.
3. It cooled right off.
4. You would pull right over.
5. He aimed it right at him.
6. She told you to give her dictionary right back.
7. He told her to hand it right over.
8. She brought it right over.

19d
1. broke through
2. standing around
3. went beyond
4. track down
5. headed into
6. backed off
7. come up with
8. hit on
9. fell through
10. wind up
11. tell...apart
12. figure on
13. came across
14. lifted up
15. put up
16. let...off

20a
1. go off
2. went around
3. go on
4. go off
5. hang around
6. ended up
7. lies around
8. hangs around
9. start out
10. go around
11. stay up
12. ended up
13. lying around
14. went around
15. go on
16. goes off
17. going around
18. go off
19. stay up
20. goes around
21. hangs around
22. go around
23. went on
24. went around
25. Go ahead
26. go on
27. went on
28. went around
29. goes around
30. go on

20b
1. I'm going to lie around watching TV.
2. She went around making decorating plans.
3. It ended up in Australia.
4. It goes off at 2:00.
5. He asked, "What's going on?"
6. He goes around telling awful jokes.
7. She stayed up all night.
8. He hangs around the house.
9. It didn't go off.
10. He went around wearing a Hawaiian shirt.
11. They go on automatically.
12. They didn't get a hot dog because I didn't buy enough to go around.
13. You have to go around the pot-holes.
14. You ended up buying the red car.
15. You couldn't go on.
16. She started out thinking it would take only a few weeks.

20d
1. screwed ... out of
2. cooled off
3. ripped ...up
4. blow...away
5. gave up
6. work up
7. paid for
8. heard of
9. came over
10. called off
11. see ...about
12. go about
13. dry out
14. aimed at
15. broke out
16. bring ...over

21a
1. take...out on
2. step on
3. picking on
4. looked around
5. settling down
6. looked over
7. settle...down
8. zip ... up
9. settled down
10. look around
11. think ahead
12. step on

21b
1. He should took it over.

402
2. I looked around.
3. They settled down.
4. I should zip it up.
5. It's zipped up.
6. She didn't think ahead.
7. He picks on him. B- He took it our on his wife, 9. He stepped on it.

21c
1. Business in this restaurant should/ought to fall off in January.
2. They should/ought to be warming up the investigation.
3. These cheap shoes shouldn't hold up more than three months.
4. Jim flies from Florida to Boston every year in April, and it's April now. Jim should/ought to come up to Boston soon.
5. It almost always gets cooler in October, and it's October 1st today, so it should/ought to cool off soon.
6. Paul's disease is not serious, so he should/ought to pull through.
7. Francisco almost never works past 5:00, and it's 4:50 now. He should/ought to get off in a few minutes.
8. Lydia likes skiing a lot, so if you suggest that we go skiing next weekend, she should/ought to go for the idea.
9. The enemy soldiers have been trying to smash a hole in the wall of the fort for two hours, and they should/ought to break through soon.
10. Sally said she would come to my house at 5:30 and it's 5:40 now. She should/ought to come over soon.
11. This work normally takes four hours to finish, so if you start at 9:00 you should/ought to get through around 1:00.
12. The train almost always passes through town at 3:25, and it's 3:20 now, so the train should/ought to come through town in five minutes.
I can't.

I can't.

I can't.

5. Have they candy?

6. Wipe up that water right now!
Wipe that water up right now!
Wipe it up right now!

22c
1. I plugged it up.
2. It was plugged up.
3. You're heating it up.
4. It'll be heated up.
5. He hasn't counted up his money.
6. I'll pay it up.
7. I'll be paid up.
8. They burned them up.
9. They're burned up.
10. It cleared right up.
11. She's wiping it up.
12. He eats his food right up.

22d
1. count on
2. go with
3. Think ahead
4. signed in
5. signed out
6. put away
7. hand ...in
8. go with
9. dress up
10. looked around
11. step on
12. dry up
13. Zip up
14. takes ...out on
15. heading/headed for
16. head back

23a
1. make ... up
2. Watch out
3. cut down
4. cut down
5. Stay up
6. hold out
7. made up
8. drop out
9. makeup
10. crack down
11. got away
12. hold ...out
13. gotten away
14. stay out
15. holding out
16. make up
17. gotten away
18. get away
19. stayed out
20. cuts down
21. holdout
22. made up
23. make up

23b
1. on
2. on
3. of
4. with
5. for
6. for
7. of

23c
1. They're holding out for a 10 percent raise.
2. They're holdouts.
3. They made up.
4. He dropped out.
5. He's a dropout.
6. I made up my mind.
7. She told me to cut down on tennis.
8. They're holding out.
9. They're holdouts.
10. They stayed out until 3:00 a.m.
11. It has to hold out.
12. He made up a story.
13. It was made up.
14. He has gotten away with it.
15. I have to watch out for big trucks.
16. They're going to crack down on crime.
17. It's a crackdown.

23d
1. grown out of
2. hold off
3. wipe up
4. think about
5. get through
6. tell ...apart
7. breakthrough
8. counted up
9. aimed at
10. falling apart
11. went for
12. put past
13. burned up
14. believes in
15. stand around
16. come over

24a
1. slowdown
2. Shake up
3. comedown
4. traded ... in
5. come down
6. Stopping over
7. shaken up
8. showed ... off
9. let up
10. come down
11. print ... out
12. shook ... up
13. stop ... over

24b
1. shake-up
2. stopover
3. comedown
4. letup
5. trade-ins
6. slowdown
7. printout
8. show-off

24c
1. The rain slowed down traffic.
   The rain slowed traffic down.
   The rain slowed it down.
   He printed it out.
   He printed his letter out.
   He printed his letter our.
   He printed it out.
   The bad news has shaken Jim and Nancy up.
   The bad news has shaken them up.
4. I got $5,000 for trading in my old car, I got $5,000 for 403

25a
1. hurry up
2. settle for
3. had ... on
4. lighten up
5. knocked ... over
6. do with
7. plan ahead
8. think up
9. hurry ... up
10. lighten ... up
11. have ... on

25b
1. He had a red shirt on.
2. He won't settle for less.
3. She's planning ahead.
4. He knocked him over.
5. He told him to hurry up.
6. It had to do with my income taxes.
7. He should lighten up.
8. She's thinking up a Halloween costume.

25d
1. zipped up
2. warped up
3. cleared up
4. dried up
5. made-up
6. paid up
7. shaken up
8. ripped up

trading my old car in.
I got $5,000 for trading it in.
5. Chelsea's parents showed off her perfect report card.
   Chelsea's parents showed her perfect report card off.
   Chelsea's parents showed it off.

24d
1. You printed them out.
2. It's a printout.
3. He's going to come down to New Orleans.
4. He shows off.
5. He's a show-off.
6. You'll trade it in.
7. It's a trade-in.
8. He shook things up.
9. It was a shake-up.
10. She's come down in life.
11. It's a comedown.
12. It let up.
13. It was a let up.
15. It was a slowdown.
16. I stopped over.
17. It was a stopover.

9. lined up
10. warmed up
11. plugged up
12. burned up
13. worn down

25e
1. comedown
2. hookup
3. screw ... on
4. show off
5. called in
6. stops over
7. trade in
8. stuck ... up
9. cleared up
10. let up
11. warm up
12. slow down
13. hand out
14. print ... out
15. gone back

26a
1. get ... together
2. start ... up
3. go over
4. open ... up
5. went up
6. put ... together
7. shut off
8. go up
9. let ... in on
10. go over
11. goes up

18. it shook him up.
19. He was shaken up.

24e
1. follow-up
2. crackdown
3. dropout
4. lineup
5. tryout
6. workout
7. backup
8. drop-off

24f
1. stay out
2. lift ... up
3. goes beyond
4. told on
5. watch out
6. figure on
7. cool ... off
8. holding out
9. bringing over
10. look around
11. settle down
12. step on
13. counted up
14. wipe up
15. hung up

12. go over
13. put ... together
14. opens up
15. goes ... up
16. go over
17. get ... together
18. gets together
19. went over
20. open ... up
21. Put ... together
22. goes up
23. start up

26b
1. I wish they would open up a branch office near me.
   I wish they would open a branch office up near me.
2. Lydia put together the food processor.
   Lydia put the food processor together.
   Lydia put it together.
3. Do you know how to shut off the photocopier?
   Do you know how to shut the photocopier off?
   Do you know how to shut it off?
4. Push this button to start up the generator.
   Push this button to start the generator up.
26c
1. He went over it.
2. He gave it a good going-over.
3. She went up to the king and gave him the petition.
4. He let you in on a secret.
5. They're going to get together.
6. It's called a get-together.
7. It starts up from the hard disk.
8. It's the start-up disk.
9. It went over well.
10. It shuts off.
11. It's called the shut-off point when the shut-off temperature.
12. I quit my job so that I could start up my own company.
13. I'd call it a start-up company.
15. It goes up to December 31.
16. It opens up at 7:00 A.M.

26d
1. settle for
2. lighten up
3. knocked...over
4. ended up
5. hurry up
6. takes...out on
7. looked...over
8. Put...on
9. hurry up
10. gone off
11. picked on
12. think up
13. do with
14. showing off
15. go on
16. have...on

26e
1. You washed it off.
2. He broke them off.
3. They're broken off.
4. It bit it right off.
5. It wore off.
6. It's worn off.
7. You knocked it off.
8. I wiped it off.
9. It's wiped off.
10. I have to dry it off.
11. It's dried off.
12. I tore it off.
13. It's torn off.

27a
1. tore...off
2. wiped...off
3. knock off
4. dries off
5. bite...off
6. wear off
7. wash...off
8. knocked off
9. broke off
10. Knock...off
11. wore...off
12. broke down
13. knock off
14. wore off
15. knock...off

27b
1. Alex has bitten off the head of the gingerbread man.
   Alex has bitten it off.
2. The movers broke off the cup handle.
   The movers broke the cup handle right off.
   The movers broke it right off.
3. Please dry off the dishes.
   Please dry the dishes off.
4. Don't knock off the ashtray.
   Don't knock the ashtray off.
   Don't knock it off.
5. Can I tear off these mattress tags?
   Can I tear those mattress tags off?
   Can I tear them off?
6. The janitor washed off the blood.
   The janitor washed the blood right off.
   The janitor washed it right off.
7. She didn't wipe off the milk.
   She didn't wipe off the milk.
   She didn't wipe it off.

27c
1. You washed it off.
2. He broke them off.
3. They're broken off.
4. It bit it right off.
5. It wore off.
6. It's worn off.
7. You knocked it off.
8. I wiped it off.
9. It's wiped off.
10. I have to dry it off.
11. It's dried off.
12. I tore it off.
13. It's torn off.

27d
1. cut off
2. pay up
3. let up
4. thought ahead
5. cleared...up
6. go over
7. put...together
8. came down
9. opened up
10. ate...up
11. heats...up
12. gone up
13. let...in on
14. trade...in
15. started up
16. plugged...up

28a
1. breakup
2. messed...up
3. give...away
4. beef up
5. call...up
6. carried out
7. stand up
8. broke up
9. messed...up
10. stood...up
11. broke...up
12. carry...out
13. broke up
14. call...back
15. given...away
16. broke up
17. called...back
18. give...away

28b
1. The White House beefed up security.
   The White House beefed security up.
   The White House beefed it up.
2. The police are breaking up the protest.
   The police are breaking the protest up.
   The police are breaking it up.
3. A trained technician ought to carry out the experiment.
   A trained technician ought to carry the experiment out.
   A trained technician ought to carry it out.
4. The foundation gave away the money.
   The foundation gave the money away.
   The foundation gave it away.
5. Susie always messes up the bathroom.
   Susie always messes the bathroom up.
   Susie always messes it up.
6. Todd stood up Heather.
   Todd stood up Heather.
   Todd stood her up.

28c
1. It will be carried out by Dr. Wood.
2. It was broken up.
3. It was messed up.
4. It was messed up.
5. He was stood up.
6. She wasn't called back.
7. It was given away.
8. It's being beefed up.
9. It's been beefed up.
10. They'll be called up.

28d
1. backed up
2. torn down
3. used up
4. woken up
5. taken in
6. taken out
7. blown away
8. torn down
3. You ran across your college roommate.
4. He mode the check out to Fred Baker.
5. It's made out.
6. You might drop in on her.
7. It's coming apart.
8. I lucked out.
9. You can't make it out.
10. He told her to look out for cars.

29a
1. make... out
2. look out
3. coming apart
4. make... out
9. punched out
10. put... out
11. lock in
12. locked out
13. spaced out
14. sorted out
15. put... out
16. washed up
17. put... out
18. put out

29b
1. I flipped out.
2. He might ask Santa Claus for a new bicycle.
404
2. You're going to lock them out.
3. They're locked out.
4. He spaced out.
5. He is spaced-out.
6. She told you to wash up.
7. It's put out.
8. She punched him in.
9. He's punched in.
10. I should sort them out.
11. They're sorted out.
12. You locked him hi.
13. He's locked in.
14. He was put out.
15. He was put out.
16. They can't punch out before 4:30.
17. They're punched out.
18. She didn't put herself out.

30b
1. He locked in the crazy guy.
2. He locked the crazy guy in.
3. Jim locked his wife.
4. Jim locked out his wife.
5. Did you punch in Rosa?
6. Did you punch Rosa in?
7. Would you punch her in?
8. Would you punch out Linda and Erik?
9. Would you punch Linda and Erik out?
10. Would you punch them out?
5. They couldn't put out the fire.
6. They couldn't put the fire out.
7. They couldn't put it out.
6. The bright lights spaced out Janice.
7. The bright lights spaced Janice out.

30c
1. punched out
2. locked in
3. sorted out
4. locked out
5. sorted out
6. spaced out
7. put out
8. punched in

30d
1. You put it out.

5. drop in
6. flip out
7. made out
8. ran across
9. asking for
10. lucked out
11. ask for
12. made... out

29c
1. I flipped out.
2. He might ask Santa Claus for a new bicycle.
404
2. You're going to lock them out.
3. They're locked out.
4. He spaced out.
5. He is spaced-out.
6. She told you to wash up.
7. It's put out.
8. She punched him in.
9. He's punched in.
10. I should sort them out.
11. They're sorted out.
12. You locked him hi.
13. He's locked in.
14. He was put out.
15. He was put out.
16. They can't punch out before 4:30.
17. They're punched out.
18. She didn't put herself out.

30f
1. Dropping out
2. filled out
3. trade... in
4. standing up
5. had... on
6. asked ... for
7. hurry up
8. knock... over
9. opened up
10. wash ... off
11. wipe... off
12. carried out
13. drop in
14. working out
31a
1. ruled out
2. cutout
3. do away with
4. cut... out
5. do without
6. put off
7. care for
8. look into
9. done away with
10. cutout
11. care for
12. cutout
13. planned on
14. got off
15. planning on

31b
1. I put it off.
2. He cut out acting like such a big shot.
3. He said that nothing has been ruled out.
4. They don't care for him.
5. It does away with child labor.
6. I'll have to do without it.
7. You're going to look into having it painted.
8. You can plan on freezing to death.
9. She was put off.
10. She was put off.
11. They suspected that he had been done away with by a coworker.
12. He cur it our.
13. He cared for it.

31d
1. go about
2. make out
3. made up
4. coming apart
5. get back at
6. lucked out
7. beefed up
8. cut down
9. flipped out
10. ran across
11. cracked down
12. asking for
13. getaway
14. drop in
15. got off
16. lockout

32a
1. fell out
2. came out
3. coming out
4. sticking out
5. comes out
6. went out
7. stick... out
8. cleaned ... out
9. left out
10. Go out
11. empty ...out
12. come out
13. go out
14. come out
15. clear... out
16. fell out
17. come out
18. clear out
19. came out
20. emptied out
21. going out
22. stick... out
23. go out
24. coming out
25. cleaned ...out
26. come out
27. come out
28. clean... out
29. sticks out

32b
1. of
2. of
3. to
4. with
5. for/in favor of
6. against
7. with, over
8. of
9. to
10. with
11. of

32c
1. My son cleaned out the basement.
   My son cleaned the basement out.
   My son cleaned it out.
2. I need to clear out the storeroom.
   I need to clear the storeroom out.
   I need to clear it out.
3. Sarah emptied out the boxes.
   Sarah emptied the boxes out.
   Sarah emptied them out.
4. The factory left out an important part.
   The factory left an important part out.
   The factory left it out.
5. Don't stick out your neck.
   Don't stick your neck out.
   Don't stick it out.

32d
1. It's coming out.
2. They cleared out.
3. It cleared out.
4. You're going to go out with her.
5. He didn't come out of the battle alive.
6. You left him out.
7. He feels left out.
8. They cleaned me out.
9. They came out with a new CD.
10. He sticks out.
11. They came out for/in favor of the Republican candidate.
12. He fell out with him.
13. They had a falling out.

32e
1. cut... out
2. do without
3. sort... out
4. spaced out
5. watch out
6. punch ...in
7. look into
8. holding out
9. put out
10. punch out
11. do away with
12. rule ...out
13. wash up
14. lock in
15. care for
16. put off

33a
1. help... out
2. catch on
3. fall behind
4. pulled... off
5. blow up
6. goofs around
7. blow up
8. come a bout
9. pulled over
10. fall behind
11. know about
12. catch on
13. Blow up
14. caught on
15. fall behind
16. knows about
17. blow ...up

33b
1. at
2. over
3. to
4. in
5. with

33c
1. It didn't catch on.
2. She's helping them out.
3. They pulled it off.
4. He goofed around.
5. They blow them up.

6. He blows up.
7. She knows about it.
8. They fell behind.
9. She asked me to explain how the situation came about.

33d
1. ruled...out
2. put off
3. put out
4. look into
5. came out
6. fell out
7. spaced out
8. go around
9. cut out
10. plan on
11. sorted...out
12. give away
13. do without
14. sticks...out
15. empty...out
16. go out

34a
1. stick to
2. floating around
3. stick around
4. take...back
5. led up to
6. take...back
7. stick to
8. taken back
9. put...up to
10. stick to
11. stands for
12. took...back
13. stick...to
14. took...back
15. stands for
16. take...back
17. stand for
18. do...over
19. leading up to
20. take...back
21. going around

34b
1. STICK to
2. FLOATING around
3. stick AROUND
4. take...BACK
5. led up to
6. take...BACK
7. STICK to
8. taken BACK
9. put...UP to
10. STICK to
11. STANDS for
12. took...BACK
13. STICK...to
14. took...BACK
15. STANDS for
16. take...BACK
17. STANDS for

34c
1. She took it back.
2. They led up to it.
3. I've done it over.
4. You took it back.
5. He sticks to it.
6. He won't stand for it.
7. It took him back.
8. He stuck around.
9. It's been floating around.
10. She asked you what "Ph.D." stands for.
11. He put you up to it.

34d
1. came out
2. came about
3. wears off
4. shake...up
5. plan ahead
6. get together
7. goofs a round
8. put together
9. bitten off
10. fell behind
11. stayed out
12. caught on
13. let...in on
14. stop over
15. pull...off
16. print...out

35a
1. left...behind
2. tricked...into
3. went by
4. living with
5. narrowed...down
6. make of
7. holds against
8. fooling around
9. goes by
10. Living with
11. Leaving...behind
12. fooled around
13. went by
14. fool around
15. live with
16. go by
17. left behind
18. go by

35b
1. She'll have to learn to live with it.
2. You hold it against him.
3. They're fooling around.
4. He has to live with them.
5. He narrowed it down.
6. I fool around.
7. He tricked her into giving him money.
8. She asked him what he made of the test results.
9. It went by you.
10. They're going to leave her behind.
11. It went by quickly.

35d
1. lucked out
2. lay around
3. flip out
4. stayed up
5. stand for
6. take back
7. hangs out
8. lead up to
9. messed up
10. do...over
11. broke up
12. floating around
13. coming apart
14. stick around
15. ended up
16. run across

36a
1. puts down
2. calmed down
3. goes down
4. run down
5. fell down
6. sit down
7. ran over
8. go down
9. put down
10. backed down
11. goes down
12. lay...down
13. sat...down
14. put...down
15. calm down
16. go down
17. lay down
18. gone down
19. Put...down
20. run down
21. went down
22. Putting...down
23. run down

36b
1. The jockey calmed down
the horse.
The Jockey calmed the horse down.
2. The mechanic laid down her tools.
The mechanic laid her tools down.
The mechanic laid them down.
3. I put down my books.
I put them down.
4. The taxi ran down the traffic cop.
The taxi ran the traffic cop down.
The taxi ran him down.

36c
1. He ran down the list.
2. He gave me a rundown of the car's options.
3. He calmed it down.
4. It's rundown.
5. It went down well.
6. He put her down.
7. It was a put-down.
8. He sat down.
9. It backed down.
10. She put my name down.
11. They laid them down.
12. I fell down.

36d
1. spaced-out
2. torn off
3. paid up
4. punched in
5. busied up
6. punched out
7. plugged up
8. locked in
9. locked out
10. shaken up
11. sorted out
12. left out
13. put out
14. cleaned out
15. emptied out

36a
1. washed up
2. care for
3. caught on
4. came about
5. stuck with
6. make out
7. locked ... out
8. make of
9. put ... off
10. pulled ... off
11. did without
12. went out
13. blew up
14. planning on
15. cleaned ... out
16. narrowed ... down
37a
1. cover ... up
2. cover ... up
3. brush ... off
4. pay off
5. comes on
6. let ... down
7. came on
8. talk to
9. Hanging out
10. brushed... off
11. pay ... off
12. comes on
13. coming on
14. leftover
15. coming on
16. paying off
37b
1. payoff
2. leftovers
3. letdown
4. brush-off
5. payoff
6. come-on
7. cover-up
8. hangout
9. talking-to
37c
1. He hangs our there.
2. It's a hangout.
3. You told him to come off it.
4. I had$100 left over.
5. It comes on.
6. He let her down.
7. She's going to pay it off.
8. It's paid off.
9. She talked to him.
10. She gave him a talking-to.
11. It comes on.
12. I ate leftovers.
13. He paid him off.
14. It was a payoff.
15. He tried to cover them up.
16. It was a cover-up.
17. He brushed her off.
18. He gave her the brush-off.
19. He said, "Come on."
20. It was a letdown.
21. You were let down.
37d
1. put-down
2. breakup
3. get-together
9. You hope she can keep it up.
4. grown-ups
5. lockout
6. blowup
7. lookout
8. giveaway
9. going-over
10. cutouts
11. rundown

37a
1. hold ... against
2. narrowed ... down
3. emptied ... out
4. go by
5. caught on
6. pulled ... off
7. make of
8. fool around
9. leave ... behind
10. done away with
11. Living with
12. calmed down
13. fall down
14. go down
15. put ... down
16. sit down
38a
1. keep from
2. keep ... to
3. kept ... up
4. Keep at
5. keeping ... down
6. keep off
7. keep to
8. keep up
9. keep ... away
10. keep up
11. keep up
12. keep ... off
13. keep up
14. keep ... down
15. keep ... from
16. keep on
17. keep ... on
18. keep ... to
19. keep away
38b
1. He asked you to keep it down.
2. You asked her to keep it to $4,000.
3. You can't keep from failing asleep.
4. You have to keep at it.
5. It's hard to keep up with the political situation in Washington.
6. She kept on running.
7. I've got to keep away.
8. She thinks he's keeping something from her.
10. You asked him to keep the children away from your computer.
11. He said it's important to keep inflation down.
12. He's kept off drugs for five years.
13. You can't keep him from joining the Army.
14. It's hard for her to keep up with the other students.

38d
1. brush... off
2. running down
3. fell behind
4. go down
5. backed down
6. come on
7. fell down
8. Calm down
9. came about
10. goof around
11. know... about
12. sat... down
13. leftover
14. lay... down
15. hang out
16. talk to

39a
1. picked up
2. sold out
3. straighten... out
4. took over
5. clean... up
6. take over
7. pickup
8. pick... up
9. chop up
10. wipe out
11. pickup
12. taken over
13. filled up
14. pickup
15. filled up
16. straightened out
17. pick up
18. wipe... out
19. picking... up
20. straighten... out
21. picked up
22. fill up
23. pick... up
24. take... over
25. pick up
26. pick up
27. cross... off

39b
1. Have you chopped up the onions?
2. Have you chopped the onions up?

2. You can cross off Linda's name.
3. You can cross off Linda's name off.
4. Fill the aquarium with water.
5. Fill it up with water.
6. I need to pick up my parents at the train station.
7. I need to pick up my parents up at the train station.
8. I need to pick them up at the train station.
9. Can you straighten this mess out?
10. Can you straighten this mess out?
11. The rebels took over the royal palace.
12. The rebels took over the royal palace.
13. They wiped out the palace guard.
14. They wiped the palace guard out.
15. They wiped them out.

39c
1. It always picks up in the spring.
2. It might be taken over by pirates.
3. It would be a takeover.
4. She straightened everything out.
5. It's straightened out.
6. He was supposed to be picked up.
7. They'll be wiped out.
8. It ought to be crossed off.
9. It'll be crossed off.
10. It sold out of the CDs.
11. They were sold out.
12. It had sold out.
13. It was chopped up.
14. It has to be picked up before 6:00.
15. He took over for the pilot.
16. He often asks you to pick up a newspaper.
17. You'll tell her not to let the water run over.
18. You picked up on page 95.

39d
1. settling down
2. slowed... down
3. cut down
4. left out
5. blew up
6. Hard... over
7. came out
8. bring... back
9. knock off
10. Makeup
11. picking on
12. bitten off
13. pulled... over
14. wear... down
15. look... over
16. broken off

40a
1. stuck with
2. going away
3. blow... off
4. got off on
5. came back
6. running around
7. stick with
8. brought up
9. brought up
10. stick with
11. come back
12. come back
13. going away
14. burst out
15. ran around
16. stick... with
17. going away
18. come back
19. go away
20. brings up

40b
1. They're not sticking with the original plan.
2. It came back.
3. I burst out crying.
4. He blew it off.
5. He gave me the rundown.
6. She asked him to go away.
7. She gets off on it.
8. He got stuck with unloading the truck.
9. She brought up joining the Peace Corps.
10. It's coming back.
11. It never goes away. 12.1 haven't come back.
13. He ran around looking for a telephone.
14. It would be nice to get away.
15. They brought me up to believe in the golden rule.

40d
1. holds... against
2. do... over
3. go down
4. went out
5. stick a round
6. run down
7. make of
8. take... back
9. lay down
10. fool around
11. backed down
12. stick... to
13. put ...up to
14. led up to
15. go by
16. trick... into

41a
1. letting in
2. sneaked in
3. broke in
4. check... out
5. check... in
6. plug into
7. go in
8. check in
9. sneaked in
10. go in
11. check... out
12. go into
13. letting in
14. checkout
15. check into
16. checkout
17. break into
18. checked in

41b
1. She sneaked in.
2. She let him in.
3. She checked out.
4. It's the checkout time,
5. It was broken into.
6. There was a break-in.
7. You'll check in.
8. You'll go to check-
in...You'll go to the check-in counter.
9. She doesn't want to go in.
10. You'll check it out.
11. He checks them in.
12. They're checked in.
13. I sneaked out.
14. He hasn't checked in.
15. He plugged it in.

41c
16. It's plugged in.
17. He was checked out.
18. You didn't break in your boots.

41d
1. left over
2. lets ... down
3. come on
4. put... down
5. started out
6. help... out
7. blow... off
8. narrowed ...down
9. straighten ...out
10. takeover
11. live with
12. filled up
13. go away
14. hang out
15. talked to
16. gets off on

42a
1. get back
2. got out
3. gets out
4. Getting over
5. gotten into
6. got... out
7. get up
8. get out
9. get... in
10. Get in
11. got... in
12. get...in
13. get in
14. gets out
15. gets by
16. get down
17. Get down
18. get by
19. gotten up
20. get behind
21. get to
22. get by
23. gets back
24. get...down
25. get over
26. getting... back
27. get over
28. Get... out
29. get... out
30. get out
31. get into

42b
1. He got you up.
2. It's difficult to get up to Minnesota.
3. I got into a lot of trouble.
4. I need to get right back home.
5. She can barely get by.
6. She'll get behind.
7. He hasn't gotten over it.
8. She got me out of it.
9. He's getting it out.
10. He's getting it down.
11. They couldn't get it in.
12. You can't get by.
13. She got out.
14. She got back in.
15. He got it back.
16. They got her down.
17. He asked you to get right over to his house.

42c
1. pick... up
2. clear... out
3. selling out
4. leave... behind
5. floating around
6. running around
7. punching ...in
8. punched out
9. call... up
10. call... back
11. go in
12. startup
13. Sneaking into
14. sneak out
15. brushes... off
16. crossed... off
17. plug ...in

43a
1. head toward
2. tried ...on
3. blew out
4. gave out
5. run up
407

43b
1. of
2. to
3. on
4. to
5. in
6. at

43c
1. The wind blew out the candle.
The wind blew the candle...
16. Could have impossible.
15. It must have grossed out.
14. The smell grossed out everyone.
13. The smell grossed them out.
12. He was locked up.
11. He was locked up.
10. It's stressing me out.
9. I'm stressed out.
8. They were beat up.
7. They got carried away.
6. They beat him up.
5. I have to mix them up.
4. It was a cross off.
3. He must have been broken in.
2. They ran up to her.
1. They were beat up.

43d
1. She should have tried it on.
2. It gave out.
3. It was a run-up.
4. It must have grossed him out.
5. He must have been grossed out.
6. They ran up to her.
7. She wouldn't have headed toward Detroit.
8. She blew it out.
9. Shutting him up is nearly impossible.
10. She asked him how he could have run up such a large credit card bill.
11. He stopped off in Denver.
12. You had a blowout.

43e
1. leftover
2. chapped up
3. covered up
4. rundown
5. broken in
6. paid off
7. letdown
8. crossed off
9. checked in
10. checked out
11. sold out
12. plugged in
13. filled up
14. straightened out
15. put off

43f
1. sneaked into
2. sneak out
3. keep off
4. coming back
5. go into
6. kept... on
7. get back
8. gotten... behind
9. keep from
10. keep at
11. keep... to
12. burst out
13. filled up
14. wiped out
15. keep ...away
16. kept... down
17. I have to mix them up.
18. It was a cross off.
19. They were beat up.
20. They got carried away.
21. They beat him up.
22. It's stressing me out.
23. I'm stressed out.
24. They were beat up.
25. He was locked up.
26. He was locked up.
27. I have to mix them up.

44a
1. locked ... up
2. carried away
3. pisses... off
4. stressing ...out
5. kicked out
6. beat up
7. mix... up
8. lock up
9. ripped ...off
10. mixes... up

44b
1. The thugs beat up the woman.
2. The thugs beat the woman up.
3. The thugs beat her up.
4. The hotel manager kicked the rock group.
5. The hotel manager kicked out the rock group.
6. The hotel manager kicked them out.
7. The cops are going to lock up the crook.
8. The cops are going to lock the crook up.
9. The cops are going to lock her up.
10. Mixing up the twins is easy.

44c
1. He ripped him off.
2. It was a rip-off.
3. She's going to kick them out.
4. I locked up.
5. It's locked up.
6. It's easy to mix them up.
7. It pissed him off.
8. He was pissed off.
9. She's mixed up.

44d
1. cover... up
2. paid off
3. takes over
4. keep... down
5. keep on
6. broken in
7. keep away
8. bringing ...up
9. keep from
10. stuck... with
11. keep ... off
12. keep ... to
13. help ... out
14. kept at
15. put... up to
16. keep ... up

44e
1. turn out
2. turn in
3. turned... off
4. turns over
5. turned on
6. turned up
7. turned in
8. turned up
9. turn ... into
10. turn ... on
11. turn ... up
12. turn ... down
13. turn ... off
14. turned ... on
15. turn over
16. turn up
17. turning in
18. turn off
19. turned ... on
20. turned down
21. turning out
22. turn ... over
23. turn out
24. turning out
25. turn in
26. turning out
27. turn ... in

44f
1. They turn into butterflies,
2. He turned up.
3. It turned him off.
4. He thinks it's a turnoff.
5. He was turned off.
6. It turns you on.
7. They think it's a turn-on.
8. You feel turned on.
9. I'm turning it up.
10. Turnover is very low.
11. It turns our 2,500 cars every year.
12. She didn't "turn it up.
13. She hasn't "turned up anything.
14. It was turned into a Chinese restaurant.
15. It turned out orange.
16. She couldn't "turn him down.
17. It will probably turn over $4 million.
18. He hasn't "turned his paper in.
19. She's not going to "turn him in.
20. There wasn't enough room because so many people didn't come in.
21. The turnout was large.
22. He turned it over.

45d
1. get... back
2. ran up
3. gotten up
4. tried... on
5. Get out
6. get there
7. grossing... out
8. get into
9. head toward
10. get out
11. lockup
12. beaten up
13. stopped off
14. getting behind
15. getting over
16. carried away

46a
21. move... out
22. put in
23. come in
24. move... into
25. put... in
26. pull out

47b
1. He's going to move in with his Uncle John.
2. It's cutting back.
3. It's a cutback.
4. You can't figure out where they're coming in.
5. It didn't come in on time.
6. He's moving out.
7. I ran out of money.
8. She's pulling out.
9. She shouldn't have put a pool in such a small backyard.
10. She's brushing up on Italian.
11. He might pull out.
12. She told me to cut back on candy.
13. He's going to come in late.
14. She's putting a lot of effort into learning Chinese.
15. They ran out of time.
16. He hasn't put them in.
17. He asked her when she was moving in.
18. He puts $1,000 into his checking account.

47c
1. tried on
2. kicked out
3. ripped off
4. get... down
5. conned... into
6. stop off
7. talked... into
8. conned out of
9. make for
10. bumped into
11. shut up
12. gotten up
13. talk... out of
14. get into
15. get out
16. freaked... out

48a
1. put... back
2. switch... off
3. knocked out
4. looked up to
5. put back
6. switched on
7. kicked... out
8. knocked out
9. put back
10. throw... out
11. closed down
12. looks down on
13. put... back
14. knockout
15. knocked ...out

48b 1. The health department should closed down the restaurant.
   The health department should close the restaurant down.
   The health department should close it down.
   Ali's left hook knocked Joe out.
   Ali's left hook knocked him out.
3. General Chambers had to put back the attack.
   General Chambers had to put the attack back.
   General Chambers had to put it back.
4. Are you going to switched on the TV?
   Have you switched on the TV on?
   Have you switched it on?
   5. Are you going to switch off the lights?
   Are you going to switch the lights off?
   Are you going to switch them off?
6. Throwing out all this junk is going to be a big job.
   Throwing it out is going to be a big job.
   Throwing it out is going to be a big job.
48c 1. It has put back your fight for justice.
   2. He looks up to him.
   3. I knocked him out.
   4. It's a knockout.
   5. I switched it on.
   6. It's switched on.
   7. They must have been switched off.
   8. They're switched off.
   9. It will be closed down.
   10. He looks down on them.
   11. He would have been kicked out.
48d 1. turnover
   2. cutback
   3. make-up
   4. turn-on
   5. pullout
   6. carryout
   7. runaround
   8. turnover
   9. rip-off
   10. lockout
   11. turnout
   12. falling-out
48e 1. put... into
   2. talked ...out of
   3. carried away
   4. gone... out of
   5. pulled out
   6. stick... out
   7. bumped into
   8. turn up
   9. came... into
   10. brush up
   11. talked into
   12. move in
   13. Turn... over
   14. move out
   15. blow out
   16. stressing... out
49a 1. get to
   2. hang on
   3. get to
   4. start... off
   5. get to
   6. get back to
   7. get... on
   8. clogged... up
   9. get on
   10. gotten to
   11. Throwing away
   12. getting on
   13. get to
   14. get a head
   15. starts off
   16. get on
   17. Hang on
   18. throw away
   19. get to
   20. got to
   21. got on
   22. Get to
49b 1. She can't get her shoes on.
   2. He got to feeling depressed.
   3. He threw them away.
   4. You're going to get back to work.
   5. She's going to get back to me.
   6. It got clogged up.
   7. It was clogged up.
   8. He has never gotten to work after 9:30.
   9. I got on with work.
   10. It should be taken out when the temperature gets to 190 degrees.
11. He said he couldn't bang on any longer.
12. You've got to get to them.
13. It must have been thrown away.
14. He showed you how to get on a horse.
15. It started off well, but things got worse.
16. He told you that you shouldn't let it get to you.
17. He got to pet a baby tiger.
18. He hung on to the ropes.
19. He got on the diving board.
20. He got right back on.
21. She couldn't have gotten to the airport already.
22. He always starts off by introducing himself.
23. It should help you to get ahead.
49d 1. cutting back
   2. come in
   3. conned ... into
   4. throw... out
   5. looked up to
   6. look down on
   7. know about
   8. put back
   9. gets off on
   10. closed down
   11. knocked ... out
   12. turned ... down
   13. letting ... in
   14. get over
   15. turn down
   16. switch ... on
50a 1. paid... back
   2. wear out
   3. turn ... around
   4. pay... back
   5. deals with
   6. wore ... out
   7. comes down to
   8. turn around
   9. Hold on
   10. dealt with
   11. ask out
   12. hold on
   13. taken ... upon
   14. Hold on
50b 1. He's been holding on for ten minutes.
   2. They wore out.
   3. They're worn-out.
   4. It's turning around,
5. It comes down to the MBA program.
6. I asked her out.
7. It was a turnaround.
8. He’s going to be paid back.
9. You took her up on the offer.
10. She’ll deal with the problem.
11. She held on to it.
12. It wore her out.
13. She felt worn-out.

50d
1. stressed-out
2. worn-out
3. turned on
4. turned off
5. grossed out
6. beat-up
7. clogged up
8. mixed up
9. locked up
10. pissed off
11. built-in
12. turned on
13. turned off

50e
1. turned into
2. get to
3. turn in
4. built into
5. turn out
6. get back to
7. thrown away
8. turned on
9. get... on
10. get ahead
11. Hang on
12. turn down
13. Turn... off
14. clogged... up
15. made for
16. turning up

50f
1. give out
2. put... into
3. pay... back
4. take... up on
5. dealt with
6. running out
7. ask... out
8. get ahead
9. hold on
10. turned... around
11. get back to
12. gotten to
13. came down to
14. wore... out
15. freaks... out
16. started... off
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal Verb</th>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>come out,</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come on,</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come from,</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chop up,</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch up,</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch on,</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call in,</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn up,</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break down, 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break down,</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring back,</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring over,</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring back,</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break off,</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break out,</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break up,</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break down,</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back up,</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back out,</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back up,</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back off,</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break out,</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break through,</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break off,</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aim at,</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask for,</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask out,</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask off,</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back down, 36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back down,</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back up,</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base hit,</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beef up,</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>believe in,</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be late for,</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow away,</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow up,</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow off,</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boil down to,</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break down,</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break in,</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break off,</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break out,</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break through,</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break up,</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring back,</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring over,</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring up,</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brush off,</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brush up,</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build in,</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build up,</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn down,</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn out,</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn up,</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst out,</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bust in,</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call back,</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call in,</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call off,</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call up,</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calm down,</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calm down,</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry away,</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry on,</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry over,</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch on,</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch up,</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check on,</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check up,</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chicken out,</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chicken out,</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check up,</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean out,</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean up,</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear out,</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear up,</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clog up,</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close down,</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close down,</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close off,</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come about,</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come across,</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come apart,</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come back,</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come down,</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come down to,</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come down with,</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come from,</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come off,</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come on,</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come out,</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Index of Phrasal Verbs by Section**

The number after each phrasal verb is the section in which that phrasal verb is described.
beat up
mix up
rip off
turn down
turn in
turn into
turn off
turn on
turn out
turn over
turn up
bump into
come into
come out of
freak out
make for
talk into
talk out of
brush up
come in
move in
move out
put in
run out
close down
knock out
look down on
look up to
put back
switch off
throw out
dog up
get ahead
get back to
get on
get to
hang on
start off
throw away
ask out
come down to
deal with
hold on
pay back
take up on
turn around
wear out